



UNIVERSITY OF
NORTH CAROLINA

School of Library
Science

UNIVERSITY OF N.C. AT CHAPEL HILL



00022226547

W. & H. A.

W. & H. A.

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2012 with funding from
University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill







COLUMBUS.

THE LIFE
OF
CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS.



ILLUSTRATED BY
TALES, SKETCHES, AND ANECDOTES.

ADAPTED TO THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

WITH ENGRAVINGS.

PHILADELPHIA:
CHARLES DESILVER,
251 MARKET STREET.
1857.

Entered according to act of Congress, in the year 1836, by
S. G. GOODRICH,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Massachusetts.

P R E F A C E .

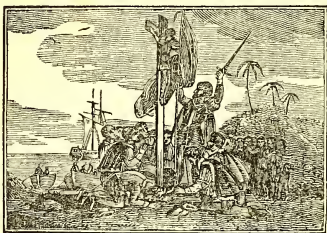
THERE is no kind of reading more attractive than biography, and, if properly treated, there is none more instructive. It appears, therefore, to be peculiarly fitted to the purposes of education ; it readily excites the curiosity and wakens the interest of the pupil, and, while it stores his mind with facts, dates and events, displays to his view the workings of the human heart, and makes him better acquainted with himself and mankind.

In the selection of subjects for a biographical series of works for youth, the editor has been led, by two considerations, to prefer those which belong to our own country. In the first place, it is more particularly necessary, that our youth should be made acquainted with the lives of those men who were associated with the history of their native land ; and, in the second place, no country can afford happier subjects for biography than this. There are few such lives as those of Columbus, Washington, and Franklin, in the annals of any nation.

276318

In the preparation of the work, the author has sought to adapt it to youth, by the use of a simple style, and by the introduction of many illustrative tales, sketches, anecdotes and adventures. Questions for examining the pupils are printed in the pages, which may be used, or not, at the choice of the Teacher.

The Life of Washington, and the Life of Franklin, on a plan similar to this, are nearly completed, and other volumes containing the lives of celebrated Indian Chiefs, celebrated American Statesmen, &c., will be published hereafter, if those already in progress should meet with success.



CONTENTS

CHAPTER I.

Birth of Columbus. Education. Leaves the University of Padua. Battle with the Venetian Galleys. First Visit to Lisbon. Marriage. New Route to India suggested by Henry of Portugal. Columbus concludes that the most direct Route was by sailing West. Reasons for that Conclusion..... 11

CHAPTER II.

Columbus forms Plans of Discovery. Applies to the King of Portugal. Is deceived by him. Leaves Lisbon for Genoa. First Arrival at Palos. Goes thence to Cordova, where the Court at that Time resided. He is entertained by the King's Auditor. Council of Salamanca. Return to Palos. The Sovereigns eventually accept his Propositions. Equipment of three Caravels..... 22

CHAPTER III.

Sailing of Columbus. The Pinta breaks her Rudder. They reach the Canary Islands. Continue their Voyage. Signs of Land. The Men become mutinous. Discover a beautiful Island. Call it San Salvador. Description of the Natives. Find a great many Islands. Overtake an Indian in his Canoe. Fernandina. Isabella. Sail for Cuba..... 37

CHAPTER IV.

Cuba. Village of Rio de Mares. Cape of Palms. Columbus sends Ambassadors to seek the King. Their Return, and Account of their Adventures. Tobacco. Reception at Hispaniola. Visit from a young Cacique. Shipwreck.....	53
--	----

CHAPTER V.

Visit from the King. Visit to the Shore. Columbus selects a Site for a Fortress. Dines with the King Sails from La Navidad. Monte Christi. Rejoined by the Pinta. Skirmish with the Indians. Sail for Spain. Tempest. Reach St. Mary. Singular Adventure. Violent Storm. Visit to the King of Portugal. Arrival at Palos.....	63
---	----

CHAPTER VI.

Joy at Palos. Arrival of Pinzon, and his Death. Entry of Columbus into Barcelona. Reception by the Sovereigns. Anecdote. Departure on the second Voyage. Dominica. St. Mary of Guadeloupe. Adventure of Diego Marque. Skirmish with the Islanders.....	79
--	----

CHAPTER VII.

Arrival at La Navidad. Destruction of the Fortress. Visit to Guacanagari. Escape of the Indian Women. Erection of Isabella. Exploring Parties. Part of the Ships return to Spain. Mutiny. Expedition to Cibao. Building of St. Thomas. Expedition to the Interior. Theft of the Natives. Columbus proceeds upon his Discoveries.....	92
--	----

CHAPTER VIII.

Fishermen at Puerto Grande. Queen's Garden. Singular Manner of taking Fish. Adventure in the	
--	--

Woods. Columbus pursues his Voyage. Is convinced that Cuba is the Extremity of the Asiatic Continent. Evangelista. Harbor on the Coast of Cuba. Interview with an old Man. Jamaica. Visit of a Cacique. Columbus seized with Sickness. Return to Isabella.....	106
--	-----

CHAPTER IX.

Columbus meets with his Brother Bartholomew. Account of his Adventures. Affairs at the Island during the Admiral's Absence. Bold Exploit of Ojeda. Captivity of Caonabo. Arrival of four Ships from Spain. Battle with the Indians. Imposition of Tribute.....	117
--	-----

CHAPTER X.

Arrival of Juan Aguado. Interview with Columbus. Violent Storm. Discovery of Mines. Return to Spain. Reception of Columbus at Court. Equipment of Vessels. Delays. Departure on the third Voyage. Discovery of La Trinidad. Adventure with the Natives.....	123
---	-----

CHAPTER XI.

Trinidad. Swell of Waters in the Gulf. Traffic with the Indians. The Gardens. Pearls. The Strait of the Dragon's Mouth. Indians fishing for Pearls. Return to Hispaniola. Affairs during his Absence. Adventure of Miguel Diaz. Settlement of St. Domingo. March against Behechio.....	139
--	-----

CHAPTER XII.

Approach to Xaragua. Feast. Mock-fight. Exaction of Tribute. Insurrection. Capture of Guarionex. Payment of Tribute by Behechio. His Visit to the Caravel. Conspiracy of Roldan and the Indians. Two Caciques taken Prisoners.....	150
--	-----

CHAPTER XIII.

Arrival of Columbus. Three Ships of the Admiral's Fleet. Affairs with the Rebels finally adjusted. Ojeda touches at the Island. Roldan sent in Pursuit. Account of Difficulties in Spain. Arrival of Bovadilla. Columbus sent to Spain in Fetters..... 160

CHAPTER XIV.

Arrival at Cadiz. Visit to the Sovereigns. Departure on the fourth Voyage. Arrival at St. Domingo. Violent Storm. Discover the Island of Guanaia. The Wild-cat. Arrival at Veragua. Capture of Quibio and his Escape. Boat's Crew slain by the Indians. Boldness of Pedro Ledesma..... 169

CHAPTER XV.

Great Storm. The Vessels are run ashore at Jamaica. Two Canoes sail for Hispaniola. Mutiny. Prediction of an Eclipse. Caravel arrives. Mutiny is quelled. Mendez arrives with a Ship. Sail for St. Domingo. Return to Spain. Death of Columbus... 179

LIFE OF COLUMBUS.

CHAPTER I.

Birth of Columbus. Education. Leaves the University of Padua. Battle with the Venetian Galleys. First Visit to Lisbon. Marriage. New Route to India suggested by Henry of Portugal. Columbus concludes that the most direct Route was by sailing West. Reasons for that Conclusion.

1. CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS was born at Genoa about the year 1436. He was the eldest son of a poor wool-carder, and in his early years may himself, with his brothers, have worked at the trade of his father. His son Ferdinand, who wrote an account of his life, was quite angry with an author for having said that he followed in childhood a mechanical employment. This discovers a very false pride, and is quite different from the good

1. When and where was Christopher Columbus born? What of his father? His brothers?

sense he shows in some other observations as to the parentage of his father. In speaking of the disputes about the rank of his family, he passes them by, with the remark, that their nobility can add less lustre to him than the honor he receives from such a father.

2. His means of education must of course have been very limited. We know that at an early age he had made some progress in the study of mathematics and the Latin language. He was very fond of reading at this time all the writers upon geography, and directed his attention entirely to those branches of learning, which would be of service to him in the pursuits to which he had already determined to devote his life. He spent a short time at the college in Pavia, where he acquired a knowledge of those sciences most necessary to seamen, and particularly useful at a time when so little progress had been made in the arts of navigation.

3. These sciences were astronomy, which teaches the measures and motions of the heavenly bodies; geometry, which treats of lines, surfaces and solids; and cosmography, which is the science of describing the several parts of the visible world, according to their number and position. This learning would assist him very much in after life, in directing the

2. What of his education? What were his principal studies? At what college did he study the sciences? 3. What does astronomy teach? Geometry? Cosmography? Of what advantage would a knowledge of these sciences be to Columbus?

courses of his vessels; for in ancient times they depended almost entirely on the stars for a knowledge of their track. It would also assist him in drawing maps, and in describing the different lands he might meet with in his voyages.

4. Columbus left the university of Pavia when he was about fourteen years of age. Of the events which immediately ensued we have no accurate knowledge. It is most probable, from all accounts, that he began at once to put in practice the information he had been acquiring with so much industry. In the hazardous voyages of the Mediterranean, in the humble obscurity of a poor sailor-boy, his mind was nerved and matured for the high enterprises which were to ennoble his later days. And it is possible that, even here, he may have first been favored with glimpses of the glory which he seemed always conscious was at some period to burst upon him.

5. The circumstances which occasioned the first visit of Columbus to Portugal were very singular, and are told at considerable length in the memoir by his son. There was a famous man of his family called Colon, very celebrated for his sea-fights and victories over the Venetians and Mahometans. He appears to have been a sort of a pirate, making war against all infidel nations, or perhaps robbing all

4. What is probable concerning Columbus after leaving the college of Pavia? 5. What occasioned his first visit to Portugal? What of Colon?

ships excepting those which belonged to Genoa. Columbus commanded one of the vessels of his fleet.

6. It happened that while Columbus sailed with this formidable rover, whose name was so terrible, that the Moorish children were frightened at the very sound of it, news was brought that four large Venetian galleys were returning richly laden from Flanders. The fleet of Colon went in search of them, and they met about Cape St. Vincent, beyond Lisbon. A furious battle ensued. They beat one another from vessel to vessel, using not only their ordinary weapons, but missiles of fire. They fought from morning till evening, and great numbers were killed upon both sides. The ship which Columbus commanded was fast grappled with a huge Venetian galley. They both took fire. It was impossible to disengage them, and the alarm and confusion on board made all attempts at preventing the spread of the flames useless. The crews of both vessels were obliged to leap into the sea.

7. Columbus was an excellent swimmer, and, finding himself a little more than two leagues from land, seized an oar within his reach, and, alternately swimming and resting, was enabled to attain the shore. He was so tired with his exertions, however, that it was with much difficulty he recovered his strength.

6. What of his fleet? Describe the engagement. What became of the crews? 7. What did Columbus do?



Columbus saving himself by swimming

8. He immediately went to Lisbon, where many of his Genoese countrymen were at that time living. This was about the year 1470. At this period he was in the vigor of his manhood, and, as his son tells us, was of an engaging presence. He was well shaped, and somewhat above the common height: of a long face, with rather full cheeks, and an aquiline nose. His complexion was of a mixed white and red. In youth his hair was light, but when he came to thirty years of age, it was quite gray. He was temperate in his habits, and plain in dress. He was attentive throughout his life to the duties of religion, and rigorously observant of all the ceremonies of the Catholic church.

9. While at Lisbon, Columbus was in the habit of attending mass in the monastery of All Saints. He here became acquainted with Dona Felipa Moniz de Palestrello, the daughter of an Italian who had been on several voyages of discovery under Prince Henry of Portugal. This acquaintance ended in marriage. The father of the wife being dead, the newly married couple went to live with the mother. From her Columbus obtained the journals and charts which had been drawn up by Palestrello, on his various voyages, and frequent narrations of interesting incidents that occurred in them.

8. In what year did he go to Lisbon? Describe his personal appearance. What was his religious faith? 9. Who did Columbus marry? What did he obtain from the mother of his wife?

10. He made many inquiries about the voyages by the Portuguese along the coast of Guinea, and delighted to converse with the sailors who had been there. He began to reflect, that if they voyaged so far south, they might be able to sail westward, and find land in that direction. With this idea, he reviewed the writers upon cosmography which he had before read, and observed whatever there might be in astronomy to support his suppositions. He took notice of every thing that he could gather from sailors, and other persons, that could be of any service to him. From all this, he concluded that there were lands west of the Canary Isles, and Cape Verde, and that it was possible to sail to and discover them.

11. Having become naturalized in Portugal by marriage and residence, he used sometimes to sail in the expeditions to the coast of Guinea. We are told that while at home, he supported his family by drawing maps and charts. It is a beautiful instance of the kindness and affection of his disposition, that, though at this time his own means were very scanty, he appropriated a part of them to the support of his aged father, and the education of his younger brothers.

12. The passage from Portugal to India, by sail-

10. What did Columbus then do? To what conclusion did he arrive? 11. In what expeditions did he sail? In what manner did he evince the kindness of his disposition? 12. What was first suggested by Prince Henry of Portugal?

ing round Africa, was first suggested by Prince Henry of Portugal. To aid and advance naval science, Henry established a naval college, and erected an observatory at Sagres, whither he invited all the most eminent nautical men, and most skilful makers of charts of the time. Great improvement was introduced in the maps; and the compass was brought into more general use. Under these advantages, the Portuguese seamen distinguished themselves by their hardihood and enterprise. They discovered lands three hundred leagues distant from the continent, and secured possession of them by the protection of the pope. Henry died before the object of his hopes had been attained; but he lived long enough to see his native country raised by his efforts to a higher prosperity than she had ever before reached. The fame of her discoveries drew learned and adventurous strangers from all quarters to Lisbon. Among these men, as has before been stated, accident threw Columbus.

13. The danger and length of this passage to India, supposing it to be really accomplished, set Columbus to think whether a more direct course could not be discovered. After long reflection, aided by the charts and discoveries of his father-in-law, and his own voyages, he became convinced that, by sailing across the Atlantic towards the west,

What did he establish? What of the Portuguese seamen? What did Prince Henry live to see? 13. Of What did Columbus at length become convinced?

new countries, probably forming a part of India, must be discovered.

14. His reasons for this conclusion were various. He had acquired a knowledge of the true figure of the earth. He thought it more suitable to our ideas of the wisdom and beneficence of our Creator, to believe that the vast unexplored space towards the west was not covered by a barren ocean, but that it was occupied by countries fit for the dwelling-places of men. It seemed probable also, that the continent, on the side of the globe in which he lived, was balanced by a proportional quantity of land in the other hemisphere. He found matter to confirm his opinions from the stories and observations of the seamen of his day. A Portuguese pilot, who had sailed a good deal farther west than was usual at that time, had found a piece of wood floating upon the sea, ingeniously carved, but not after any European workmanship. The wind, too, had been west for a number of days when he found it, and from this they inferred that the wood came from some unknown land situated in that quarter.

15. Beside all this, Pedro Correa, who had married the sister of Columbus's wife, told him that he had found, to the west of the Madeira Islands, a piece of timber wrought in a like manner. Correa lived in Porto Santo, a little island belonging to this

14. What were his reasons for supposing that there must be a western passage to India? What confirmed his opinions? 15. What did Pedro Correa tell Columbus?

cluster, which had been discovered and governed by Palestrello. To the west of this place, they had found enormous canes floating upon the waters. These were so large, that every joint would hold above four quarts of wine. No place was known in those countries where canes of that kind grew. People who had written about India said that a great many of them grew there. So Columbus thought they had been blown by the westerly winds from that country.

16. The people who lived in the Azores said that, when the winds blew for a long time from the west, trees torn up by the roots were frequently driven upon their coasts. These trees were of a kind that did not grow in any of their islands. At one time, the dead bodies of two men, very broad-faced, and of different features from either Europeans or Africans, were cast ashore there.

17. Besides this, there was a wrong notion among the ancient writers in respect to the extent of India. Though it had not been explored, with any considerable diligence, beyond the river Ganges, some Greek authors had ventured to describe the provinces beyond that river as vast countries. One writer had said that it would take four months to go in a straight line from one end of it to the other. In the thirteenth century, there was a famous

What had been found to the west of Porto Santo? 16. What did the people of the Azores say? 17. What of the ancient writers on India?

traveller named Marco Polo, who had gone farther towards the east than any European had ever gone before him. The accounts he gave seemed to strengthen the notions of the old geographers. Columbus was persuaded that the most direct course to the most easterly part of Asia was by sailing due west from Europe.

18. About this time, there was a very learned man living at Florence, by the name of Paulo Foscanelli. He was a physician, and distinguished for his knowledge of the different parts of the world. In the year 1474, Columbus wrote him a long letter, containing what he had thought and concluded upon this subject, and communicating the plans he had formed about it. Paulo approved of his plans, and warmly encouraged Columbus to proceed in his undertaking. Fully satisfied of the truth of his system, Columbus was now desirous to set out on a voyage of discovery. The first step necessary was to secure the assistance and protection of some powerful European king.

Of what was Columbus persuaded? 18. What of Paulo Foscanelli? To whom did Columbus write in 1474? Did Paulo approve of Columbus's plans? What step was first necessary?

CHAPTER II.

Columbus forms Plans of Discovery. Applies to the King of Portugal. Is deceived by him. Leaves Lisbon for Genoa. First Arrival at Palos. Goes thence to Cordova, where the Court at that Time resided. He is entertained by the King's Auditor. Council of Salamanca. Return to Palos. The Sovereigns eventually accept his Propositions. Equipment of three Caravels.

1. WE now find Columbus with his opinions completely formed, and his plans probably somewhat matured. He never wavered a moment in his belief of the eventual success of his undertaking. It was now necessary to obtain the protection of a king, able to furnish him with all the assistance he should require.

2. It does not exactly appear to what monarch Columbus made the earliest application. His son tells us that he first proposed his plans to the king of Portugal, because he lived under his government. It happened that this king was at that time very much engaged in exploring and subduing that part of the western coast of Africa, which is called Guinea. This had cost the nation a great deal of money, and the king was not much inclined to expend any more treasure in discoveries. He treated

2. To what king did Columbus first apply? How did he treat Columbus?

Columbus, however, with respect, and listened attentively to his propositions. It only remained to agree upon the terms.

3. Columbus was impressed with the importance of the discoveries he should probably make, and was naturally desirous of reaping some of their benefits for himself and his family. He demanded high and honorable titles and rewards, that he might leave behind him a name and a dignity worthy of his deeds and merits. The Portuguese monarch, John II., was desirous of securing the results of any discovery, to his crown, though he was unwilling to incur any great expense, or to bestow any considerable reward for it. By the advice of a favorite counsellor, the bishop of Ceuta, he determined to despatch a caravel to pursue the route that had been marked out by Columbus. Caravels were light vessels formerly in use on the coast of Spain and Portugal, though now gone out of fashion. One of them could be fitted out at a small expense, on some frivolous pretext, and by following the course proposed by Columbus, it could be ascertained whether or not there was any truth in his new and startling projects.

4. But the adventurers he sent upon this fraudulent design wanted courage and constancy to carry it through. After wandering many days

3. What did Columbus demand? What did John II. determine to do? What are caravels? 4. What of the adventurers sent out by the king?

upon the waters, beyond the Cape de Verd Islands, they returned to Lisbon, ridiculing the idea that there should be any land in those seas. The trick that had been practised by John, reached the ears of Columbus. His wife was now dead, and he had no remaining tie to attach him to Portugal. It is said that the king wished to renew negotiations with him; but Columbus firmly declined. He determined to abandon a country where he had been treated with so little faith, and, in the year 1484, privately departed with his son Diego.

5. Being now at liberty to court the protection of any monarch whom he could engage to carry his plan into execution, he concluded to visit in person the court of Ferdinand and Isabella, who at that time governed the united kingdoms of Castile and Arragon. It was about a year after leaving Portugal, that we first find him in Palos, a little sea port of Spain. Some writers say that, in the interval, he went to Genoa, and made his propositions to the government of his native republic. He met, however, with a refusal. From Genoa it is supposed that he carried his proposals to Venice; though there is nothing but an uncertain tradition to countenance this suggestion. It is agreed by several authors, that, about this period, he visited

What of Columbus at this time? What did he do in the year 1484? 5. What did he then conclude to do? At what time did he visit Palos? What do some writers say? What do some authors agree upon?

his aged father, and, having discharged towards him all the duties of an affectionate son, departed, once more, to try his fortune in foreign states.

6. Before leaving Portugal, he sent his brother Bartholomew into England, to make proposals to King Henry VII. This brother, we are told by his nephew Ferdinand, was a skilful and judicious man in sea affairs, though no Latin scholar. He had been taught by Columbus to make charts, globes, and other instruments useful to seamen, and in this manner procured a livelihood. Bartholomew, while on his way to England, fell into the hands of pirates, and, with his companions, was robbed of every thing he possessed. For this reason, being poor and sick, it was a long time before he could deliver his proposals. Having procured a little money by making charts, he at length obtained access to the king, and presented him with a map of the world, of his own drawing, inscribed with a number of Latin verses. The king was pleased with the plans of Columbus; but so long a time had elapsed, owing to the misfortunes that befell his messenger, that his propositions had already been accepted by another court.

7. The first arrival of Columbus at Palos was towards the end of the year 1485. About half a

6. What of Bartholomew? What had Columbus taught him? What accident befell Bartholomew? How did he obtain access to the king? What was the consequence of the misfortunes of Bartholomew? 7. When did Columbus first arrive at Palos?

league from this seaport was a convent of Franciscan friars. Columbus, with his little son, stopped one day at this convent, to ask for some bread and water. The prior of the monastery, Juan Perez de Marchena, was a man of intelligence and learning. Being struck with the appearance and demeanor of Columbus, he immediately entered into a conversation with him. It ended in an invitation to the stranger to become for a while a guest at the convent. Juan Perez talked with Columbus of his plans, and became exceedingly interested in them. He sent for a scientific friend, Garcia Fernandez, the physician of Palos, with whom the matter was industriously examined. All became more and more zealous in their wishes, and hopes, for putting the project into execution.

8. It happened that Juan Perez was an intimate friend of Fernando de Talavera, the confessor of Queen Isabella. The favorite priests and confessors of the Catholic princes of Europe have always had immense influence in the management of public affairs. Columbus was accordingly furnished with a letter of introduction to Talavera, in which his enterprise was strenuously recommended to the patronage of the crown. In the spring of

Where was the convent of Franciscan friars? Who was the prior of the monastery? In what manner did he treat Columbus?
8 Who was Fernando de Talavera? What of the favorite priests and confessors of the Catholic princes? With what letter of introduction was Columbus furnished?

1486, leaving his son at the convent with his friend, he departed for the court of Castile.

9. On arriving at Cordova, where the court at that time were residing, he found it almost impossible to obtain a hearing. An old Spanish writer, whose books were many years ago quaintly translated into English, thus speaks of his reception :—
“ Because he was a stranger, and went but in simple apparell, nor otherwise credited than by the letter of a gray friar, they believed him not, neither gave care to his words, whereby he was greatly tormented in his imagination. Only Alonzo of Quintanilia, the king’s chief auditor, gave him meat and drink at his own charges, and heard gladly of such things as he declared of the lands not then found; desiring him, in the mean time, to be content with that poor entertainment, and not to despair of his enterprise; putting him also in good comfort, that he should, at one time or other, come to the speech of the Catholic princes.”

10. The court was at this time involved in perpetual hurry and confusion. The united sovereigns were introducing several necessary measures of reform and improvement in their dominions. They frequently attended the army in person, to hasten the conquest of the kingdom of Granada.

When did he set out for the court of Castile? 9. How was he received at Cordova? What does an old Spanish writer say of his reception? 10. How was the court of Spain at this time engaged?

This kingdom was the last remaining seat of Moorish power in Spain, and it was the grand object of Spanish pride to effect its overthrow. Engaged in so important and expensive an undertaking, it was hardly to have been expected that they would have easily listened to any plans of discovery, of which the expense would be immediate and certain, and the benefits distant and insecure. There is a good deal of doubt whether his application for some time reached their ears. The prior of Prado, Talavera, was unfriendly to the plan, condemning it as idle and extravagant.

11. But when Ferdinand and Isabella were made acquainted with the proposals, in the midst of their business and confusion, they were disposed to give them a serious and calm examination. For that purpose, they called an assembly of all the learned men of the court and the vicinity, to listen to the reasoning of Columbus, and weigh it with due care and attention. This conference took place in Salamanca, and was held in the convent of St. Stephen.

12. The assembly was composed of learned professors in all the branches of science, together with the friars and other members of the church. Learn-

What of the kingdom of Granada? Was it to be expected that Columbus would be listened to at this time? Was Talavera friendly to the plan of Columbus? 11. What did Ferdinand and Isabella do? Where did the conference take place? 12. Of whom was the assembly composed?

ing at this period was almost entirely confined within the walls of the convents. The men who devoted their lives to religion, were the only men who seem to have given any time to the study of science and literature. The assembly, before which Columbus was summoned at Salamanca, has, accordingly, been well styled a council of clerical sages. They were bigoted in their religious creeds. Not remembering that the Bible was sent to teach men religion and morality, they insisted upon so understanding it, as if it had been sent to teach them also geography, and a knowledge of the system of the stars. Any opinion at variance with an isolated text of scripture was sure to be denounced as impious.

13. Columbus rose before this learned body, a simple mariner, in a crowd of professors and divines, who had passed their whole life in study. Many of them were sufficiently satisfied with their own superior knowledge, to reject his propositions as presumptuous and absurd, without even listening to them. Others attended to his arguments, but said that, since so many skilful sailors had been for so many thousand years ignorant of the existence of these lands, it was impossible that Columbus should know so much more than all who had been before him.

What of learning at this period? What of the assembly at Salamanca? 13. What did some of the members of the assembly say to Columbus's propositions?

14. Others contended that the world was so immensely large, that three years' sail could not bring him to the end of the east, where he intended to direct his voyage. To strengthen this opinion, they brought forward the authority of Seneca, a celebrated old writer, who had said that wise men disagreed about the question whether the ocean was infinite, whether it could be sailed over, and whether habitable lands could be found upon the other side.

15. Others asserted that, if any man should sail away westward as far as Columbus proposed, he would not be able to return, on account of the roundness of the globe. They said it would be going down; and that coming back would be like climbing a hill, which a vessel could not do with the strongest gale!

16. These are some of the prejudices and absurd arguments against which Columbus had to contend, even in a council of learned men. Those who could give no better reason for their obstinate disbelief, quoted an old proverb which says, "Saint Augustine questions it." This saint was one of the early fathers of the church, who wrote several centuries before that period, and at a time when they knew less about the form and nature of the earth, than they did in the days of the council of Salamanca.

17. He composed books upon theology, or sub-

14. What did others contend? Whose authority did they bring forward? 15. What was asserted by others? 16. What of Saint Augustine? 17. What books did he compose?

jects connected with religion, in which a great many difficult points are discussed at very great length. In one of these he said it was impossible to go out of one hemisphere into the other; and ridiculed the notion of the antipodes, or people dwelling on the other side of the earth, with their feet to our feet. What Saint Augustine said, they contended, must be true; and if the plan of Columbus interfered with any of his opinions, it must be presumptuous and irreligious.

18. There were some few, in this body, of superior intelligence and fairness, who were convinced by the reasoning, and delighted with the zeal and eloquence, of Columbus. They interested themselves in his cause, but without effect. The majority were too bigoted in their old and false notions of things to be reasoned out of them by an obscure adventurer, whom many of them considered "a crafty felon and deceiver." They gave it, therefore, as the result of their deliberations, that it did not become the state and dignity of great princes to act upon such weak information. The sovereigns consequently sent word to Columbus, that they were too much occupied with wars, and particularly with the conquest of Granada, to be able to treat at present upon the subject.

18. What men interested themselves for Columbus? How was he considered by many of them? What was the result of their deliberations? What did the sovereigns consequently do?

19. Columbus, meanwhile, had received a letter of encouragement from the court of France, and returned to the convent of La Rabida at Palos, where he had left his son under the care of Juan Perez. It was his intention to depart immediately for Paris. When his old friend the prior saw Columbus once more at the gate of his monastery, after several years of vain solicitation at court, he was deeply affected. He entreated him by all means to remain in the country. He had been father confessor to the queen, and thought he might still exercise an influence over her mind. He accordingly proceeded to Santa Fé, where the sovereigns were in person superintending the siege of the capital of Granada.

20. Perez obtained a ready access to the queen. He laid before her the propositions of Columbus with freedom and eloquence. Isabella was moved with the grandeur of the project. The principles upon which it was founded, the advantages that would result from its success, and the glory it would shed upon Spain, were for the first time represented to her in their true colors. She promised her patronage to the undertaking.

21. It was now only necessary to agree upon the terms. Columbus would listen only to princely con-

19. What letter did Columbus receive? To what place did he return? What of the prior of the convent? 20. What did he do for the furtherance of Columbus's plan? How was Isabella affected by it? 21. What terms did Columbus propose?

ditions. A meaner spirit, after years of unsuccessful toil, poverty and disappointment, would have been glad to secure the assistance of the sovereigns, on such arrangements as their own liberality might dictate. But Columbus proposed his own rewards and honors, and would consent to no other. He demanded them as if he were already successful, and aware of the extent and importance of his discoveries.

22. The court were eventually obliged to grant that he should be admiral on the ocean, and enjoy all the privileges and honors allowed to the high admiral of Castile; that he should be governor over all the countries he might discover; and that he should reserve to himself one tenth of all pearls, precious stones, gold, silver, and articles of merchandise, in whatever manner obtained, within his admiralty. They also allowed that he should appoint judges in all parts of Spain trading to those countries; and that on this voyage, and at all other times, he should contribute an eighth part of the expense, and receive an eighth part of the profits.

23. These articles of agreement were signed by Ferdinand and Isabella, at the city of Santa Fé, on the 17th of April, 1492. All the papers issued upon this occasion bore equally the signatures of

22. What did the court grant to Columbus? 23. Who signed the articles of agreement?

both sovereigns, but all the expenses were defrayed by the crown of Castile.

24. The port of Palos was selected as the place where the necessary armament was to be fitted out. Three caravels were procured, and orders given that they should be manned and provided with all care and diligence. Their majesties wrote letters to the princes who might be found on the limits of the Eastern and Western oceans, requesting that their ambassador and minister might be received and treated with all respect and honor. An order was directed to the town of Seville, to permit arms, provisions, and all things necessary for the voyage, to pass free of duties.

25. Another mark of favor was granted to Columbus by the kind consideration of Isabella. She appointed his son Diego page to Prince Juan, the heir apparent, with a suitable allowance for his support. This was an honor that had previously been granted only to families of distinguished rank.

26. There were still difficulties before commencing the voyage, that it required all the perseverance of Columbus to overcome. It was almost impossible to prevail upon any seamen to engage in

How were the expenses of the expedition to be defrayed? 24. Where was the armament to be fitted out? What vessels were provided? What letters were written by Ferdinand and Isabella? 25. What mark of favor did Isabella grant to Columbus? 26. What difficulties had he to encounter?

the undertaking. The royal order in respect to the fitting out of the caravels was peremptory; but weeks passed, and it still remained without any thing being done. The old sailors who had passed most of their lives upon the water, shrunk from the enterprise with horror. It shocked all the notions that had been entertained so long in respect to the formation of the earth, and the extent of the ocean. New orders were issued by the court, and officers were appointed to press ships and seamen into the service of Columbus. This measure occasioned a great deal of disputing and confusion, but led to no important result.

27. At length a rich and adventurous navigator, named Alonzo Pinzon, came forward, and interested himself very strenuously in the expedition. His assistance was effectual. He owned vessels, and had many seamen in his employ, and consequently possessed great influence. He and his brother Vicente Pinzon determined to take commands, and sail with Columbus. Their example had a great effect; they persuaded their relations and friends to embark with them, and the vessels were ready for sea within a month after they had thus engaged in their equipment.

What of the old sailors? What orders were issued by the court? What was the result of them? 27. What of Alonzo Pinzon? What did he and his brother determine to do? What effect had their example?

23. We now find Columbus on the eve of his first grand expedition, which was to result in the discovery of a new world. The simple seaman of Genoa, whom the ignorant derided as a fool, and philosophers neglected as an impostor, after years of poverty and disappointment, had at length obtained the object of his unwearied solicitations, and was going forward with a calm and dignified assurance of success. What unspeakable joy must have filled his heart, as the little caravel in which he sailed was leaving the shores of Spain in the distance, stretching forward into that dim and unexplored ocean, from whose shadows he was to reveal new dominions for his country, and a new world for Europe !

23. Where do we now find Columbus ? Had he obtained his object ?

CHAPTER III.

Sailing of Columbus. The Pinta breaks her Rudder. They reach the Canary Islands. Continue their Voyage. Signs of Land. The Men become mutinous. Discover a beautiful Island. Call it San Salvador. Description of the Natives. Find a great many Islands. Overtake an Indian in his Canoe. Fernandina. Isabella. Sail for Cuba.

1. COLUMBUS and his companions sailed from the bar of Saltes, a small island in front of the town of Huelva, early on the morning of the third of August, 1492. They directed their course in a south-westerly direction, for the Canary Islands. Columbus immediately commenced a regular and minute journal of the voyage, in the preface to which he recounted the motives which led him to the expedition. In the conclusion of this preface, he says, "I intend to write, during this voyage, very punctually, from day to day, all that I may do, and see, and experience, as will hereafter be seen. Also, my sovereign princes, beside describing each night all that has occurred in the day, and in the day the navigation of the night, I propose to

1. From what place did Columbus and his companions sail? How did they direct their course? What does Columbus say in the preface to his journal?

make a chart, in which I will set down the waters and lands of the Ocean sea, in their proper situations under their bearings; and, further, to compose a book, and illustrate the whole in picture by latitude from the equinoctial, and longitude from the west; and upon the whole, it will be essential that I should forget sleep, and attend closely to the navigation, to accomplish these things, which will be a great labor."

2. The day after the admiral departed for the Canary Islands, the rudder of one of the caravels, La Pinta, became loose, being broken or unshipped. This was supposed to have been through the contrivance of a couple of men on board, who disliked going on the voyage. The weather was very rough, and the other vessels were unable to render her any assistance. Her captain, however, Alonzo Pinzon, was a man of courage and a good seaman. He repaired the rudder, by means of ropes, so as to be able to continue the voyage, as far as the Grand Canary. Columbus reached the island of Gomera, and went from there to the island where Pinzon had sailed with the Pinta. After three or four weeks spent in repairing this vessel, they took in fresh supplies of wood, water and meat, and set sail from the harbor of Gomera on the sixth of September.

2. What accident happened to the Pinta? What of Alonzo Pinzon? How long were they repairing the vessel?

3. They steered their course directly west. On the fifth day of their voyage, they saw a large fragment of the mast of a vessel apparently of a hundred and twenty tons. It seemed to have been a long time in the water. On the fifteenth of September, at night, they saw a wonderful flash of fire fall into the sea, at the distance of four or five leagues, though the weather at the time was perfectly fair and pleasant. On the next day, they fell in with a large quantity of very green weeds, which appeared to have been recently washed away from some rock or island. Among them they found a live crab, which they considered a sure sign of land, as this creature is never found eighty leagues out at sea. The vessels were also followed by a great many tunny fishes, and the crew of the *Nina* killed one of them.

4. In two or three days more, Pinzon, who had run ahead of the other vessels, in the *Pinta*, which was a very swift sailer, informed Columbus that he had seen great flocks of birds, flying towards the west. Clouds appeared in a dark heavy mass at the north, which his companions considered a sign of land: but the admiral was unwilling to lose any time by steering out of his direct course

5. The men on board the ships watched, with the greatest anxiety, for every sign of land. They

3. What objects did they see at different times? 4. Of what did Pinzon inform Columbus? 5. What of the sailors?

began to murmur and become fearful. On the nineteenth of the month, two pelicans came on board one of the vessels, at different hours of the day. These birds seldom fly more than twenty leagues from the shore. Three days afterwards, they took a bird of a black color, with a white tuft on its head, and feet like a duck; they also caught a little fish, and saw abundance of weeds. Towards night, two or three land birds came singing aboard the vessels, and flew away at day-break.

6. One thing that terrified the sailors very much was, that the wind always blew directly in their stern. They said that in those seas they should never have a breeze to carry them back. The water was very tranquil, with no swell. Columbus endeavored to quiet them, by the assurance that the reason the waters did not rise, was the neighborhood of the land. It happened, however, very fortunately, that about this time the wind started up freshly at west-north-west, with a rolling sea. On the same day, a turtle-dove flew over the ship, a pelican, a river fowl, and other birds; and they found several crabs among the weeds.

7. As all these signs of land continually failed, the crews were more disposed to murmur against the admiral. They said that he had a design to

What birds flew on board the vessels? 6. What circumstance terrified the sailors? How did Columbus endeavor to quiet them? What of birds and crabs? 7. Why did the crews murmur against Columbus?

make himself a great lord, at the expense of their lives; that they had gone far enough to prove their courage, and it would only be certain death to go any farther. Provisions were falling short, and the ships were failing. Some of them even proposed to throw Columbus into the sea, and give out on their return that he had accidentally fallen overboard, while engaged in taking some observations. The admiral sometimes encouraged and flattered them, and sometimes threatened them with punishment.

8. The first land that Columbus expected to meet was Cipango, which had been placed by geographers at the eastern extremity of India. This was the name given to the island now called Japan, by Marco Polo, the celebrated Venetian traveller. The most extravagant accounts of the riches of this country were given by the writers of that age, and the admiral was anxious to proceed directly there.

9. At sunrise, on Sunday, the seventh of October, the *Nina*, which had outsailed the other vessels, on account of her swiftness, hoisted a flag at her mast head, and fired a gun, as a signal of having discovered land. There had been a reward promised by the king and queen to the man who should first make this discovery; and each of the vessels was

What did some of them propose to do? How did the admiral treat them? 8. What island did he first expect to meet? What accounts had been given of this country? 9. What of the *Nina*? What reward had been promised by the king and queen?

striving very eagerly to get ahead, and obtain the promised recompense. As they found nothing of the land the Nina had made signals for, the admiral shifted his course, about evening, towards the west-south-west, with a determination to sail two days in that direction.

10. The reason for making this change was from watching the flight of the birds. The Portuguese had discovered most of their islands in this manner, and Columbus noticed that the flocks which passed them all flew from the north to the south-west. He inferred from this that land was situated in that quarter. After sailing a day or two, they found the air as soft as that of Seville, in April, and so fragrant that it was delicious to breathe it. The weeds appeared very fresh, and many land birds were taken.

11. The men, however, had lost all faith in any signs of land. They did not cease to murmur and complain. The admiral encouraged them in the best manner he could, representing the riches they were about to acquire, and adding that it was to no purpose to complain; for, having come so far, they had nothing to do but to continue, till, by the assistance of Heaven, they should arrive at the Indies.

What did the admiral now do? 10. Why did he steer toward the south-west? What was the consequence of this change? 11. What of the men? How did Columbus encourage them?

12. On the eleventh of October, they met with signs of land that could not be mistaken; and all began to regain spirits and confidence. The crew of the *Pinta* saw a cane and a log. They also picked up a stick, which appeared to have been carved with an iron instrument, a small board, and abundance of weeds that had been newly washed from the banks. The crew of the *Nina* saw other similar signs, and found, beside, a branch of a thorn full of red berries. Convinced, by these tokens, of the neighborhood of land, Columbus, after evening prayers, made an address to his crew, reminding them of the mercy of God in bringing them so long a voyage with such fair weather, and encouraging them by signs that were every day plainer and plainer. He repeated the instructions he had given at the Canary Islands, that when they had sailed seven hundred leagues to the westward without discovering land, they should lie by from midnight till daybreak.

13. He told them that, as they had strong hopes of finding land that night, every one should watch in his place; and, besides the thirty crowns a year which the Spanish sovereigns had promised to the first discoverer, he would give him a velvet doublet.

12. What signs of land appeared on the eleventh of October? What did Columbus say to his crew? 13. What directions did he give them?

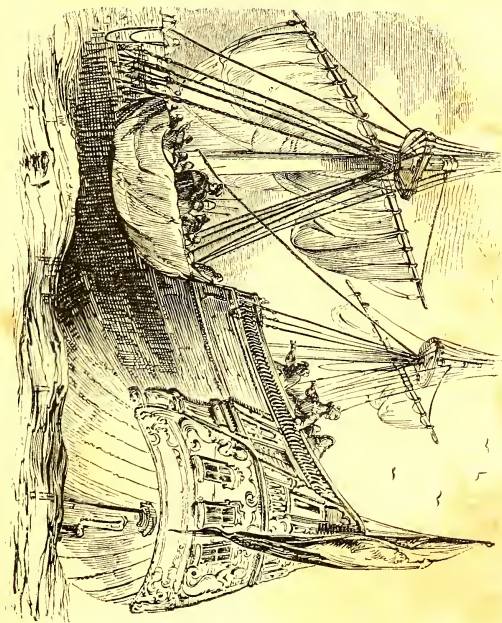
14. About ten o'clock that evening, while Columbus was keeping an anxious look-out from the top of the cabin, he thought he beheld a light glimmering at a great distance. Fearing that his hopes might deceive him, he called two of his companions to confirm him. One of them came in season to observe it, but the other was too late. It had disappeared. From this they supposed it might be the torch of some fisherman, raised up and then suddenly dropped again. They were all confident of being near land.

15. About two o'clock in the morning, the Pinta gave the signal of land. It was first perceived by a sailor named Rodrigo de Triana; the thirty crowns a year were not granted to him, but to the admiral who had first seen the light in the midst of darkness. His son says "that this signified the spiritual light he was spreading in those dark regions."

16. When the day appeared, they perceived before them a large island, quite level, full of green trees and delicious waters, and, to all appearance, thickly inhabited. Numbers of the people immediately collected together, and ran down to the shore. They were very much astonished at the sight of the ships, which they believed to be living

14. What did Columbus see in the evening? 15. What ship gave the signal of land? Who first perceived it? 16. What was seen the next day? What of the people?

COLUMBUS DISCOVERS LAND.





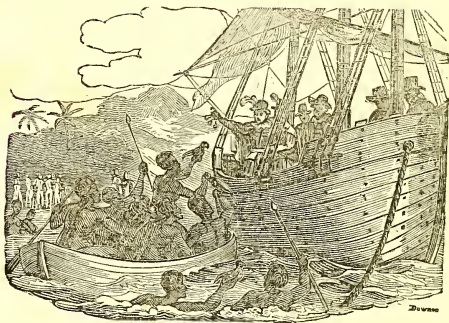
creatures. The ships immediately came to anchor. The admiral went ashore in his boat, well armed, and bearing the royal standard. The other captains each took a banner of the Green Cross; containing the initials of the names of the king and queen on each side, and a crown over each letter. The admiral called upon the two captains, and the rest of the crew who landed, to bear witness that he took possession of that island for his sovereigns. They all gave thanks to God, kneeling upon the shore, shedding tears of joy for the great mercy received. The admiral rose, and called the island San Salvador. The Indians called it Guanahani, and it is now called Cat Island. It belongs to that group called the Bahamas.

17. Many of the natives came down to witness this ceremony. They were very peaceable and quiet people, and the admiral gave them some red caps, glass beads, and a few other trifles of small value, with which they were much delighted. They imagined that the strangers had descended from heaven, and valued the slightest token they could receive from them, as of immense worth.

18. When the admiral and his companions returned to their vessels, the natives followed them in large numbers. Some swam; others went in

Describe the landing of Columbus and his men. What was the island called? 17. What of the natives? 18. What did they do when the admiral and his men returned to their vessels?

LIFE OF COLUMBUS.



The Indians visiting Columbus.

their canoes, carrying parrots, spun cotton, javelins, and other articles, to exchange for hawks' bells, and strings of beads. They went entirely naked seeming to be very poor and simple.

19. They were generally young, of good stature, with thick and short black hair. Their features were good, and their countenances pleasant, though an extreme highness of the forehead gave them rather a wild appearance. Some were painted black, others with white and red; some on the face only, others over the whole body. They had no knowledge of weapons, and grasped the swords which were shown to them by the blades. Their javelins were made of sticks, with points hardened at the fire, and armed with fish bones instead of iron. They easily learned the words that were spoken to them. No beasts were seen upon the island, and no birds but parrots, in which the sailors and the Indians continued trafficking till night.

20. At daybreak on the next morning, great multitudes of men came to the shore, and went aboard the ships in their canoes. These boats were made of one piece, being the trunks of trees hollowed out. The largest of them held forty or forty-five persons. They were rowed with a paddle, and were very light and swift. If they happen to upset, they are easily righted, and emptied with

19. Describe their personal appearance? Their manners. Weapons. What of beasts and birds? 20. Describe the canoes of the natives

calabashes, which are prepared and carried for that purpose. The natives brought the same things to barter that they had brought the day before. No jewels nor metals were seen among them, except a few small plates of gold which hung at their nostrils. Being asked where they procured that gold, they answered, by signs, that it came from the south and south-west, where there were many islands, and large countries.

21. They were very desirous to possess themselves of every thing they could find belonging to their strange visitors. Bits of broken platters, and fragments of glass, were very eagerly sought after. They wanted some memorial of them, however small and insignificant. At night, they all went ashore in their canoes.

22. In the morning, the admiral sailed along the coast of the island towards the north-west. The people along the shore ran after the boats, promising to bring provisions, and calling out to each other, "Come and see the men who have come from heaven. Bring them victuals and drink." They at length reached a peninsula, where there were six houses of the Indians with pleasant gardens about them. Columbus thought this a good situation for a fort, though in the relation drawn up for the sovereigns of Spain, he observes that he sees no necessity

What metals had they hanging to their nostrils ? 21. What were they anxious to possess ? 22. Where did Columbus sail the next day ?

of fortifying the place, as the people are simple in warlike matters, and he could conquer the whole of them with fifty men. Near this place were beautiful groves of trees.

23. Columbus took seven of the Indians from these parts, and returned with them to his ships. Setting sail, they discovered such a large number of islands that they did not know which to visit first. The natives they had taken on board, informed them, by signs, that there were so many of them they could not be numbered. They were all very level, very green, fertile and populous. On Monday, the fifteenth of October, they reached an island that was about seven leagues from the first they discovered, and called it Santa Maria de la Concepcion. The same scenes occurred with the natives as with those of San Salvador.

24. Columbus expected to find that the people here wore golden bracelets upon their arms and ankles. But he had either been deceived, or had misunderstood his Indian interpreters, concerning the riches of the country. While here, one of the seven from San Salvador escaped. There was a large canoe near the Nina, and the Indian leaped overboard, and swam to it. The natives, in the canoe, rowed for the shore too swiftly to be over-

What does he say of the people? 23. Whom did Columbus take with him to his ships? What of the islands discovered? What name was given to one of them? 24. What did Columbus expect? Describe the escape of the Indian.

taken. The Spaniards landed in pursuit of them, when they left their canoe, and fled with precipitation. The canoe was brought as a prize on board the *Nina*.

25. Another little boat now arrived, with a single man, who came to barter some cotton. The sailors, finding him unwilling to go on board, jumped into the sea, and took him. Columbus was upon the quarter deck of his vessel, and saw the whole of the occurrence. He immediately sent for the Indian, put a red cap upon his head, some glass beads about his arms, and two hawk's bells in his ears. His canoe was then returned to him, and he was despatched towards the land. All this was done that no fear nor ill will might be excited among the natives against the strangers.

26. He then left the island of Conception, and steered for a larger island which lay several leagues to the west. Being about midway between the two, in the gulf which separated them, he overtook a native in a canoe. He had with him a little piece of their bread, and a calabash of water, for his sea stores; and a little earth like vermilion, to paint his body with when he should reach the land. He had, besides, a few dried leaves, of a kind which were very much valued on account of their sweet

25. How did Columbus treat the Indian who came to barter cotton? Why did he make him so many presents? 26. What happened in a gulf between two islands? What had the Indian with him?

scent; a string of beads of green glass, and two little pieces of Portuguese money. It was evident that he was going to carry to the island the news of the Spaniards' arrival. The admiral took him on board one of the ships, and treated him with a great deal of kindness, so that he might give a favorable account of them, when he should be set ashore.

27. This new island they called Fernandina. The people of it came aboard, and trafficked in the same kind of articles as the other Indians had done. They seemed to have made a little more improvement in the arts of life, and were a little more shrewd in their bargains. Some trees were found here which appeared to have been grafted, and fishes of various shapes and beautiful colors were gliding about in the water. There were no land animals but snakes and lizards.

28. Finding nothing of value in this island, Columbus made sail for another, to which he gave the name of Isabella. This excelled all the others in beauty. "Every thing," says the admiral, "looked as green as April in Andalusia." Groves of lofty and flourishing trees were numerous, overshadowing large lakes with their foliage in the most enchanting manner. The music of the birds was delightful,

Did the admiral treat him kindly? 27. What of the natives of Fernandina? Trees? Fishes? Animals? 28. What does Columbus say of the island of Isabella? Describe it.

and the diversity of their appearance was very striking. There were a thousand different shrubs and fruit trees, of a delicious odor. Some of them they carried home as specimens.

29. They remained here several days in the vain expectation of procuring some gold. The Indians had told them stories of a rich king dressed in splendid garments, and covered with golden ornaments, and they were in hopes that he would be civil enough to visit them, and bring a great many valuable things with him. But no person of that description appeared, and they began to grow tired of waiting. So, taking in a fresh supply of water, they determined to set sail for some other island, in search of the rich king and the gold mines.

30. At midnight, on the twenty-fourth of October, they weighed anchor, and sailed from the north part of the island of Isabella. They directed their course towards Cuba, where they expected to find a great trade, abundance of gold and spices, large ships, and rich merchants. From the accounts given by the natives, Columbus inferred that this must be the island of Cipango, of which Marco Polo had said so many marvellous things.

29. Why did the admiral stay so long in this island? 30. When did the vessels sail from the island of Isabella? In what direction did they go? Of what island had Marco Polo said so much? What is it now called?

CHAPTER IV.

Cuba. Village of Rio de Mares. Cape of Palms. Columbus sends Ambassadors to seek the King. Their Return, and Account of their Adventures. Tobacco Reception at Hispaniola. Visit from a young Cacique. Shipwreck.

1. THE weather being calm and cloudy for a day or two, the ships were obliged to lie by a considerable part of the time, so that they did not reach Cuba till Sunday, the twenty-eighth. They entered a fine river on the northern coast, with twelve fathoms depth of water at its mouth. Columbus was delighted with the prospect here.

2. The banks of the river, upon both sides, were covered with trees of a most rich and luxuriant foliage, and with beautiful shrubs and flowers of every description. They ascended the river some distance, and the admiral says it was exceedingly pleasant to behold the delightful verdure which presented itself, and to listen to the songs, and admire the variegated plumage, of the birds. The island was full of pleasant mountains, and the grass grew, long and green, down to the very edge of the water.

1. When did the ships reach Cuba? 2. Describe the island.

3. On the next day, they weighed anchor, and sailed from this port towards the west, where they expected to find a great city, which was the residence of some magnificent king. In the course of the voyage, they occasionally landed, and visited several villages. One of these was upon the banks of a large river, to which they gave the name of Rio de Mares. The people on shore fled at their approach, abandoning their goods and dwellings. Columbus gave orders that nothing should be injured or taken away.

4. The houses were of a large size, constructed in the shape of tents, scattered about with no regularity of streets. They found here several statues, and numerous masks, well executed; but it did not appear whether they were designed for ornament or as objects of worship. They found some tame fowl about the houses, and a collection of nets and fishing-hooks. The sea, at the mouth of the river, Columbus says, was as smooth as the river at Seville, and the water favorable for the pearl fishery.

5. Leaving this river, and sailing to the north-west, they discovered a cape, to which they gave the name of the Cape of Palms. Columbus had been impressed with the idea that he had reached the island of Cipango, till, from what he saw and heard,

3. What did Columbus expect to find? What of the village of Rio de Mares? The people? 4. Houses? What was found in the houses? 5. What did Columbus conclude from what he saw and heard?

this delusion was banished for another equally agreeable. He concluded that he must have reached the main land of India, and must be somewhere in the vicinity of Mangi and Cathay, the final destination of his voyage. The capital of Cathay he imagined to be the residence of the Grand Khan, whom the geographers of those times described as a monarch of great power and magnificence.

6. Columbus determined to send two ambassadors to seek the neighboring monarch at his residence. For this purpose he chose two Spaniards, whom he despatched with a couple of Indians as guides. He gave them strings of beads to purchase provisions, and directed them to return within six days. They were instructed where to seek for the king, and what to tell him. The ships were to remain where they were till the ambassadors came back.

7. On the morning of the fourth of November, which was Sunday, Columbus went ashore to shoot birds. On his return, Alonzo Pinzon brought him two pieces of cinnamon. He told him, at the same time, that a Portuguese on board his vessel had seen an Indian with two large handfuls of it, together with some reddish things that resembled nutmegs, but he had been afraid to purchase them, on account of the prohibition of the admiral.

How was the Grand Khan described ? 6. What did the admiral then do ? 7. What did Alonzo Pinzon bring him ? What did he also tell him ?

8. The boatswain of the Pinta also declared that he had seen some cinnamon trees. Columbus went to the place pointed out, and found none. The natives told him by signs that much pepper and cinnamon, together with large quantities of gold and pearls, were to be found at a place to the south-east, which they called Bohio. They informed him, too, that, at a distance, there were men with only one eye, and others with faces like dogs, who were man-eaters, and accustomed to kill their prisoners. Many of these reports were probably intentional deceptions, and most of them exaggerated and misunderstood.

9. On the sixth of November, the men who had been sent into the country, returned with the following relation. After travelling about a dozen leagues, they arrived at a town of some fifty houses, containing, probably, a thousand inhabitants, who received them with great ceremony, kissing their hands and feet, and making signs of wonder.

10. On their arrival at the town, they were led by the chief men of the place to the largest dwelling, where they were provided with a sort of chairs, the Indians sitting in a circle about them upon the ground. The Indians who accompanied the Spaniards, then gave an account of their character, and

8. What did the natives tell Columbus? Was all that they said probably true? 9. What happened to the men who had been sent by Columbus? 10. How were they treated by the natives?

the manner in which they lived. The men then left the place, and the women entered, seating themselves in a similar manner, and kissing the hands and feet of their strange visitors. The inhabitants of every village upon the road paid them the same respect. They saw many sorts of trees and fragrant flowers, a variety of birds, but no quadrupeds, except some dogs which did not bark.

11. On their way back to the ships, the Spaniards saw great numbers of people, of both sexes, with fire-brands in their hands, and certain herbs, which were dried, and rolled in a dry leaf. Having lighted these rolls at one end, they put them in their mouths, and drew the smoke through them, by sucking at the other end. Those tubes they called by the name of *tabacos*. Little did they think, that this custom, which struck them with so much astonishment, would soon make this weed one of the most important articles of commerce.

12. As his ambassadors had not found the magnificent king for whom he was in search, Columbus, on the thirteenth of November, determined to sail eastward, for the island they called Bohio. But, the wind blowing hard, he was obliged to come to anchor again, among some high islands, near a large port, which he called the Prince's Port. These

11. Describe the Indians' manner of smoking tobacco? 12. When did Columbus sail for the island of Bohio. Where did he come to anchor?

islands were numerous, and adorned with multitudes of beautiful trees, so that it was delightful to be among them. In one of these islands, they killed a beast like a badger, and in the sea, they found much mother of pearl. Among other sorts of fish that they caught, was one like a swine, covered with a very hard skin.

13. On Monday, the 19th of November, the admiral departed from the Prince's Port, steering eastward for the island of Bohio. But, the wind being unfavorable, he was obliged to remain two or three days, plying about in the neighboring waters. During this time, Alonzo Pinzon, induced by the reports of some Indians he had concealed on board of his caravel, and disregarding the signals of Columbus, sailed away for the island of Bohio. Thus the admiral was left with only two ships, and, the weather being rough, he was obliged to return to Cuba. All the Indians, however, directed him to Bohio. He accordingly sailed along the coast towards the south-east, meeting continually with fine ports and harbors. He had no intercourse with the natives in these parts, as they immediately fled upon sight of the vessels.

14. On the sixth of December, they reached a port in the island, about which they had heard so

What of the islands? 13. What did Alonzo Pinzon do? What did Columbus meet with along the coast? What of the natives? 14. Where did the vessels arrive on the sixth of December?

much. They called it Port St. Nicholas, in honor of the saint whose festival was upon that day. This harbor was broad, deep, safe, and encompassed by tall and beautiful trees. Perceiving that the island was very large, and that the land and trees were like those of Spain, and that they had taken in its waters several fishes like those of Spain, they gave it the name of Hispaniola.

15. An old writer gives so brief and quaint an account of their reception at this place, that we cannot do better than extract it in the very words of his earliest translator: "Here coming first to land, they saw certain men of the island, who, perceiving an unknown nation coming towards them, flocked together, and ran all into the thick woods, as it had been hares coursed with greyhounds. Our men, pursuing them, took only one woman, whom they brought to the ships, where, filling her with meat and wine, and appareling her, they let her depart to her company. Shortly after, a great multitude of them came running to the shore to behold this new nation, whom they thought to have descended from heaven. They cast themselves by heaps into the sea, and came swimming to the ships, bringing gold with them, which they changed with our men for earthen pots, drinking glasses, points,

Why did they call the island Hispaniola? 15. Repeat the account that an old writer has given of their reception at this place.

pins, hawk's bells, looking-glasses, and such like trifles."

16. After this the admiral visited an island which he called Tortugas, from its abounding in turtle. But having again anchored near a village on the coast of Hispaniola, he was visited by a young Indian chief, who appeared to be a personage of great importance. He was borne by four men, upon a litter, and attended by two hundred followers. When he came aboard, Columbus was below, at dinner. The Indian immediately made signs for his attendants to remain upon deck, and, going down without any ceremony, seated himself by the side of the admiral. Two old men, that appeared to be his counsellors, accompanied him. Columbus ordered such food as they had in the ship to be laid before them; but they only tasted it, and sent it upon deck to their followers. Instead of drinking, they only kissed the cup, and passed it about.

17. After the repast, one of his attendants, with great respect, brought the young king a girdle, and two small pieces of wrought gold: these he took in his hand, and gave to Columbus. The admiral gave him in return a counterpane, that was lying upon his bed, some amber beads which he had about his neck, a pair of red shoes, and a bottle of

16. What island did the admiral next visit? What of the young Indian who visited Columbus? 17. What present did he make the admiral? What was given him in return?

orange-flower water. Columbus also showed him, and the two old men, a gold medal, on which the images of the sovereigns were engraved, the royal standard, and that of the cross. They were much pleased and astonished with every thing they saw. Columbus then sent them ashore in his boat, and ordered several guns to be fired.

18. On the twenty-fourth of December, the weather being very calm, and the vessel lying about a league off the Holy Cape, Columbus, at about eleven o'clock at night, retired to rest. It was so very calm that the man whom the admiral had left in charge of the helm, contrary to express orders, committed it to a boy, and went to sleep. Columbus says that the sea was as still as water in a dish, so that there was not a seaman awake on board of the ship. The current carried them directly upon breakers that were roaring with a noise that might have been heard a league off.

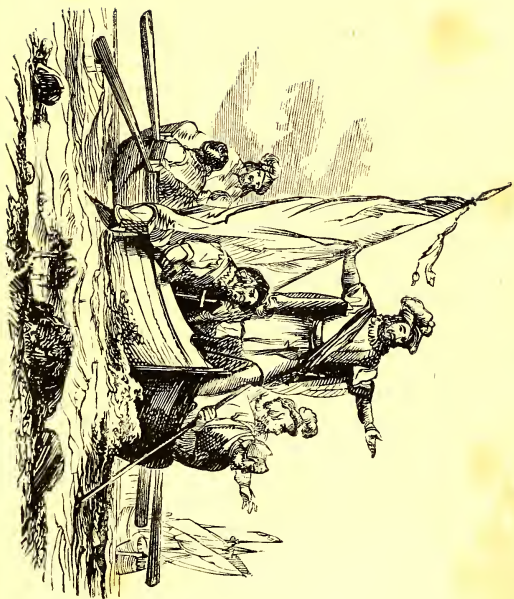
19. When the rudder struck, the fellow at the helm cried out, and Columbus immediately awoke, and ran upon deck. The master, whose watch it was, then came out, and the admiral ordered him and the other sailors to take the boat, and carry out an anchor astern. But, instead of obeying his command, on leaping into the boat, they rowed off

In what manner did the Indians return to the shore? 18. What happened on the 24th of December? 19. How did the master and sailors behave on receiving the commands of Columbus?

to the other caravel, which was at that time half a league distant. On perceiving this desertion, Columbus ordered the masts to be cut away, and the vessel lightened as much as possible. But their efforts were entirely vain. She continued fast aground, and was rapidly filling with water.

20. The men on board the other caravel would not receive the deserters in the boat, but obliged them to put back to their own ship. As it was impossible, by this time, to preserve the vessel, Columbus was only anxious to save the men. They went to the other caravel, and on the succeeding day, with the assistance of the natives, and their canoes, they preserved every thing of value. The Indians were very honest and kind. Columbus says that every thing was guarded by them with extreme care, at the express order of the king. The people were very diligent in assisting him, and lamented as much as if the loss had been their own.

What was the consequence of their desertion ? 20. Who aided Columbus in preserving the articles belonging to the ship ?



COLUMBUS LANDING.



CHAPTER V.

Visit from the King. Visit to the Shore. Columbus selects a Site for a Fortress. Dines with the King. Sails from La Navidad. Monte Christi. Rejoined by the Pinta. Skirmish with the Indians. Sail for Spain. Tempest. Reach St. Mary. Singular Adventure. Violent Storm. Visit to the King of Portugal. Arrival at Palos.

1. THE chief king of the place gave the adventurers three houses, in which to store all the articles they had taken from the ship. While he was on a visit to Columbus, on board of the remaining caravel, a canoe came with some Indians from another island, who brought a few plates of gold to exchange for bells. The seamen also upon shore returned with the story, that a number of Indians had resorted to the town, with gold, which they were glad to exchange for any articles the Europeans would give them.

2. The king, perceiving how desirous the admiral was to procure gold, gave him to understand that there was a place in the neighborhood, where it was to be procured in great abundance. Having taken a repast on board the caravel, the king, ac-

1. What did the king of the place give to Columbus and his men? What did the Indians bring to exchange with the Spaniards? 2. What did the king do?

accompanied by Columbus, returned to the shore. He treated the admiral with every honor, feasting him with several sorts of shrimps, game, and other viands, and with the bread which they called cassavi. He afterwards conducted him into an arbor near his house, where they were attended by more than a thousand persons. The king wore a shirt and a pair of gloves, which Columbus had presented to him, and with which he was very much pleased. He was very neat in his manner of taking food, rubbing his hands with certain herbs, and washing them after the repast.

3. They then went down to the shore, when Columbus sent for a Turkish bow and some arrows. These were given to one of his crew, who happened to be very expert in their use. The people were astonished with this exhibition, as they knew nothing of these weapons; but they spoke of some people called *Caribs*, who were accustomed to come and attack them with bows and arrows. Upon which Columbus told the king, that the sovereigns of Castile would send people to fight against the Caribs, and take them prisoners.

4. By order of Columbus, several guns were then fired. The king was astonished, and his followers were very much frightened, falling upon the ground

How did he treat the admiral? Describe the king's dress. Behavior. 3. What people were spoken of as using bows and arrows in war? What did Columbus tell the king? 4. How were the Indians affected by the firing of the guns?



Showing the Indians the use of the bow and arrow

in terror and wonder. Afterwards, a mask was brought, with pieces of gold at the eyes and ears, and in other places. This was given to the admiral, together with other jewels of gold, which were placed upon his head and neck. Many other presents were also made to the Spaniards. All these things contributed to lessen the grief of the admiral at having lost his vessel; and he began to be convinced that the accident had providentially happened, in order that this place might be selected for a settlement.

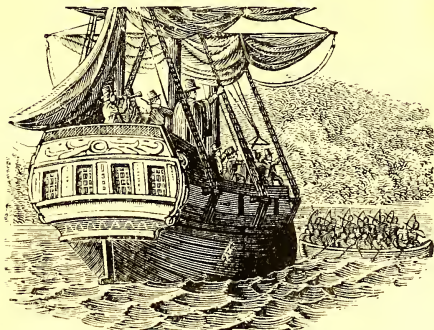
5. Many of his crew were very desirous to remain, and the admiral accordingly chose a situation for a fort. He thought this necessary, because the territory was at such a distance from Spain, that the natives ought to be held "in obedience, by fear as well as by love." The Spaniards were so active in building the fort, and the Indians so diligent in assisting them, that it was erected in ten days. A large vault was dug, over which a strong wooden tower was built, and the whole surrounded by a wide ditch.

6. In the account of the voyage, drawn up for his sovereigns, Columbus says that he hopes, on his return from Castile, to find a ton of gold collected by the men left here, by trading with the natives;

What presents were made to the admiral? What effect had they upon him? 5. Why did he think it necessary to build a fort? Describe it. 6. What does Columbus say of his expectations at this time?



The Indians visiting Columbus



The Indians shooting at the Spaniards with their arrows

and that he believes they will have discovered mines and spices in such abundance, that before three years, the king and queen may undertake the recovery of the Holy Sepulchre. "For I have before protested to your majesties," says he, "that the profits of this enterprise shall be employed in the conquest of Jerusalem, at which your majesties smiled, and said you were pleased, and had the same inclinations."

7. On Sunday, the thirtieth of December, Columbus dined on shore with five kings, who were all subject to Guacanagari, the chief king, before mentioned, and who all wore their crowns, and went in great state. Guacanagari came to receive him on landing, and led him by the arm to the house where seats had been prepared for him and his people. He then took the crown from his own head, and placed it upon the head of the admiral; who, in return, made him presents of a collar of beautiful beads, and a splendid scarlet cloak. He then sent for a pair of buskins, which he put upon the king's feet, and a silver ring, which he put upon his finger. The king was greatly pleased with these gifts; and two of the other chiefs came to the admiral, and gave him each a large plate of gold.

8. On the second of January, Columbus went on

How were the profits of the enterprise to be employed?
7. Relate the reception of Columbus by the kings, and the presents that were interchanged.

shore to take leave of the king. In order to keep the Indians in fear, he determined to give them an instance of the power of fire-arms. He ordered one of the cannon to be loaded, and fired against the side of the ship which was on shore. The shot passed through her, and struck the sea at some distance. This was under the pretence of showing the natives the manner in which they would defend them against the Caribs. The king was much affected at parting with the Spaniards, and expressed a great deal of regret.

9. Columbus left in the island thirty-nine men, with biscuit and wine for a year, and seed for sowing. He left them goods to traffic with, and the long-boat of the ship, that they might cruise about the island to discover the gold mines. Among the men were a carpenter and gunner, a cooper, a surgeon, and a tailor. Over this body he placed Diego de Arana and Pedro Gutierrez. Columbus gave the fortress, the adjacent village and the harbor the name of La Navidad, or The Nativity. This was in memory of their having escaped from shipwreck on Christmas day.

10. It was on the fourth of January that Columbus set sail from La Navidad. He continued along the coast eastwardly, in the direction of a tall

What instance of the power of fire-arms did the admiral give the Indians? 9. How many men remained on the island? Who were placed over them? Why was the settlement called La Navidad? 10. When did Columbus again set sail?

mountain, shaped like a tent, to which he gave the name of Monte Christi. The wind was light, and they were not able to reach it. After being detained a short time, they again sailed along the coast which runs to the east. The wind blowing strong in the afternoon, a sailor was sent to the mast head to look out for the rocks. He soon cried out that he beheld the Pinta, at a distance, bearing down upon them before the wind. The admiral immediately put about for the harbor of Monte Christi, and was followed by the other caravel.

11. Pinzon came on board the Nina, and made some frivolous excuse for his misconduct, with which the admiral pretended to be satisfied. The true reason was a sudden impulse of avarice, not at all consistent with the general character of the man. It was now the admiral's desire to coast along the whole island of Hispaniola. Remembering, however, that the captains of the two caravels were brothers, and that they had a party attached to them disposed to disobey his commands, he determined to return to Spain as quickly as possible.

12. While the vessels were coasting about the islands, waiting for a favorable wind, the boat was sent ashore upon one of them to procure provision. The men landed upon a beach, where they found

What of Monte Christi? By what vessel were they joined?
11. Why had Pinzon left the admiral? What did Columbus determine to do?

several Indians with bows and arrows. They entered into conversation with them, purchased their arms, and persuaded one of them to go on board the caravel. This man was of a very disagreeable appearance, having his face smutted with charcoal, and his long hair gathered and knotted behind, and ornamented with parrots' feathers. The admiral supposed him to be one of the Caribs, who were described by the other Indians as man-eaters.

13. The Indian, having been feasted and presented with glass beads, and pieces of red and green cloth, was sent upon shore. When the boat reached the land, they discovered among the woods about fifty armed natives, all naked, with coarse long hair, and the back part of their heads adorned with feathers. The Indian in the boat landed, and joined them, and persuaded them to lay down their bows and swords. The crew then began to traffic with them for their arms. They sold two bows, and then refused to part with any more, running back for their arms, and cords, as if to bind their prisoners. But on their return, the Spaniards fell upon them, and wounded several. The Indians were immediately terrified, and fled, leaving their weapons scattered up and down in every direction. Columbus was rather pleased with this adventure, because

12. Describe the Indian who went on board the caravel. Of what nation was he supposed to be? 13. What happened between the Spaniards and natives when they reached the shore? Why was Columbus pleased with the adventure?

these Indians, whom he believed to be the man-eaters, would entertain a dread of the Spaniards, and be fearful of offending the men he had left at La Navidad.

14. The next day, a great many of the natives were seen on shore, and Columbus sent the boat well armed to the land. They crowded about her, and their king with three of his men went on board the caravel. Columbus gave them bread and honey, and presented the king with a red cap, some beads, and some red cloth. The king promised that on the following day he would bring him a mask of gold, and told him that there was much of that metal both there and in Carib and Matinino.

15. After cruising about among the islands till the sixteenth of the month, the wind freshened, and blew favorably for their return to Spain. The crews grew fearful on account of the leaky state of the vessels, and began to wish for a return home. Columbus, accordingly, steered directly for Spain, shaping his course north-east by east.

16. No incidents of particular interest occurred upon their voyage, till about the twelfth of February. Then the wind began to blow very furiously, with a swelling sea; and if the caravels had not been good vessels, they would certainly have perished. All the next day they had a very heavy sea, and

14. What took place the next day? 15. When did Columbus set out for Spain? 16. What happened on the twelfth of February? Describe the increase of the storm

strong wind. The wind continued to increase in violence, and the waves crossed and dashed against each other with great fury. On the following night, the caravels lost sight of each other, and the signals they had agreed upon were no longer perceptible, from the darkness and violence of the storm.

17. On the succeeding day, the tempest became even more terrible. Columbus then ordered that lots should be cast, for one of them to make a pilgrimage to St. Mary of Guadaloupe, and carry a wax taper of five pounds weight. Each one then swore that if the lot fell upon him, he would perform the pilgrimage. A number of beans were then selected, and, one of them being marked with a cross, they were shaken together in a cap. Columbus was the first to put in his hand, and the bean he drew was the crossed one. From this moment he felt himself religiously bound to perform the pilgrimage. Two other lots were drawn, and one of these also fell upon Columbus. This laid him under a vow to watch a whole night in St. Clara de Moguer, and have a mass said there. The admiral and all the mariners then made a vow to go in procession, barefooted, and clothed in penitential garments, to the first church dedicated to the Holy Virgin which they should meet, and there offer up their devotions.

17. For what did the men cast lots? Describe the drawing of the lots. What two services had Columbus to perform? What vow was made by the admiral and all the sailors?

18. The storm raged with unabated fury, and Columbus was fearful that they should all perish in the waves, and that all their important discoveries would be lost to the world forever. In order to perpetuate a knowledge of the circumstances of the voyage, he wrote upon parchment a full account of them, entreating the finder to carry it to the sovereigns of Spain. This parchment was rolled up in a wax covering, and well secured. It was then placed in a large wooden cask, and thrown into the sea. The crew were told nothing of its contents, and presumed it to be some act of devotion.

19. The wind became, by degrees, less violent, and the sea somewhat less turbulent, and at sunset on the fifteenth, the sky began to grow clear in the west. At night on the sixteenth, they saw an island which they could not distinguish on account of the clouds. It was not till after sunset on the eighteenth that they could have any communication with the people on shore. They found the island to be St. Mary, one of the Azores. Three men came on board, bringing fowls and new bread, which they said were sent by the governor of the island, who professed good will to Columbus, and promised to visit him on the following morning.

20. Columbus ordered that every respect should

18. What did Columbus write and throw into the sea? 19. When had the storm abated sufficiently for them to communicate with the natives of one of the Azores? What of the governor of the island?

be shown to the messengers, and, as the town was distant, they were invited to spend the night on board the ship. On the morrow, he remembered the vow they had made in the hour of danger, and directed that half the crew should go and fulfil it at a hermitage near the shore, and himself with the other half afterwards. The crew proceeded, accordingly, in penitential garments, to offer up their devotions. They had hardly arrived at the hermitage, when they were attacked, and taken prisoners. As this took place where it could not be seen from the caravel, Columbus remained entirely without suspicion of the outrage.

21. About eleven o'clock, however, seeing nothing of his men, he began to suspect that they were either detained by the Portuguese, or that their boat had been wrecked on its passage to the shore. He ordered the anchor to be weighed, and they made sail till they could command a view of the hermitage and the adjacent shore. He here beheld a number of armed horsemen, who dismounted, and made for the caravel. The governor of the island was in the boat with them, and demanded security of the admiral in case he should enter the caravel. Columbus promised him personal safety, but demanded why none of the Spaniards were in

20. What did Columbus send half the men to perform? What took place unknown to him? 21. Where did the admiral sail? Relate the conversation between the admiral and the Portuguese governor.

the boat, when they had gone ashore by a special invitation, and welcome from the governor. He then informed him of the dignities he held from the Spanish sovereigns, and displayed, at a distance, his signed and sealed commission. The governor told him that he knew nothing about the king or queen of Castile, or their commissions, and cared as little, but that he would show the Spaniards what the Portuguese were.

22. Columbus was then led to fear that war had broken out between the two kingdoms, during his absence, and he answered the governor in such language as his conduct deserved. The governor then rose in the boat, and ordered Columbus to proceed with his caravel to the harbor; adding, that all he had done was by the direction of the king his master. The admiral then called upon the seamen, on board his vessel, to bear witness to these proceedings, and told the governor that he would not leave the caravel till he had carried a hundred Portuguese prisoners to Castile, and depopulated the island.

23 The weather became stormy and the sea turbulent, and the harbor of St. Mary was so very rocky, that the admiral feared their cables would be cut. He, therefore, ordered the casks to be filled with water from the sea for ballast, and sailed for

22. What did Columbus fear? What did the governor tell the admiral? What reply did the admiral make? 23. Why did not Columbus sail for St. Mary?

the island of St. Michael. The storm was very violent, and they had but three experienced sailors on board the caravel. At sunrise of the next day, not seeing land, they resolved to return to St. Mary, and attempt the recovery of the crew, with the boat and anchors.

24. They anchored at the same point in the harbor that they had occupied before. In a short time, a man came clambering down the side of the rocks, opposite to the vessel, and cried out for them not to leave the place. The governor then sent out a boat, with a notary, to request leave to examine the commissions of Columbus, in order to be assured that he sailed under the protection of the sovereigns of Castile. The admiral knew that this was only a pretence, in order to recede with safety from the dangerous position he had taken, but, in order to regain his men, conceded it without hesitation. He displayed his commissions, and treated the messengers of the king with respect. Those of the crew who had been detained were then released, and came on board in the boat.

25. On the voyage from St. Mary, they were again exposed to continual storms. They once more drew lots for the performance of a penitential vow, and the lot fell again upon Columbus. The whole crew also made a vow to fast upon bread and

For what island did he steer? 24. Where did the vessel anchor? What did the governor then do? How did Columbus treat the messengers? 25. For what did the crew draw lots?

water the first Saturday after their arrival. On the morning of the fourth of March, they saw before them the rock of Cintra, near Lisbon. The storm was so violent that the admiral determined to enter there. He states that the people on shore assembled in crowds, offering up prayers for their safety, and wondering at their escape.

26. At three o'clock they arrived at Rastello, upon the Tagus, and were informed by the seamen of the place that so stormy a winter had never been known. Columbus immediately wrote to the king of Portugal, informing him that he had come from the Indies, and not from Guinea, and requesting permission for his caravel to proceed to Lisbon. The reason of this was, that there were rumors about, that the ship contained large quantities of gold, and he was afraid that the people of that place would commit some act of outrage.

27. Large numbers crowded from Lisbon to see the ship, and talk with the mariners upon the wonders of their voyage. Knights and noblemen visited Columbus, and he received a letter from the king of Portugal, inviting him to an interview. They met at Valparaiso, a place about nine leagues from Lisbon. The king received him with every mark of honor, and insisted upon his being seated in his

What rock did they see on the fourth of March? 26. At what place did they arrive? Why did Columbus write to the king of Portugal? 27. How were the admiral and his men treated? Where did Columbus meet the king? How was he received?

presence—a favor seldom granted but to men of the very highest rank. He expressed great pleasure at the success of the voyage, and remarked that he supposed, from the terms of the agreement between himself and the Spanish sovereigns, the new acquisitions belonged to him. Columbus told him that he knew nothing about that agreement, except that his orders had been not to go to any port of Guinea, and that these had been published before the voyage.

28. There were courtiers about the king base enough to propose that Columbus should be assassinated, in order to secure to the Portuguese the benefits of his discoveries. This was under an impression that if Columbus were taken away, the Castilians would not prosecute these voyages. But the prince revolted with indignation from the thought, and offered the admiral every thing that he wanted, or that could contribute to his convenience and comfort. He parted from him with the same kindness with which he had welcomed him. The queen also treated him with similar courtesy and favor, as he passed by the convent of St. Antonio.

29. On Friday, the fifteenth of March, at about noon, Columbus entered and anchored in the harbor of Palos.

What conversation took place between Columbus and the king ?
28. What base proposition was made to the king ? How did he behave to Columbus ? What of the queen ? 29. In what harbor did Columbus anchor ?

CHAPTER VI.

Joy at Palos. Arrival of Pinzon, and his Death. Entry of Columbus into Barcelona. Reception by the Sovereigns. Anecdote. Departure on the second Voyage. Dominica. St. Mary of Guadaloupe. Adventure of Diego Marque. Skirmish with the Islanders.

1. WE may well imagine the joy and confusion excited in Palos by the arrival of one of the ships of the expedition. The circumstances under which the little fleet had been fitted out, were still fresh in the minds of the inhabitants. The voyage upon which they had been destined was considered as one of almost impious rashness, and the adventurers were looked upon as men self-doomed to a terrible and mysterious fate. Each one of them was connected by a near tie of kindred to some citizens of the little seaport. They were all brothers, or fathers, or sons. Well, then, may there have been gladness and rejoicing at their return.

2. The whole town joined in a solemn celebration of their return, giving praise and thanksgiving to Heaven, and joining in a grand procession to the principal church, to offer up their devotions. Columbus was received with shouts and acclamations,

1. How were the adventurers received at Palos? What feelings had been excited at their departure on the voyage? 2. How was their return celebrated.

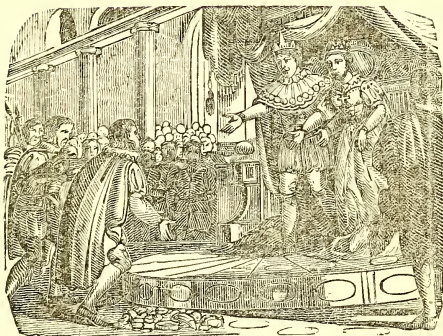
and such honors as were usually paid to sovereigns. "What a contrast was this," says a beautiful writer of our own country, "to his departure a few months before, followed by murmurs and exclamations! or, rather, what a contrast to his first arrival at Palos, a poor pedestrian, craving bread and water for his child at the gate of a convent!"

3. In the midst of the general exultation, the *Pinta* unexpectedly arrived. In the night of the first tempest, she had been driven by a violent south wind, and with much difficulty had reached a port in Galicia. When Pinzon saw that the admiral had arrived before him, he was afraid of being made to answer for his disobedience and desertion. In a few days, from mortification and chagrin, he became very weak and sick, and, in a short time, he died. He was one of the greatest navigators of his age, and had done every thing to promote the embarkation of Columbus. But, in a moment of weakness, he was tempted to yield to a single mean and unworthy impulse, which covered his memory with shame.

4. After the first expressions of joy and admiration, Columbus departed for Seville. From this place he sent a message to Barcelona, where the king and queen at that time resided, to lay before them a brief account of his voyage, and to receive

What does a beautiful writer say on the subject? 3. Where did the *Pinta* arrive? What of Pinzon? 4. Where did Columbus go next? Where did the king and queen reside?

LIFE OF COLUMBUS



Columbus appearing before the King and Queen.

from them an indication of their royal will. In reply, they requested him to repair, with all speed, to Barcelona, and to furnish, as soon as possible, an estimate of what he should think necessary to equip another squadron for the Indies. They added a promise to reward his services worthily, and conferred on him several titles of dignity and honor.

5. Columbus made immediate preparations for visiting the court, with specimens of every thing he had brought with him from the new countries. The novelty of these things excited among all classes the greatest astonishment. The admiral proceeded upon the road, with crowds continually gathering to greet and honor him. His reception at Barcelona was particularly gratifying. He made a sort of triumphal entry, surrounded by knights and nobles, who emulated each other in their efforts to swell his praises.

6. He was received publicly by the sovereigns, in a splendid saloon, seated on the throne, and encircled by a magnificent court. On his entrance, they rose to greet him, and would hardly allow him to kiss their hands, considering it too unworthy a mark of vassalage. Columbus then gave an account of his discoveries, and exhibited the different articles which he had brought home with him. He de-

What did they request Columbus to do ? 5. What preparations did he make ? What of his reception at Barcelona ? 6 What of the sovereigns ? What did Columbus exhibit to them ?

scribed the quantity of spices, the promise of gold, the fertility of the soil, the delicious climate, the never-fading verdure of the trees, the brilliant plumage of the birds, in the new regions which his own enterprise had acquired for his sovereigns.

7. He then drew their attention to the six natives of the New World, who were present, and described their manners and dispositions. He exhibited their dresses and ornaments, their rude utensils, their feeble arms, which corresponded with his description of them, as naked and ignorant barbarians. To this he added that he had observed no traces of idolatry or superstition among them, and that they all seemed to be convinced of the existence of a Supreme Being. The conclusion of his speech was in these words: "that God had reserved for the Spanish monarchs not only all the treasures of the New World, but a still greater treasure, of inestimable value, in the infinite number of souls destined to be brought over into the bosom of the Christian church."

8. After he had finished his address, the whole assembly fell upon their knees, while an anthem was chanted by the choir of the royal chapel. With songs of praise, the glory was given to God, for the discovery of a New World. Columbus and his adventures were for many days the wonder and

What did he describe? 7. What did Columbus say of the natives? Repeat the conclusion of Columbus's speech. 8. What took place after the address of the admiral?

delight of the people and the court. The sovereigns admitted the admiral to their audience at all hours, and loaded him with every mark of favor and distinction. Men of the highest rank were proud of the honor of his company.

9. Among his friends may be numbered the grand cardinal of Spain, and first subject of the realm, Pedro Gonzalez de Mendoza; a man eminent for his generosity, piety and learning. It was at his house that the often told anecdote of the egg is said to have occurred. Some envious courtier, with as little wit as civility, abruptly asked Columbus whether he thought that, in case he had not discovered the Indies, there were not other men in Spain who would have been capable of such an enterprise. To this the admiral made no reply, but, taking an egg, requested the company to make it stand on one end. They all attempted, but could not succeed. Columbus then struck it upon the table, and left it standing upon the broken end; illustrating thus simply, that the only difficulty was in showing the way to the new world, not in following it.

10. After some political negotiations with the king of Portugal and the pope of Rome, all matters were prepared for the second expedition to the New World. On the dawn of the twenty-fifth of September, 1492, the bay of Cadiz was

9. What of Pedro Gonzalez de Mendoza? Relate the anecdote of the egg. 10. When did Columbus depart from Cadiz?

crowded with the departing fleet of Columbus. There were three large ships and fourteen caravels waiting for the signal to sail. All on board were breathing hope and joy. Instead of the gloomy despondency that overshadowed the leave-taking at Palos, there was animation and cheerfulness. They pictured to themselves lands rich with perpetual verdure, their mountains loaded with golden ore, and their rivers flowing over golden sands. Columbus was followed by the applauses, and not by the curses, of the populace ; and the adventurers were envied, instead of being lamented. The whole fleet was under way before the rising of the sun, sailing joyfully, under a serene sky, through the tranquil waters.

11. On the fifth of October, they landed at Gomera, one of the Canary Islands, where they took in wood and water. Besides this, they purchased calves, goats, sheep and swine, a number of domestic fowls, and the seeds of oranges, lemons, bergamots, and various other fruits. These animals were intended to stock the island of Hispaniola ; and the fruits were then, for the first time, introduced into the island, where they have since so luxuriantly flourished. The admiral here furnished every ship with a sealed map of the course to the

Of what was the fleet composed ? What were the feelings of the adventurers in this second expedition ? 11. When and why did they land at Gomera ? What did they purchase there ? What of the sealed map ?

port of Navidad, with express directions that it should not be opened, unless the vessels were separated by adverse winds.

12. On the morning of the third of November, an island was discovered, which they called Dominica, as it was first seen upon Sunday. A little while after, they saw another island to the north-east, and then another. All the men then assembled upon the decks, and offered their devotions to Heaven, singing prayers and hymns, in gratitude for the mercy which had been extended to them. The admiral then landed at an island, which he called Marigalante, after the name of his ship, and again went through the ceremony of taking possession, as in the first voyage.

13. On the next day they sailed northwardly, by another island, which they called St. Mary of Guadaloupe, after the convent of that name. Before reaching it, they saw a very high peak, from which a large stream of water was gushing, with such a roar as to be heard on board of the ships. It was so white and foaming in its fall, that it appeared to many like a white vein in the rock. It afterwards proved to be the crater of a volcano.

14. They went on shore in their boats, but found that the people had all fled to the woods.

12. What islands were discovered? At what island did the admiral land? 13. What did they see before reaching St. Mary of Guadaloupe?

Some children, however, were left behind, and the Spaniards tied a few bells and beads about their arms, to excite the curiosity of the parents. They found geese about the houses, and very large parrots, with every variety of feathers. The villages were composed of from twenty to thirty cottages, in the shape of tents, and arranged in a circle. There were more signs of progress in the arts here than had been found in any other island. The vessels and utensils were neater and more convenient; and at the entrance of one of the houses, they found two wooden images carved like serpents. Here, also, they first found the fragrant and delicious pine-apple, with a variety of other new fruits and shrubs.

15. Among the wonders upon this island, they found a plate of iron, and the sternpost of a European ship. Iron had never before been seen in use among the natives; and where could a vessel have been so wrecked, that part of her timber could have reached this distant shore? But what filled the Spaniards with astonishment and horror, was, as they supposed, sufficient proof that the natives of this island fed upon human flesh. They found bones of human beings, and their skulls converted into drinking cups. From this they inferred that

14. What did the Spaniards do with the children of the natives? What birds did they find? What of the villages? What fruit was first found here? 15. What was found upon the island? What circumstance filled the Spaniards with horror?

the island was inhabited by the sanguinary Caribs, or cannibals.

16. When the boats went ashore on the next day, two boys and several women came to them of their own accord. They said they had been prisoners of the Caribs, and had escaped. The admiral would not allow them to remain on board the vessels, but, giving them beads and bells, in order to allure the natives, obliged them to return. They soon came back, however, stripped of all their bawbles, and entreating permission to be carried to the ships. It was gathered from the signs and gestures of the Indian interpreters, that the Caribs ruled over many islands in that neighborhood, and cruised about in large canoes, making prisoners of the more peaceable inhabitants, and destroying them.

17. Columbus was now desirous of again getting under way, but was told that a captain of one of the caravels, Diego Marque, had gone ashore with eight men, and had not yet returned. He determined, therefore, to remain till the following day. Meanwhile he ordered muskets to be fired and trumpets to be sounded from the shore and among the woods. The people were out till evening in every direction, but found no trace of the wanderers.

16 What did the admiral give to the Indian prisoners? What did the interpreters make known to the Spaniards? 17. What did Columbus do to recover the men who had gone ashore?

18. On the next morning, Columbus thought of continuing his voyage, but was prevailed upon, by the friends of the lost seamen, to remain. He then sent a brave Spanish cavalier, named Ojeda, with forty men, to penetrate into the interior of the country. In their march, they threaded all the woods in the neighborhood, sounding their trumpets from the cliffs, and discharging their muskets in the valleys and on the mountains. But they could discover no trace of the party they were seeking. They saw, during their excursion, many new fruits, and birds of unknown species. They fancied that they perceived the odor of rich gums and spices: and they found honey in the trees and clefts of the rocks.

19. They returned to their ships without the wanderers. Columbus now gave them up as lost. He supposed they had strayed into the recesses of the forests, and had either perished by the hands of the savages, or had deserted with no intention to return. He was just on the point of sailing, when he perceived their signal from the shore. When they came on board, their appearance told how much they had suffered. Having lost their way on first entering the forest, they had gone farther and farther from the ships without knowing the course they were taking. It was in vain that they tried to

18. What did Ojeda and his men do? What success had they? 19. What did Columbus suppose? Relate the adventures of the wanderers.

retrace the mazes in which they had wandered. The thick foliage shut out the stars from their sight, though they climbed the highest trees. They could discover no sign of their position, till, when almost reduced to despair, they reached the sea shore. Following its windings, they came in sight of the fleet. For so improper a breach of orders, Columbus thought it necessary to inflict a punishment upon the offenders, notwithstanding what they had suffered, and the joy expressed at their return.

20. While cruising among these Caribbee Islands, a sea-skirmish took place of quite a novel description. The boat had been sent on shore with five-and-twenty men, from the admiral's ship, to procure water. On their return, they came upon a canoe, which had coasted from a distant part of the island, and, on turning a point, arrived in full view of the ships. The natives were so engaged in gazing upon the larger vessels, that they did not observe the boat till it had stolen close to their side. They then plied their paddles, and attempted to escape to the shore. As the boat gained upon them, they seized their bows and arrows, and turned fiercely upon the Spaniards. There were two women in the canoe, who took an active part in the contest. One of them was treated as a queen. The canoe

Did Columbus punish them? 20. Repeat the account of the sea-skirmish.

was overturned, but the savages still continued to fight in the water, and it was with the utmost difficulty that they could be finally taken. One of them died of his wounds, after he was brought to the ship, and the queen's son was badly injured.

21. Though captives, they condescended to exhibit no tokens of submission. They were still savage and disdainful, and wore an air of menace and defiance. There was something about them that excited a sensation of horror. This is the account given by those who saw them, though it is impossible to say what influence the knowledge of their savage customs may have had in forming the opinion of the spectators.

22. Continuing his course, the admiral came in sight of a large number of islands, of different shapes and aspects. Some were barren and sandy; some green and woody; some covered with rocks of a bright azure and glistening white. There were many of these groups, and Columbus was afraid to trust his large ships among their rocky and narrow channels. He sent, therefore, one of the caravels to ascertain their number and character. There proved to be about fifty of them, apparently uninhabited. Columbus called the largest of them Santa Ursula, and the others the Eleven Thousand Virgins.

21 How did the natives appear when taken prisoners? 22. What of the islands, and what name did Columbus give some of these?

CHAPTER VII.

Arrival at La Navidad. Destruction of the Fortress. Visit to Guacanagari. Escape of the Indian Women. Erection of Isabella. Exploring Parties. Part of the Ships return to Spain. Mutiny. Expedition to Cibao. Building of St. Thomas. Expedition to the Interior. Theft of the Natives. Columbus proceeds upon his Discoveries.

1. As the fleet was sailing gently along the green shore of Hispaniola, the boat was sent ashore to bury a Biscayan, who had been shot with a poisoned arrow in the skirmish with the Caribs. When arrived at the gulf of Las Flechas, the place where, the year before, they had been engaged in a slight struggle with the natives, they sent ashore one of the Indians, who had gone with them to Spain, and had been converted. It was never known what became of him afterwards.

2. It was after midnight that the fleet anchored in the port of La Navidad. Columbus had met with several circumstances, during the voyage, which filled him with the deepest anxiety in respect to the little colony he had left there. Orders were immediately given that guns should be fired, that the

1. Why was the boat sent ashore at Hispaniola? What of the gulf of Las Flechas? What of the Indians who were sent ashore? 2. How did Columbus feel on arriving at La Navidad?

colonists might know of the arrival of the fleet ; but no answering signal was given.

3. A canoe soon afterwards came off to the fleet, and inquired for the admiral. The Indians refused to come on board till they had seen and recognized him. They brought him a present of two gold masks from Guacanagari. When questioned about the Spaniards who had remained there, they said that some of them had been taken sick and died, and that some had quarrelled, and gone away to a distant part of the island. The admiral concealed his surmises in respect to their fate, and dismissed the natives with some trifling presents to their king.

4. On the next day they found but little reason to doubt as to the fate of the colonists. When the admiral landed, he found all the houses in the neighborhood burnt, and the fort entirely destroyed. The only remaining tokens of the history of the colonists were the dead bodies of eleven of them, with some torn garments, and broken articles of furniture. They discharged all the cannon and musquetry of the fleet at once, in hopes that the sound might reach the ear of some concealed wanderer, who still survived to tell the fate of his companions. But it was in vain.

3. What did the Indians bring Columbus ? What did they tell him respecting the Spaniards who had been left ? 4. What had been the fate of the colonists ? Why were cannon and musketry discharged ?

5. Messengers were sent from the Indians, who received friendly presents, and signs of continued confidence. They represented the licentious and violent conduct of the Spaniards, who had been left there, both in their intercourse with the natives and with each other. They had been avaricious and quarrelsome, and were at last attacked in the night time by Caonabo, a powerful cacique of the province of Cibao. They were all slain, their fortress destroyed, and the cottages of the friendly Indians of the neighborhood laid in ashes.

6. Columbus determined to seek out immediately a more favorable position for a colony. Melchor Maldonado was despatched with his caravel to cruise along the eastern coast. He soon received an invitation from Guacanagari to visit him. The cacique was found in his hanging-bed, apparently very sick. He told the story of the attack of Caonabo, and said that his present confinement was owing to a wound he had received in that affair. His thigh was wrapped in a cotton bandage. He presented the captain and the chief persons who accompanied him several pieces of gold, and expressed an eager desire to see the admiral.

7. On hearing this, Columbus visited him with a splendid retinue. The cacique displayed great

5. What of the Indian messengers? What provocation had the colonists given the Indians? 6. What of Melchor Maldonado? What did Guacanagari tell him? 7. Relate what passed between the admiral and the cacique.

sorrow for the death of the Spaniards, and presented the admiral with some beautiful girdles, a cap set round with gems, and three gourds filled with gold dust. The Spaniards, however, still distrusted him; and when the surgeon of the fleet took the bandages from his leg, he found no trace of any wound or bruise. Columbus, however, pretended to believe his story, carried him on board of his ship, and gave him several toys, with which he was very much delighted. He was then dismissed in safety.

8. Many of the Spaniards thought that he should have been detained prisoner. Their opinion of his treachery was confirmed by an incident that took place on the following night, in which the king was supposed to have taken some part. While on his visit to the ship, he was observed to have been very much pleased, and to have conversed with Catalina, one of the women whom Columbus had delivered from the Caribs. On the next night, these women silently leaped into the water, and made for the shore. The sea was somewhat rough, and the ships were lying about three miles from land. They were followed by the boats, but only three of them were overtaken. Catalina, with four or five others, escaped. On the following morning, the village of the cacique was entirely deserted.

9. Parties were now sent out to reconnoitre the

8. What of the cacique and the Indian women? 9. For what purpose did parties of men search the island?

island, and find Guacanagari. They scoured the shores, and the lighter caravels entered far into the windings of the rivers. Maldonado was at the head of this expedition, and, with his party, was going towards a high house they saw at a distance, where they supposed the cacique might have taken refuge. "And as he was going," says Peter Martyr, "there met him a man with a frowning countenance and a grim look, with a hundred men following him, armed with bows and arrows, and long and sharp stakes like javelins, made hard at the ends with fire; who, approaching towards our men, spake out aloud with a terrible voice, saying that they were Taini, that is, noble men, and not cannibals; but when our men had given them signs of peace, they left both their weapons and fierceness. Thus, giving each of them certain hawks' bells, they took it for so great a reward, that they desired to enter bonds of near friendship with us, and feared not immediately to submit themselves under our power, and resorted to our ships with their presents."

10. It was learned that Guacanagari had retired to the mountains; and on this intelligence, the fleet sailed from Navidad to Monte Christi. The admiral intended to steer towards the east, and establish a colony at the harbor of La Plata. But being detained by contrary winds, the fleet finally came to

Whom did they meet? Relate the adventure in the words of Peter Martyr. 10. What did the Spaniards hear of the cacique? Where did the fleet finally anchor?

anchor in a haven about ten leagues east of Monte Christi, where there seemed to be a very fine situation for a colony. The soil was fertile, and the surrounding sea abounded in fish. Behind it were impenetrable woods, and the rocks below it might be easily crowned with a strong fortress.

11. This was the place, therefore, chosen for the new settlement. A chapel was immediately erected, in which a Catholic festival was, for the first time, celebrated, on the sixth of January, 1494. The public buildings of the new town were erected of stone. The private houses were built of wood, and covered with grass and leaves. Seeds were sown, which sprung up with great rapidity. The neighboring Indians assisted them in building, and provided them food, with the greatest diligence and zeal. Columbus called the new settlement Isabella, in honor of the distinguished patron of his expedition.

12. As soon as the town was erected, and they had begun to surround it with stone walls, it was determined to send an expedition to penetrate into the interior of the island, and seek for the gold mines. Many of the Spaniards at this time were

Where had the admiral intended to establish a colony? Describe the place chosen for the settlement. 11. When was a chapel erected? How was the new town built? How did the Indians assist the Spaniards? What name was given to the settlement? 12. What was determined upon after the completion of the town?

sick. A sudden distemper had broken out among them, brought on by the change of food and climate, and the vapors and exhalations of a luxuriant soil. The disease, however, was not of a very malignant nature, and there was no want of laborers and soldiers.

13. Two parties were despatched to explore the island, consisting of fifteen men each, and commanded by the brave soldiers Gorvalan and Ojeda. They marched in a southerly direction, and in a few days found themselves in a high chain of mountains, in the middle of the province of Cibao. These mountains were watered by several rivers which flowed over sands that glittered with gold. The Indians collected small quantities of gold dust, and a few pieces of gold ore, which they brought to the Spaniards in exchange for such trifles as they had with them. Being convinced by these tokens that they had really found the golden mines, they returned to the ships.

14. The colonists, through sickness and fatigue, had been very much disheartened. They had been disappointed in their avaricious hopes, and in their dreams of indolent indulgence. Their spirits were somewhat revived by the accounts of Ojeda; and Columbus determined to go in person to the moun-

What sickness prevailed in the colony? 13. Who commanded the two exploring parties? What mountains did they cross? What did the Indians bring the Spaniards? 14. What did Columbus determine to do on the return of the two parties?

tains of Cibao, and select a site for a Spanish settlement.

15. Before taking any other measures, however, it was necessary to despatch thirteen ships to Spain to carry home an account of their situation, and a list of the articles necessary for their maintenance. In his letters, Columbus described the great beauty and fertility of the islands, the probable abundance of spices and aromatic shrubs, and the discovery of the gold mines, from which he was in hopes to acquire immense treasures. He sent by this fleet the little gold that had been collected at Cibao, and several Caribs, men, women and children, whom he was desirous of educating in Spain for interpreters. They were observed to be acquainted with the greatest variety of the Indian languages, and were, therefore, the best adapted for this purpose.

16. The fleet set sail upon the second of February. The admiral endeavored to forward the completion of the town, that he might see it entirely finished before setting out for Cibao. This was delayed, however, by several circumstances. He was attacked by a fit of sickness, and, during the time that he was confined by it, a mutiny broke out among the discontented. The leader of the disturbance was Bernal Diaz de Pisa, the head ac-

15. What did he say of the new country in his letters to Spain ? What did he send ? 16. What delays did the admiral meet with in going to Cibao ? What mutiny broke out in the colony

countant. They had laid a scheme to prepare formal charges against Columbus, and to return to Spain with the five ships which remained in the harbor. The admiral recovered from his illness, and, on learning about the plot, he confined Bernal Diaz in one of the ships, and inflicted some light punishment upon the chief accomplices. Having thus arranged affairs at home, he set out, on the twelfth of March, for the gold mines, with about four hundred men, and a number of horses.

17. About four leagues from the town, there was a difficult defile through the mountains, which the admiral called Puerto de los Hidalgos, signifying the pass of the gentlemen. It was so named because a number of cavaliers first led the way through it. When the admiral had reached, with much toil, the summit of the mountain, he was repaid by the rich prospect upon all sides, that had so much delighted Ojeda and his companions. The luxuriant foliage of the broad-spreading trees, with painted birds gleaming among their branches, and the extended verdure of the plains, rich with the fragrant shrubs and delicious fruits of that glowing climate, presented a most gorgeous spectacle to the sight.

18. They were two days in travelling five leagues over this delightful valley; partly from the broad

When did Columbus set out for the gold mines? 17. What does Puerto de Los Hidalgos signify? Describe the prospect from the summit of the mountain 18. What delayed their journey?

streams which interrupted their march, and partly on account of the visits which they paid to several places. Columbus availed himself of this occasion to impress the Indians with respect and awe for the Europeans. For this reason he commanded his troops to march from Isabella, in warlike procession, with the sound of trumpets, and the display of banners, and glittering in steel. His cavalry were always placed in front, for the Indians expressed great terror at the sight of horses. On the appearance of the army, the natives every where took refuge in their cottages, and fastened the doors with a barrier of reeds.

19. When they reached the hills and mountains beyond the valley, they marched slowly in a path which grew more steep and rugged as they advanced. The ground was bare of verdure and vegetation, and covered with blue pebbles. The Indians, who came out to meet them, brought food and gold to exchange as usual for beads and bells. They were now in Cibao, the famous region of gold. Columbus was confident of the neighborhood of mines, from the particles of the precious dust that glittered among the sands of the streams. Here, therefore, he determined to establish a fortress without going any farther into the country; and for this purpose he chose a pleasant eminence almost en-

What effect had the warlike appearance of the Spaniards on the Indians? 19. Describe the country of Cibao. What situation did the admiral choose for the erection of a fortress?

tirely surrounded by the waters of a small river called the Jánique. He gave it the name of St. Thomas, and leaving fifty-six men and several horses there, set out on his return to Isabella.

20. He had hardly rested from the fatigues of his travels, when news was brought of an intended attack, by Caonabo, upon the fortress at St. Thomas. He knew, however, the weakness of the Indians, and their fear of the white men, and above all their great dread of the horses, and was therefore under no great apprehension. Yet he despatched to their fortress about sixty men, with ammunition and provisions. After sending away this party, he resolved to allow only the sick to remain in the town, and to send the rest about the island, from the dominions of one cacique to another, in order to accustom them to the country and its produce, and prevent the too rapid consumption of the food and wine they had brought with them from Spain.

21. This want of food promised to be soon remedied by the extreme fertility of the soil. Wheat, sown in the latter part of January, was in ripe ears by the thirtieth of March. Melons and gourds were fit for the table in a month from the planting of the seeds. Vines put forth leaves in seven days, and clustered with unripe grapes in twenty-five

What name did he give it? 20. What news did Columbus hear soon after his return? How many men did he send to St. Thomas? What did he resolve to do? 21. What can you say of the fertility of the soil?

days, after they were planted. All this, however, was only promise. The number of men employed in the expedition to Cibao, and the number sick of the fever, left but very few to cultivate the soil.

22. From this, and from other causes, the Spaniards had become restless and depressed. All were compelled to work. The nobleman received no more favor or exemption than the soldier. There were public buildings and mills to be erected, canals to be cut, and the sick to be provided with nourishment and attendance. And the severity and rigor of their toil occasioned murmurs and complaints against Columbus.

23. All the soldiers and laborers in good health were therefore sent upon foraging parties. To their command the admiral appointed Pedro Margarite, a knight on whose valor and prudence he placed great reliance. He ordered him to go through all the provinces, and observe their climate and productions; to preserve the strictest discipline among the troops; and to treat the natives with the utmost kindness and justice. As they every day heard new accounts of the ferocity of Caonabo, he ordered them to take him prisoner; and to cut off the nose and ears of those who should be caught pilfering from the troops.

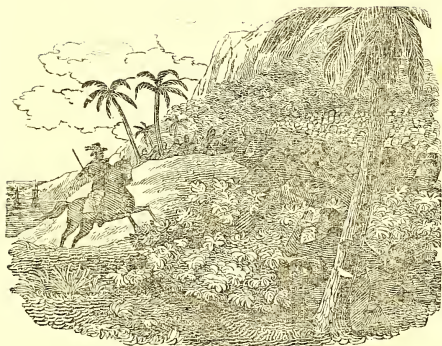
22. Why did the Spaniards become depressed, and murmur against Columbus? 23. Whom did the admiral place at the head of the foraging party? What orders were given to him?

24. Ojeda went forth from Isabella at the head of about four hundred men. On arriving at the Rio del Oro, he learnt that three Spaniards had been robbed of their garments, by some natives who had offered to carry them across the river. Instead of giving up the thieves, their cacique protected them, and received half of the booty. The soldiers caught one of the Indians, and Ojeda ordered his ears to be cut off in the public square of the village. He also arrested the cacique, with his brother and nephew, and sent them in chains to the admiral.

25. Columbus was desirous of teaching the natives a proper respect for the property of the Spaniards. He ordered, therefore, that the prisoners should be led into the public square, their crime to be proclaimed by the crier, and their heads struck off. A neighboring cacique, who was friendly to both parties, and had accompanied the Indians from the time of their arrest, interceded for them with prayers and tears. He pledged himself that the offence should not be repeated, and the admiral at length yielded to his entreaties, and released the prisoners.

26. Just at this time, a horseman rode into the town, who had found five Spaniards, prisoners in

24. What did Ojeda hear concerning the Indians? How were they punished? 25. What prisoners did Columbus release? intercession of a cacique?



The Indians frightened by a man on horseback.

the village of the captive cacique. Indians had collected there to the number of four hundred, but the sight of his horse had put the whole multitude to flight. Columbus was assured by this incident that there was nothing to be feared from the attack of the natives, and prepared to depart in person for the prosecution of his discoveries. Leaving his brother Don Diego governor of the island during his absence, with several assistant counsellors, he proceeded upon his voyage with three caravels, his two remaining vessels being of too heavy a size for such an excursion.

CHAPTER VIII.

Fishermen at Puerto Grande. Queen's Garden. Singular Manner of taking Fish. Adventure in the Woods. Columbus pursues his Voyage. Is convinced that Cuba is the Extremity of the Asiatic Continent. Evangelista. Harbor on the Coast of Cuba. Interview with an old Man. Jamaica. Visit of a Cacique. Columbus seized with Sickness. Return to Isabella.

1. AFTER sailing along the northern coast of Hispaniola, and touching at the harbor of La Navidad, in the vain hope of an interview with Guacan-

26. Relate the incident of the horse alarming the Indians. Who was left governor of the island when Columbus departed ?

agari, Columbus continued his course to Cuba. He anchored in a spacious harbor, to which he gave the name of Puerto Grande. Its entrance was winding, but of great depth. Not far from the shore they found two cottages covered with reeds, and fires kindled in several places; but no human being was seen in the neighborhood. They found large numbers of fishes and guanias, a sort of lizards, some hanging from the trees and some upon spits at the fires. "They fell to their meat," says Peter Martyr, "and eat the fish taken with other men's travail, but they abstained from the serpents, which they affirm to differ nothing from the crocodiles of Egypt, but only in bigness."

2. In going about the island, they saw a large number of the natives collected among the high rocks. Signs of peace were made, and one of the interpreters went out to meet them. In a little while they descended from the rocks, and came out on the shore. It appeared that they had been sent by some neighboring cacique, to obtain fish for a great banquet. They were much obliged to the Spaniards for not having taken a fancy to their guanias, as they esteemed them a great luxury. The loss of fish they could supply immediately; but Columbus ordered a sufficient recompense to be made to them.

1. In what harbor did Columbus anchor? What was found on the shore? What does Peter Martyr say? 2. What of the natives? What food was in high esteem among the Indians?

3. The admiral sailed along the coast, keeping very near to it. Men, women and children continually crowded to the shore, bringing whatever they could find to barter for beads and bells. All inquiries after gold they answered by pointing towards the south. While sailing in this direction, they reached a beautiful island, which still retains the Indian name of Jamaica. It was found to be very populous and pleasant. On attempting to land, they were met by a large number of canoes, filled with armed Indians, who resisted their approach, darting arrows and javelins, and setting up menacing shouts. Columbus ordered a few shot to be fired among them; and a large dog was let loose, which occasioned great terror and confusion.

4. On the following day, however, they again resorted to the shore, and engaged in trafficki~~ng~~g with the Spaniards. Most of them were painted with various colors, wearing feathers upon their heads, and palm leaves upon their breasts. Some of their canoes were ornamented with carved work and paintings. These boats were each made out of a single trunk, and many of them were of great size. One was found to be ninety-six feet long and eight broad.

5. Columbus now bore off for Cuba, resolving to

3. Why did Columbus sail to the south? What island did he reach? How did the natives receive the Spaniards? In what manner were they intimidated? 4. Describe the Indians. Their

and several hundred leagues along the coast, and discover whether it were really the continent. A large group of islands, through which his ships now passed, he called the Queen's Garden. When coasting along Cuba, he frequently sent the boats ashore, with several men, who might inform themselves of the character and products of the country, and inquire of the natives as to its extent.

6. While thus engaged, they saw a singular manner of taking fish among the natives of one of the islands of Queen's Garden. "Like as we with greyhounds do hunt hares in the plain fields," says Peter Martyr, "so do they as it were with a hunting fish take other fishes." This fish was of a form before unknown to the Spaniards, having on the back part of the head a very rough skin. The creature is tied by a cord to the side of the boat, and let down into the water. When the Indians see any great fish, or tortoise, the cord is loosened, and the hunting fish fastens upon it, retaining its hold with so much force that the prey is drawn with it to the surface of the water, and there secured.

7. Some of the sailors invented a strange story to impose upon the credulity of their comrades, or were themselves unaccountably deceived, after the following manner. They had gone ashore at the foot of a high mountain, to procure fuel and fresh

5. What islands did Columbus pass through? 6. Describe the Indian manner of taking fish. 7. Relate what happened to a sailor in the woods.

water. Meanwhile one of the archers went into the woods to hunt, and strayed to some distance from his companions. He there saw a man clothed in white garments, so like a friar of the order of St. Mary, that he at first thought it was the admiral's priest. Two more, however, dressed in the same manner, immediately followed him; and shortly after he saw a whole company of them. He turned instantly, and fled to the ships.

8. On being told of this, the admiral imagined that he had discovered a civilized people, and sent a body of armed men with orders to penetrate forty miles into the country, till they reached their settlements. When they had passed the woods, they came to a great plain covered with very high grass, in which they could find no pathway, and were so entangled by it that they were obliged to return. On the next day another body made a similar attempt, and were terrified from it by seeing the track of certain wild beasts, which they supposed to be lions.

9. On their way back to the ships, they passed through a wood where they found a great many vines clustering about the trees, with many aromatic fruits and spices. They took bunches of grapes with them, which the admiral sent to Spain, with other fruits, which, however, soon perished. There

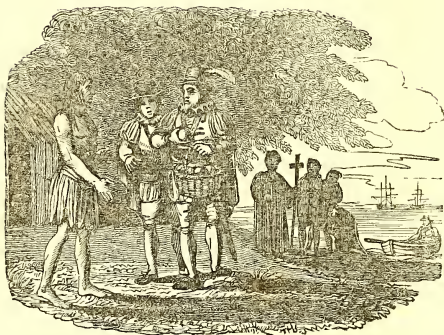
8. What did the admiral then do? What prevented the men from penetrating far into the country? 9. What did they find on their return?

were many flocks of large cranes in the wood, and it may have been these, seen at a distance, which first excited the astonishment and fear of the archer.

10. Columbus pursued his voyage till he had sailed along the coast of Cuba three hundred and thirty-five leagues. The natives could not tell him the extent of the country, though they knew that it exceeded twenty days' travelling. Comparing these circumstances with his previous notions, he arrived at the conclusion that "this country was the beginning of India, which he had intended to come to from Spain." He caused this decision to be published on board the three ships, and all the seamen and most skilful pilots fully concurred with him in the opinion. They all declared under oath that they had no doubt upon the subject. The admiral also swore to his belief, and the clerk formally attested it, on board of the *Nina*, on the twelfth of June.

11. At this very time, a ship-boy from the mast-top could have seen the open sea beyond the islands to the south; and if Columbus had continued his course in that direction but a single day more, he would have arrived at the end of his imagined continent. But in this error he lived and died:

10. What conclusion did Columbus arrive at, while sailing along the coast of Cuba? What did all the seamen concur in believing? 11. What would have happened if Columbus had sailed a day more to the south?



An old Indian presenting Columbus with fruits

supposing Cuba the extremity of the Asiatic continent.

12. The admiral relinquished all further examination of the coast, and stood south-east to an island which he named Evangelista. He here became enclosed in a large bay, which he had supposed a channel opening to the south-east. The water in some places in this sea was as white as milk; and according to one writer, there were sometimes such a multitude of tortoises that they arrested the progress of the ships. At length they were once more coasting along the beautiful and luxuriant shores of Cuba.

13. Here Columbus sought for a pleasant and convenient harbor, where his weary crew might find refreshment and repose. An incident occurred here, while the admiral was hearing mass upon shore, that is of considerable interest. An old man, of great dignity and gravity, came towards them, and behaved very reverently all the time that the ceremony was going on. When the mass was over, he presented with his own hands to Columbus a basket of fruit; and when he had been some time entertained there, he requested permission to speak a few words through the interpreter. The amount of this speech is thus given by Peter Martyr:—

What did he suppose in respect to Cuba? 12. What of Evangelista? What of the water of the bay in which the fleet was enclosed? 13. Relate the anecdote of the old man.

14. "I have been advertised, most mighty prince, that you have of late with great power subdued many lands and regions hitherto unknown to you, and have brought no little fear upon all the people and inhabitants of the same; the which your good fortune you shall bear with less insolence if you remember that the souls of men have two journeys, after they are departed from this body; the one, foul and dark, prepared for such as are injurious and cruel to mankind; the other, pleasant and delectable, ordained for them which in their time loved peace and quietness. If, therefore, you acknowledge yourself to be mortal, and consider that every man shall receive condign reward or punishment for such things as he hath done in this life, you will wrongfully hurt no man."

15. Columbus was much pleased and affected by the eloquent wisdom of the old man, as it was conveyed to him by the interpreter. He answered that the chief cause of his coming was to instruct the islanders in the true religion; and that he had special commands from his sovereigns of Spain to subdue and punish the mischievous, and defend the innocent against violence from evil doers. The old man was delighted with the admiral, and was desirous to accompany him upon the voyage, notwith-

14. Repeat his speech to the admiral. 15. How was Columbus pleased with him? What did he tell him?

standing his extreme age. The entreaties of his wife and children alone prevented him.

16. Columbus remained several days in the river, which he named from the celebration of mass upon its banks. On taking leave of his old adviser, he steered south for the open sea. He was detained a few days about the islands of Queen's Garden, by storms and contrary winds. Again visiting Jamaica, he was received with confidence and kindness; and at one time a powerful cacique came in quite a royal state to see him. He was quite richly ornamented, and sailed in a very large and handsomely carved and painted canoe. His wife and two beautiful daughters, with his sons and brothers, accompanied him. He was attended by a standard bearer, two trumpeters, two men beating upon tabors, and six men in large caps of white feathers. Besides these, he was guarded by two canoes full of his subjects.

17. This cacique was deeply impressed with the power of the Spaniards, and was very desirous to embark, with his whole family, in the fleet. But Columbus was aware of the suffering and misery to which they would necessarily be exposed, and refused to grant his request. He took leave of him

What prevented the old man from accompanying Columbus?
16. At what islands was the admiral detained after leaving Cuba? What of the cacique of Jamaica? By whom was he attended? 17. What did he wish to do? Why did Columbus refuse his request?

with many expressions of regret and kindness, and continued on his course.

18. On the twenty-fourth of September, they had reached the eastern extremity of Hispaniola, and pursued their voyage towards the south-east. It was the design of Columbus, at the present time, to complete the discovery of the Caribbee Islands. But the fatigues which he had suffered during the voyage had completely exhausted him. Besides his great mental exertions, he had shared in the bodily labors of the expedition, with more unwearied activity than the best of his seamen. He had shared all their privations and toils with them. His body and mind at length sunk under these continued and unintermitted labors. A deep lethargy fell upon him, and his crew were fearful that he would die. He could neither remember, nor see, nor hear; and was carried back in a state of insensibility to the harbor of Isabella.

18. What was the design of the admiral? How was he affected by his great exertions? To what place was he taken?

CHAPTER IX.

Columbus meets with his Brother Bartholomew. Account of his Adventures. Affairs at the Island during the Admiral's Absence. Bold Exploit of Ojeda. Captivity of Caonabo. Arrival of four Ships from Spain. Battle with the Indians. Imposition of Tribute.

1. COLUMBUS was still very sick when they reached Isabella, but was filled with surprise and joy to find at his bed-side his brother Bartholomew. It was now about thirteen years since they had met, and, hearing no news at any time of his movements, the admiral had supposed him to be dead. We have before mentioned the distresses that befell Bartholomew on his journey to London. After many years of poverty, he had obtained access to the king, and obtained promises of assistance. He then returned to Spain, to bear the tidings of encouragement to Columbus.

2. In passing through Paris, he was received with great kindness by the French monarch, and was there first informed of the splendid discoveries that had been made in the New World. The prince then furnished him with a hundred crowns, to pursue his route to Spain. Columbus had departed

1. Who did Columbus see at Isabella? What had Bartholomew obtained from the king? 2. What of the French monarch?

on the second voyage before his arrival, but the sovereigns provided him with means to equip three vessels freighted with supplies for the colony. He was appointed to the command of the ships, and received orders to aid his brother in all his enterprises. He reached Isabella just after the admiral had departed for the coast of Cuba.

3. The supplies arrived at a very fortunate period. The want of provision had been very severely felt, and occasioned a variety of maladies. The greatest evils had been suffered by the troops under the command of Margarite. This officer entirely disregarded the orders which Columbus had given him, in respect to the management and discipline of the soldiers. They committed every violence upon the unprotected natives with impunity. They were greedy of gold, wasteful of the food which they took by force from the Indians, and licentious in the extreme.

4. Don Diego Columbus, who had been left in command of the colony, wrote to Margarite in remonstrance against the conduct of his troops. He replied in a tone of haughty defiance, and refused to recognise the authority of the governor to control his movements. A party of the discontented and turbulent had already been formed.

How many ships was Bartholomew provided with? When did he reach Isabella? 3. What of the troops under the command of Margarite? 4. What of Don Diego Columbus? What party had been formed?

The cavaliers, who disliked the rigorous discipline of the admiral, joined with those men who were naturally indolent, and sadly disappointed in their expectations of gold ; and all of them, countenanced by Margarite, and Father Boil, a powerful priest, and chief ecclesiastic of the expedition, were desirous of a return to Spain. They accordingly took possession of some of the ships in the harbor, and carried their purpose into effect.

5. The Indians had been exceedingly incensed by the violence and outrage of the soldiers. The several caciques of the island, with the exception of Guacanagari, were all eager for their extermination. These caciques were five in number, the most powerful and warlike of whom was the famous Caonabo. Though timid and unused to war, the Indians were roused by the excesses that had been committed. The Spaniards were attacked and slain, whenever a small party of them were unfortunately exposed in a situation at any distance from the garrison. The dispersion of the army, at the departure of Margarite, afforded the natives several advantages in pursuing their revenge.

6. They had now become more bold and daring, and at length determined to attack the fortress of St. Thomas. A body of ten thousand warriors

What purpose did they carry into effect ? 5. How did the Indians regard the Spaniards ? What of Caonabo ? How did the natives revenge themselves on the Spaniards ?

were assembled for that purpose, under the command of Caonabo. They made their way secretly through the forest, and came suddenly upon the garrison, which was commanded by Alonzo de Ojeda. This cavalier was brave and experienced, and the Indians failed to take him by surprise. They then endeavored to reduce the fortress by famine; but in this, too, they were disappointed. At length the siege was raised, and the natives again dispersed about the island.

7. This was the state of things when Columbus returned to Isabella. The evils which he had in some measure feared had really broken out, and it was too late to prevent them. In the course of a few days, he received a visit from Guacanagari, who offered him any assistance in his power to bestow. The admiral determined to march in person against the caciques, who had united against the Spaniards. Before leaving Isabella, however, he was desirous of investing his brother Bartholomew, to whom he intended to give the care of the settlement during his absence, with a title and dignity sufficient to secure respect. He gave him the title of *adelantado*, which signifies lieutenant general; an honor which he richly deserved for his valor, prudence, and intelligence.

8. Columbus knew the small number of his own

6. Describe the attack upon the Spanish fortress. 7. What did the admiral determine to do? What title did he bestow upon his brother Bartholomew?

forces, compared with the countless multitudes of the enemy. He was anxious, consequently, to attack them in separate parties, and to make skill and stratagem supply the place of open force. Caonabo was by far the most formidable and warlike of the caciques, and the first efforts of the admiral were directed to secure him as a prisoner.

9. This was effected by a bold exploit of Alonzo de Ojeda. This knight volunteered to capture Caonabo, and deliver him alive to Columbus. Taking with him nine well mounted followers, he penetrated into the forest as far as Maguana, the usual residence of the cacique. He had previously given out the report that he was going, with presents, to conciliate the prince, and establish with him a durable peace. The small number of his attendants prevented any suspicion, and the king received him with a great deal of courtesy and splendor.

10. Ojeda laid before the king the presents with which he had been charged; accompanying them with many expressions of esteem from the admiral, and of regret that the good understanding with his subjects should have been interrupted. He then proposed certain conditions, under which he had authority to treat. They were very reasonable and advantageous to the Indians. Among other pres-

8. In what manner was Columbus anxious to attack the Indians? Whom did he wish to take prisoner? 9. What did Alonzo de Ojeda undertake to accomplish? How was he received by Caonabo? 10. What did Ojeda say to him?

ents, he promised Caonabo the bell of the chapel at Isabella. This had always been an object of great wonder to the islanders when it rung, and the Spaniards thereupon went to religious service: they supposed it talked, and that the white men obeyed it. The cacique had frequently expressed a great desire to possess it, and was very willing to accept it as a present of peace.

11. Ojeda had now secured a favorable reception; but the most difficult task was still to be accomplished. Caonabo was willing to visit the admiral, but only with a large army, by way of retinue. Ojeda then told the chieftain that he had a very particular mark of favor to bestow upon him, and displayed a set of beautifully wrought manacles of steel, so polished and shining as to resemble silver. He gave him to understand, that it was the custom to wear these marks of honor on the feet and hands, and that the kings of Spain were adorned with them at their festivals and solemn dances. He then proposed that the cacique should go with him to the river to bathe, and there having been decorated with these ornaments, return on horseback to his subjects.

12. The splendor of this proposal dazzled the mind of the wary chieftain. The thought of wearing such ornaments, and of being mounted upon a

How was the church bell regarded by the Indians? 11. What difficult task was still to be accomplished?

horse, quite overcame him. He accompanied Ojeda to the river with a very small number of attendants. After having bathed, he was seated behind the Spanish cavalier, and his manacles duly adjusted. The party then took two or three circles, the terrified and astonished Indians removing farther and farther from the formidable animals and their favored chieftain. At length, Ojeda plunged into the forest, and was followed by his attendants. They there drew their swords, and threatened him with death if he attempted to excite an alarm, or effect his escape. He was then bound with cords to Ojeda, and they made their way with all speed to Isabella.

13. The haughty Carib endured his captivity with a sullen fierceness. He treated Ojeda always with the greatest respect, for he considered his exploit worthy of a brave warrior. He always rose when this cavalier came into the room, and saluted him with a token of regard. Towards Columbus, however, he would never exhibit any mark of submission; saying that he would never humiliate himself before a traitor, who did not dare to execute his own treason. The admiral was unwilling to put his proud enemy to death, and it was dangerous to keep him a captive in the island. He determined, consequently, to send him to Spain.

12. Relate the manner in which Ojeda succeeded in capturing the Indian monarch. 13. How did Caonabo treat Ojeda? Why would he not show any regard or submission to Columbus? What did the admiral determine to do with him?

14. The colony were now greatly relieved by the arrival of four ships with provisions, under the command of Antonio de Tones. By the same arrival, Columbus received letters from the sovereigns, expressing their entire satisfaction in the discharge of his duties. They requested him, also, to remit to them full accounts of all that he had observed during his voyage, of the islands he had discovered, and the rare birds and plants that he had found. They told him that their differences with Portugal had been amicably settled, and that they had mutually agreed to draw a geographical line, which should separate their respective possessions. These letters gave him some consolation for what he had suffered in the colonies, and additional authority to undertake what he considered necessary for the public good.

15. The captivity of Caonabo incensed his brothers and his subjects. The fame of this cacique throughout the island excited a general sympathy in his behalf. His wife was a woman of great influence and character. It was not surprising, therefore, that a movement should have been made among all the tribes, to procure his release. Guacanagari alone remained friendly to the Spaniards.

16. News was brought to Isabella, that large

14. What did the four ships bring to the colony? What news did Columbus hear from the sovereigns? 15. What effect had the captivity of Caonabo upon the Indians?

numbers of Indians were assembling in the Vega, the very beautiful plain at about two days' march from their settlement. The admiral had recovered his health, and the number of efficient men able to engage in an expedition was about two hundred and twenty. With this force he determined to take the field. On arriving at the Vega, he procured certain intelligence in respect to the measures of the Indians. They appeared to be one hundred thousand in number, and were commanded by Manicaotex, the brother of Caonabo. Their numbers probably are very much exaggerated.

17. The battle that here took place displays the advantages possessed by both parties, in their various conflicts. The Indians were naked, armed with clubs, stones, arrows tipped with bones, and spears hardened at the points by fire. They were lurking in the brush-wood and among the trees, making the air resound with their shouts of defiance. The Spaniards were clad in steel, armed with swords and muskets, and marching to the sound of drums and trumpets. Some of them were mounted upon horses, so formidable to the Indians; and the band was accompanied by a number of sanguinary wolf-dogs.

18. The Spaniards marched in several quarters

16. At what place were the Indians assembling? What number of Spaniards did Columbus take against the enemy? What was said to be the number of the Indians? By whom were they commanded? 17. Describe the martial array of both parties

to the attack. They discharged their fire-arms, rushing furiously upon the naked savages, trampling them beneath the hoofs of their horses, and loosing at once upon them the fierce blood-hounds. It was impossible for the Indians to offer any resistance. They fled panic-struck, with cries of terror, seeking refuge among the high rocks and mountains, howling piteously, offering every submission, and praying only that their lives might be spared. Many were slain, many taken prisoners, and the whole multitude completely dispersed.

19. By this victory the Indians were reduced to complete subjection. The Spaniards made a tour through the island to receive the submission of the natives, and impose a tribute upon them. In the region of the gold mines, all the inhabitants, over fourteen years of age, were compelled to pay, every three months, a hawk's bell full of gold. In the other provinces, the tax was changed to twenty-five pounds of cotton.

20. Manicaotex, who had been one of the leaders of the revolt, was obliged to render a monthly tribute of a gourd full of gold dust. Guarionex, having no mines, nor streams with golden sands, offered to cultivate a large extent of country for the use of the Spaniards, and sow it with corn. A sort of brass medal was stamped, and given to each

18. What was the result of the attack of the Spaniards? 19. What tax was imposed upon the natives? 20. For what purpose were medals given to the Indians?

Indian who payed his tribute, as a receipt. This was to be worn about the neck, and all who were found without it were punished.

21. Thus was the yoke completely fastened upon this unhappy race. Their accustomed indolence was exchanged for weary and continual toil, beneath the eye of relentless task-masters. Some found it impossible to collect the required tribute, and fled for safety to the rocks and caverns of the mountains. But even here they were pursued and taken by their oppressors. All their efforts at defence or retaliation were fruitless. Many perished of hunger and wretchedness in the places where they had gathered for refuge. Their peace and happiness had been lost forever. Even the friendly Indians were loaded with oppressive tributes, and Guacanagari perished in obscurity and want.

21. Relate the sufferings of the unfortunate savages. What became of the friendly Guacanagari ?

CHAPTER X.

Arrival of Juan Aguado. Interview with Columbus. Violent Storm. Discovery of Mines. Return to Spain. Reception of Columbus at Court. Equipment of Vessels. Delays. Departure on the third Voyage. Discovery of La Trinidad. Adventure with the Natives.

1. THE island having been thus brought to obedience, Columbus determined to return to Spain. He knew that he had active enemies at court, who would take every occasion to injure him in the eyes of his sovereign. However great his services, he was aware of the power of unceasing malice and misrepresentation, in men of powerful influence, when exerted against the absent and envied. Pedro Margarite and Father Boil had been busily engaged in laying their accusations before the sovereigns, and it was determined that a person of trust and confidence should be sent to Hispaniola, to inquire into existing abuses.

2. At the time of the arrival of this officer, a weak and insolent creature, named Juan Aguado, the admiral was engaged with the Indians, in the interior of the island. The *adelantado* commanded in his place. Aguado treated him with great haugh-

1. Of what was Columbus aware? What of Pedro Margarite and Father Boil? 2. What officer was sent from Spain to look into Columbus's affairs?

teness, using menaces, and going beyond the powers which had been granted to him by the crown. The *adelantado* requested to see the commission under which he acted; but he replied, with a great deal of insolence, that he would show it to no one but the admiral. A few days afterwards, he set out for the interior, proclaiming that he had come to examine into the affairs of Columbus, and deliver the island from his tyranny. All the discontented and vicious of the colony crowded about his banners, to murmur and complain against the admiral.

3. Columbus repaired to Isabella immediately on hearing of his arrival; and here the first interview took place between them. The admiral treated Aguado with the greatest moderation, and professed himself willing, in all things, to obey the suggestions of his sovereigns. He declared his intention to return at once to Spain, and give in person a statement of the situation of affairs, and the course of his own administration. Aguado determined to accompany him.

4. When the ships were ready to set sail, they were attacked by a violent tempest. Large trees on the island were torn up by the roots, and the sea rose higher than it was ever known to have risen before. Three of the ships were whirled

How did Aguado treat the *adelantado*? What did he then do?

3. What of the interview between the admiral and Aguado?

4. Describe the tempest.

round as they lay at anchor, and, with all who were on board, carried to the bottom. The others were tossed about on the waves, dashed against each other, and carried mere wrecks to the shore. The only vessel that survived, capable of being repaired, was the *Nina*; and one more caravel was immediately constructed out of the wrecks of those which had been destroyed.

5. While repairing the vessels, they received intelligence, from some neighboring caciques, that there were, in a certain place towards the south, mines very rich with gold. Miguel Diaz and Francisco de Garay were immediately despatched with an escort, and Indian guides, to ascertain the truth of the report. They travelled as far as a river called Hayna, into which they were told that a number of brooks with golden sands flowed. They found things as they had been represented, and carried back a quantity of gold dust and ore to the admiral. This discovery was very seasonable. Columbus knew that the secret of filling the coffers of his sovereigns was a sure safeguard of their favor.

6. The new caravel being finished, and the *Nina* repaired, arrangements were made for immediate departure. On the tenth of March, 1496, they set sail from Isabella; the two brothers of Columbus

5. Who were despatched in search of gold? What success had they? What river had golden sands? 6. When did the fleet set sail from Isabella? Whom did Columbus leave behind?

being left in the government during his absence. In one of the caravels the admiral commanded, in the other Aguado. The ships were crowded with the sick, the discontented and the vicious of the colony. About thirty Indians, among whom was the formidable Caonabo, also embarked with them.

7. On the tenth of April, Columbus reached Guadaloupe, and anchored with the intention of sending ashore for wood and water. As the boat was nearing the land, a large number of females appeared upon the banks, armed with bows and arrows, and determined to resist their approach. Two Indians, who were on board, then leaped into the water, and swam to the shore. They told these Amazons that no harm was intended them, and that their visitors wanted nothing but a little wood and water. In reply, they informed the Spaniards that their husbands were at a distant part of the island, and that they could not bargain with them during their absence.

8. The Spaniards were hardly satisfied with this answer, and accordingly rowed towards the land. They were met by a shower of arrows, which, fortunately, did no injury. A musket was then discharged, and the Indians fled immediately to the woods. They were pursued, and about forty of them taken, among whom was the wife of the

Of what men was the crew composed? 7. What island did Columbus reach on the tenth of April? Who appeared upon the banks? What then happened?

cacique. Presents were given to the prisoners, and they were treated very kindly. The desired confidence was gained by this conduct, and no further difficulty ensued in procuring the articles they wanted.

9. Having furnished themselves with bread, wood and water, on the twentieth of April they set sail from Guadaloupe. They had but little wind, and the ships were full of people. In about a month, they began to feel severely the want of provisions. They were obliged to be put upon very small allowance. The pilots had no idea of the true situation of the vessels. Meanwhile their sufferings increased, and became so intolerable that it was even proposed to throw the Indians overboard, in order to lessen the consumption of the little food they had remaining. Before they came to this extremity, they however, reached the land. In the course of this voyage, their brave and unfortunate prisoner, Caonabo, perished; maintaining his sullen pride and melancholy to the last.

10. When Columbus arrived at Cadiz, he found three caravels in the harbor ready to set sail for Hispaniola. By these vessels the admiral despatched letters to his brother, to inform him of his safe return, and to give him further instructions in re-

8. What did the Spaniards gain by their kindness to the Indians? 9. Relate the sufferings of the crew after they set sail from Guadaloupe. What became of Caonabo? 10. What did Columbus find at Cadiz?

spect to the government of the colony. He then immediately repaired to Burgos, at that time the ordinary residence of the court. The sovereigns were absent; but they both soon returned, not only to give him a favorable reception, but to load him with thanks and kindness. The accusations of his enemies were passed by in silence, either because their majesties believed them to be entirely unfounded, or as of no weight, when compared with the great services and unquestionable fidelity of Columbus.

11. The admiral was encouraged by this unexpected reception. He requested the immediate equipment of six ships, three of which were to be freighted with provisions and necessary utensils and implements for the colony at Isabella, and the rest to remain under his own direction. This demand appeared very reasonable, but the sovereigns suggested that it was immediately important to found a solid establishment, on which succeeding colonies might be modelled. The propriety of this was obvious. It was arranged that the sovereigns, at their own charge, should transport a large number of sailors, soldiers, laborers, mechanics and artists to Hispaniola. To these, surgeons, physicians and

What did he then do? How was the admiral received by the sovereigns? What of the accusations against him? 11. What request did Columbus make? What did the sovereigns deem important? Who were to be sent to Hispaniola to form a colony?

priests were added. The admiral also obtained permission to carry a number of musicians, to solace them in their labors, and amuse them in their leisure hours. We are told that lawyers and advocates were to be expressly excluded by edict, in order to prevent quarrelling in the new dominions.

12. Nothing could have been more prudently devised than the greater part of these regulations. There was one proposal of Columbus, however, extremely pernicious to the interests of the rising colony. He suggested the transportation of convicted criminals, and of those confined in prison for debts which they could never hope to pay, as a commutation for the punishment to which they would otherwise be subject. This advice was given in consequence of the present difficulty of procuring men willing to embark in the expedition. The evils which had befallen their countrymen deterred those who could live in peace and prosperity in Spain from going to the Indies. But the proposition of Columbus was most unwise and injurious.

13. In spite of this expedient, there was still an unaccountable delay in preparing for the proposed voyage. This was owing to the obstacles continually raised by the envious and cold-blooded Fonseca, the old enemy of Columbus. He was high in power,

12. What proposal did Columbus make in regard to debtors?

13. What occasioned the delay in the preparations for the voyage?

and surrounded by vile minions, who took every occasion to injure and insult the admiral. He bore all this delay, all this accumulated injustice and meanness, in indignant but silent contempt. It was impossible that he should not suffer, but it was beneath him to murmur or repine.

14. Columbus set sail on his third voyage of discovery on the thirtieth of May, 1498. He determined on following a course much farther south than the track he had previously pursued. On the nineteenth of June he touched at Gomera, which he left on the twenty-first, dividing his fleet off the island of Ferro. Three ships were sent directly for Hispaniola, and with the others the admiral pursued his course towards the Cape de Verd Islands. He remained there but a very few days, being disappointed in his hope of procuring provision, and his people suffering from the unhealthy climate. They then continued their voyage towards the south-west.

15. About the thirteenth of July, they experienced a sultry heat, which continued for about ten days. They were in that region which is known by the name of the calm latitudes. The ships remained motionless upon the water. The rays of the sun burned like the heat of a furnace. The

How did Columbus bear the insults of Fonseca and his minions ?
14. When did Columbus set sail on his third voyage of discovery ?
How did he divide his fleet ? Why did he visit the Cape de Verd Islands ?
15. In what region did the crew suffer with the heat ?

seamen became sick and weak, and the air was oppressive and stifling. During this time, the admiral was very ill; but he continued his usual vigilance and care. He determined to change their course to the westward, where he expected to find a cooler temperature. Nor was he deceived. In a few days they were greeted by cooling breezes and by clear skies.

16. Columbus had intended, on reaching this region, to continue his course once more to the south-west. But his ships had been so much injured by the parching heat, that it was necessary to make for the nearest port in order to refit. Much of the provision also had been spoiled, and the water was almost exhausted. He kept therefore directly to the west. After continuing several days in this course without coming to land, he steered northwardly for the Caribbee Islands. On the thirty-first of July, a sailor at the mast-head gave the cry of "Land." He beheld at a distance the tops of three mountains. Columbus had determined to give the name of the Trinity to the first land he should meet. He accordingly called this newly discovered island La Trinidad.

17. Anchoring, and sending the boats on shore, the wearied and thirsty mariners were overjoyed at finding a pure stream of cool water flowing in great

How were they relieved? 16. How had the admiral intended to continue his course? What island did he discover? 17 What did the sailors see on landing?

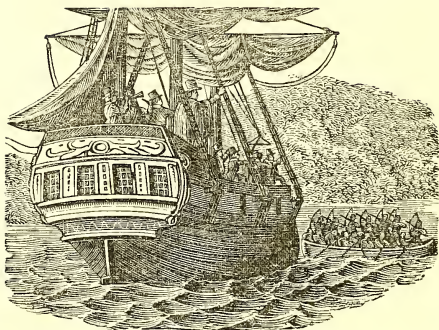
abundance. They filled the casks, and returned to the ships without seeing any of the inhabitants. They saw some of their footsteps upon the sand, and several fishing implements, which they had left behind them in their flight. There were tracks also of animals which the Spaniards supposed to be goats, though it was learned afterwards that they were probably deer.

18. Columbus continued coasting to the south west point of Trinidad, to which he gave the name of Point Arenal. Near this place the ships cast anchor. A large canoe here put off from the shore, in which there were about five-and-twenty Indians, who cried out to them in a language which no one in the ships could understand. Columbus endeavored to prevail upon them to come on board, but to no purpose. They remained gazing at the ships with the paddles in their hand, ready for instant escape. Their complexion was fairer than that of any Indians they had before seen. They were almost naked, and, besides the usual bows and arrows, they carried bucklers—a piece of armor which they had never before seen among the natives of the New World.

19. Columbus, having tried every other means to attract them, and in vain, determined to try the power of music. He ordered a sort of Indian dance

13. How many Indians came from the shore at Point Arenal? Describe them.

LIFE OF COLUMBUS



The Indians shooting at the Spaniards with their arrows

to be executed on the deck of his ship, while the musicians on board sung and played upon their different instruments. The natives mistook this for a signal of battle, and immediately discharged their arrows. A return from a couple of cross-bows sent them paddling over the water, in a great hurry, for the shore; and nothing more was seen of them.

CHAPTER XI.

Trinidad. Swell of Waters in the Gulf. Traffic with the Indians. The Gardens. Pearls. The Strait of the Dragon's Mouth. Indians fishing for Pearls. Return to Hispaniola. Affairs during his Absence. Adventure of Miguel Diaz. Settlement of St. Domingo. March against Behechio.

1. COLUMBUS, without knowing it, was now really in the neighborhood of the continent. While anchored at Point Arenal, the extremity of the island of Trinidad, he saw high land towards the north-west, about fifteen leagues distant, which he called Isla de Gracia. This was the province to which he

19. How were they affected by the music and dancing on board the admiral's ship.

1. Where was Columbus actually at this time? What name did he give to the high land to the north west?

afterwards gave the name of Paria, and which formed a part of the continent.

2. They found in Trinidad the same kind of fruits that abounded in Hispaniola. There were also large quantities of oysters there, and a great number of parrots, with every variety of beautiful and brilliant plumage. They met a cacique of the island, who was observed to be very much pleased with a cap which the admiral wore, made of crimson velvet. He paid Columbus great respect, and, taking a circle of gold from his own head, exchanged it for the crimson cap.

3. In the strait formed between Trinidad and the main land, they were nearly swallowed up by the violence of the waters. Two very rapid currents, setting in from opposite quarters, lifted the ships violently to a great height, on a mountain of surges. The waves, however, gradually subsided, and they escaped without injury. To this pass Columbus gave the name of Boca de la Sierpe, or the Mouth of the Serpent. They soon found themselves, by the assistance of favorable breezes, in a tranquil gulf, sailing quietly beyond the reach of danger.

4. Columbus was astonished to find the water of this gulf fresh, and to observe its great smoothness and stillness. It was at a period of the year when

To what name did he afterwards change it? 2. What did they find in Trinidad? What of the cacique? 3. What of the strait called Boca de la Sierpe? 4. What astonished Columbus?

the rain fell in large quantities, and the swollen rivers emptied themselves so copiously, as to overcome the natural saltness of the sea. He found many good harbors, as he proceeded towards the north, much cultivated land, and many rivers. Going ashore at different times, the seamen found grapes, apples, a kind of orange, and a great many monkeys.

5. On Monday, the sixth of August, a canoe, with five men in it, came off to the nearest caravel, and one of the Spaniards requested them to carry him ashore. Leaping into the boat, he overset it, and the Indians were taken and carried to the admiral. Their complexion was like that of the natives they had seen in the neighborhood. The admiral treated them kindly, and gave them hawks' bells, glass beads, and sugar. They were then sent on shore, and gave so favorable an account of their visit, that great numbers collected about the ships.

6. These were received in a similar manner, and brought bread, and water, and a sort of green wine, to exchange for the trifles that the crews were willing to give them. They all carried bucklers, bows, and poisoned arrows. On the next day, a number of friendly Indians came on board, bringing bread, corn, and other provisions, together with

What did he find as he proceeded? What of fruits? 5. Relate the adventure of the Spaniard and the canoe. 6. What traffic was carried on with the natives?

pitchers of a white beverage, like wine, and a green liquor made from maize and various fruits. They set no value upon the beads, but were much pleased with the hawks' bells, and held brass in very high estimation.

7. Columbus, on the following morning, took six Indians, to serve as guides, and continued his voyage. He next touched at a point which he called *Aguja*, or the Needle. The country about was very populous and highly cultivated, and so beautiful that Columbus gave it the name of the Gardens. Many of the inhabitants visited the ships, with wrought cotton cloths about their heads and loins, and little plates of gold about their necks. These they would have been very glad to exchange for hawks' bells; but the stock of these articles was exhausted. The Spaniards procured some of them, however, and were told that there were islands in the neighborhood which abounded in gold, though they were inhabited by cannibals.

8. Some of the females who came on board wore strings of beads about their arms, among which were a number of pearls. These excited the curiosity and avarice of the Spaniards at once. The boat was sent on shore to ascertain the direction of the countries where they might be found. The sailors who went in the boat were received in a very hos-

7. What name did Columbus give to the country about the point *Aguja*? What of the natives? 8. Why was a boat sent ashore

pitiable manner, and conducted to a large house where they were feasted by the natives. Various kinds of bread and fruit were set before them, and white and red liquors, resembling wine. These Indians had fairer skins, and were more kind and intelligent than any they had before met with.

9. On the fourteenth of August, the ships approached the formidable pass to which they had given the name of the Boca del Dragon, or the Dragon's Mouth. This was a strait between the extremity of Trinidad and Cape Boto, at the end of Paria, and was about five leagues in width. In the mean distance there were two islands. The sea at this pass is very turbulent, foaming as if it were breaking over rocks and shoals. The ships passed it, however, in safety, and stood for the westward, where they had been told the pearl regions were to be found.

10. Columbus was charmed with the beauty of the coast along which their course now lay. He touched at various islands during the voyage, two of which were afterwards famous for their pearl fishery. These were called Margarita and Cubagua. As the admiral was approaching this latter island, he saw a number of Indians in their canoes, fishing for pearls. They immediately fled towards the land. A boat was sent in pursuit, and a sailor, who

How were the sailors entertained? 9. To what strait did Columbus give the name of Boca del Dragon? 10. What were Margarita and Cubagua famous for?



A sailor trading with an Indian girl for pearls

saw a woman with a large number of pearls about her neck, broke up a piece of painted Valencian ware, and gave the fragments to her in exchange for them.

11. These were carried to the admiral, who immediately sent the boat back with a quantity of Valencian ware and little bells. In a short time, the sailors returned with about three pounds of pearls; some were small, but others were of considerable size. It has been said that if Columbus had seen fit to remain here, he could have collected a sufficient quantity of pearls to pay all the expenses that had hitherto accrued in the discovery and settlement of the New World. But he was in haste to return to Hispaniola. His crew had become impatient, and he was himself sick, and suffering under a violent disorder in his eyes.

12. The region which he had called Paria, Columbus supposed to have been the situation of the terrestrial paradise. He believed it to be elevated above the rest of the world, and to enjoy an equality of day and night. The fresh water which sweetened the gulf of Paria, he supposed to flow from the stream spoken of in Scripture, which had its fountain in the garden of Eden! The admiral, however, did not long indulge this imagination, "which,"

What did a sailor give an Indian woman in exchange for pearls? 11. How many pearls were obtained at Cubagua? Why did not the admiral remain longer at this place? 12. What did he imagine the country of Paria to be?

says Charlevoix, "we may consider as one of those fantasies to which great men are more subject than any other."

13. Columbus now sailed direct for Hispaniola; and it is necessary to explain what happened there during his absence in Spain, and along the coast of Paria, in order to understand subsequent occurrences.

14. In his first letters to the *adelantado*, by the caravels which sailed just after his arrival in Spain, Columbus had recommended the establishment of a new colony, to be made near the mines recently discovered upon the southern coast. He had observed fine fields and spacious harbors in that direction, and lands which appeared to be very pleasant and fertile. No orders were given as to the selection of a particular spot, but the *adelantado* was requested to attend to it in person. The letters arrived just as arrangements were making for an enterprise of this very description.

15. A young Arragonese, by the name of Miguel Diaz, had unfortunately wounded a companion in a sudden quarrel. He was the same person who had been selected by the admiral to examine the newly discovered mines. Fearing the consequences of this accident, he immediately fled Pursuing an eastern course, and then turning off

13. For what place did Columbus now sail? 14. What had Columbus recommended the *adelantado* to do? At what time did the letters arrive? 15. What of Miguel Diaz?

towards the south, he finally rested at the mouth of the river Ozuma. He here found an Indian settlement, and was kindly received by the female cacique who governed it.

16. This princess soon formed a strong attachment for Miguel Diaz, and was desirous to retain him by her side. She accordingly proposed that a Spanish colony should be established in the neighborhood. She pointed out the advantages of the situation, at the mouth of a fine river, with a convenient harbor, with an adjacent country of great fertility and beauty, and in the immediate vicinity of the mines. If the inhabitants of Isabella would remove there, she said she would provide them with every thing they might need.

17. The young Spaniard thought this a favorable opportunity to regain the situation he had lost. He entered with joy into the plans of his benetactress, and proceeded to Isabella to make known the offers of the cacique. On approaching the village, he learned that the wound of his comrade had been healed, and that he had quite recovered. This encouraged him to present himself before Don Bartholomew, with whom he had previously lived, and who gave him as kind a reception as he could have wished.

18. The offers made to the *adelantado* were

16 What did the female cacique propose and promise? 17. What did Miguel then do? How did Bartholomew receive him?

sufficient to induce him to undertake the settlement of a colony, and, on receiving his brother's letter, he set about it without delay. On arriving at the dominions of the Indian princess, he found every thing as it had been represented. The plan of the new settlement was immediately traced, and in a very short time, most of the inhabitants of the old village had removed there. This town received the name of St. Domingo.

19. The situation of the new town was a hill on the bank of a harbor, at the mouth of the Ozuma. "They affirm this river," says Peter Martyr, "to have many benefits of nature, for wheresoever it runneth, all things are exceeding pleasant and fruitful, having on every side groves of date trees, and divers other of the island fruits so plentifully, that as they sailed along by the shore, oftentimes the branches thereof, laden with flowers and fruits, hung so over their heads that they might pluck them with their hands."

20. It was the first care of Don Bartholomew to erect a strong fortress. The foundations of this were laid under his immediate directions. Having given orders, and taken measures for its completion, he went on an expedition to the western parts of the island. All the caciques of the island had submitted to the imposition of tribute, excepting

18. What name was given to the new settlement? Was the old village deserted? 19. What does Peter Martyr say of the river Ozuma? 20. What was the first care of Bartholomew?

Behechio, king of Xaragua. The situation of his province had hitherto been such as to protect it from the incursions of the white men; but the erection of St. Domingo was the commencement of his troubles.

21. This cacique was the brother of Anacoana, the graceful and intelligent wife of Caonabo; a woman of superior mind, who had contracted, in spite of her own and her husband's misfortunes, a partiality for the Spaniards. Bartholomew was aware of the favorable disposition of this princess, but he also knew that her brother differed from her in this respect. It was desirable, therefore, for the honor and safety of the colony, to reduce Behechio to subjection.

22. He departed from St. Domingo at the head of three hundred men, all well equipped, and many of them mounted. They marched in order of battle, with banners flying, to the sound of drums and trumpets. Behechio was informed of his march, and advanced with a number of troops to dispute the passage of the Neyva. The *adelantado* received notice of this movement, and sent an express to the cacique, to assure him that he did not come as an enemy, but only to pay his respects to a prince and princess, for whom he entertained a high respect. Behechio was pleased with the com-

What of Behechio? 21. Who was Anacoana? 22. How many men went against Behechio? What did Behechio do? What message did the *adelantado* send to him?

pliment, and his whole camp resounded with shouts of joy. The poor islanders, who had been led, against their will, to fight with men whose very name was a terror, threw by their arms, and rushed forward to meet, and to welcome them!

CHAPTER XII.

Approach to Xaragua. Feast. Mock-fight. Exaction of Tribute. Insurrection. Capture of Guarionex. Payment of Tribute by Behechio. His Visit to the Caravel. Conspiracy of Roldan and the Indians. Two Caciques taken Prisoners.

1. WHEN the Spaniards approached Xaragua, all the chief inhabitants came out dancing and singing in the plains. Thirty females of the cacique's household appeared, each bearing a palm branch in her hand, marching to music, and making the air resound with their cries. They approached the general in this manner, presenting their palm branches, and prostrating themselves at his feet. A number of Indians, who accompanied them, performed a similar token of respect to the

What was the consequence?

1. How were the Spaniards received at Xaragua? What mark of respect did the Indians show them?

rest of the Spaniards, and the army was in this manner escorted to the palace of Behechio.

2. It was quite late when they arrived there, and a great feast had been some time waiting for them. It was composed of utias and other rare meats, together with every variety of sea and river fish. There was great joy during the repast, after which they retired to rest.

3. On the morrow, the sun had hardly risen, when two bands of Indians appeared, approaching each other in the order of battle. They were armed with bows and arrows, and at first made a show of skirmishing, without doing any injury. By degrees, however, they became excited, and many of them were wounded. At length four dropped down dead. They still continued fighting, however, as furiously as ever, till, at the request of the Spaniards, the king ordered them to desist.

4. The *adelantado* now took Behechio aside, and told him that he was the only one of the caciques who had not submitted to the sovereigns of Spain. He represented to him that their majesties had ordered him to compel submission, and that he must be aware it would be impossible for him to resist. The evils of war were to be avoided, if possible, and by consenting with a good grace to pay the tribute, he would secure the friendship and

2. What feast was provided for them? 3. Describe the war-like exercises of the Indians. 4. What did the *adelantado* tell Behechio?

protection of the most powerful prince upon earth.

The cacique replied that there was no gold in his dominions. The *adelantado* told him that the Spaniards were too just and generous to insist upon any thing that they could not get, and would be satisfied with a certain quantity of cotton and provisions. Every thing was accordingly arranged in a friendly manner.

5. Don Bartholomew then took leave of the prince and princess, and immediately repaired to Isabella. The Spaniards were, as usual, sick and discontented. Many had perished from want of the absolute necessities of life. The *adelantado*, with his usual energy, adopted such remedies as were in his power. He ordered the construction of a couple of caravels, to send in search of provisions, and took measures to distribute the weakest and most useless individuals among the Indian settlements, in the vicinity of the fortresses. A chain of military posts was also established, between Isabella and St. Domingo, consisting of five fortified houses, at different distances upon the route.

6. The Indians, in the meantime, had been very much oppressed and injured. They were tired of paying a large tribute, laboriously collected, and of entertaining cruel and wasteful guests at the same

What did the cacique reply? How was the matter arranged?
b. Where did Bartholomew then go? What measures did he take to relieve the sufferings of the Spaniards at Isabella? 6
What of the Indians?

time. Numerous complaints were made to their caciques, desiring that they might be allowed to set themselves free from such grievous burdens. The subjects of Guarionex, in particular, insisted upon his engaging in war. He was unwilling, and for some time refused, but, being threatened with the loss of his dominions, he at length consented.

7. The *adelantado* received information of the conspiracy, and immediately marched from St. Domingo to quell it. He found Guarionex at the head of several thousand men, and, attacking their camp in the night time, took the cacique prisoner. The Indians were struck with terror and confusion at the loss of their chief. He was borne captive to the fortress of Conception, followed by multitudes of his subjects, without weapons, howling, and filling the air with lamentations. "The air thundered," says Peter Martyr, "and the earth trembled through the vehemence of their outcry." Guarionex was generously pardoned, and, exhorting his people to peace and kindness with the white men, was borne upon their shoulders to his palace.

8. About this time, a messenger arrived from Behechio to announce that the tribute was in readiness, and could be delivered whenever it was called for. Don Bartholomew immediately sent a courier to his brother at Isabella, requesting that a

What of Guarionex? 7. What did the *adelantado* do? How did he treat Guarionex?

caravel might be despatched to Xaragua. He went himself by land, to receive, in person, the homage that Behechio was bound to render to the crown of Castile.

9. An entertainment had been again prepared for him by the kindness of the Indians. Besides the promised tribute, they brought great quantities of bread and fish, and delicate meat. It was now, for the first time, that the Spaniards were prevailed upon to eat the guanas, which, as has been before mentioned, were esteemed great luxuries by the natives. The *adelantado* first tasted them, at the request of the king's sister, and found them exceedingly delicate, in spite of their ill appearance. His companions observed that their leader seemed to consider them very pleasant; they then partook of them with quite an equal relish; "insomuch," says Peter Martyr, "that they had now no other talk, than of the sweetness of these serpents, which they affirm to be of more pleasant taste than either our pheasants, or partridges."

10. On the arrival of the caravel, the beautiful and gentle Anacoana proposed to her brother to visit it. Canoes were therefore provided, on the following day, painted and prepared for the reception of the princess and Behechio. Anacoana,

8. Why did he send a caravel to Xaragua? 9. What tribute did the Indians pay to Bartholomew? How did the Spaniards relish the guanas? What does Peter Martyr say concerning their fondness for them? 10. What of Anacoana?

however, preferred to go in the ship's boat with the *adelantado*. When they approached the ship, several pieces of cannon were discharged, which filled the Indians with terror. But their fear was soon quieted by the smiles of the white men, and changed into delight by the music of flutes and drums, which came floating from the caravel.

11. They were still more delighted and astonished on entering the vessel, and examining all its different parts. The brother and sister stood looking at each other in silent wonder. While they were afterwards wandering up and down upon the deck, the anchors were raised, and the sails hoisted. At this time, a gentle breeze sprung up, and they saw this mighty mass moving about upon the waters, not impelled by oars, but as if of its own accord. They were entirely bewildered with admiration. On returning to Xaragua, the caravel was loaded with cotton and cassava bread, and Don Bartholomew returned by land to Isabella.

12. During his absence, great disturbances had been excited in the settlement. The prime mover in them was Francis Roldan, a man who had been raised from want and obscurity by the favor of the admiral. He was desirous of rising into greater power and authority through the unpopularity of

What were the feelings of the Indians on approaching the ship? 11. What did they think of the ship? With what was the caravel loaded? 12. What of Francis Roldan? What object had he in view?

the present governors. He gathered around him the vicious and discontented. They were murmuring and ready for revolt. The crafty Spaniard placed the conduct of the Genoese brothers in its most unfavorable light; representing their whole government as an odious tyranny. Roldan held the office of chief alcade or justice. His plan was to create a popular tumult, to interpose in his character as judge, and to throw the blame of it upon Don Diego and his brother Bartholomew. In this manner he would have secured to himself the direction of public affairs.

13. On the return of the *adelantado*, Roldan found that he had too prudent and courageous an adversary to contend with in open revolt. He determined to remove, with all his followers, and surpriſes the fortress of Conception. In that position, with the adjacent country under his control, and his forces increased by all the seditious he should meet with on his march, he thought he could defy the regular authority. On his way, he stopped at the villages through which the Spaniards were dispersed, giving hopes of great gain, and free living, to all who should join his standard. He promised those natives who would join in the revolt, that he would liberate them from all tribute.

14. The fortress was under the command of an old and faithful soldier and, fortunately, was not to

13. What did Roldan determine to do? What did he say to induce the Spaniards and Indians to revolt?

be surprised. It was soon relieved by a force under the prompt and efficient Don Bartholomew. Doubtful of the truth of his own troops, the *adelantado* resolved to pursue mild measures with the rebels. He sent a messenger to Roldan, who was posted about half a league distant, to summon him to appear at the fortress, giving him a promise of personal safety. Roldan went to fort Conception, but the parties were not able to come to a peaceful accommodation.

15. Roldan now proposed to his followers to take possession of Xaragua. They had heard much of the fertility of its soil, and the softness of its climate; and when all its beauties and delights were painted in bright colors before them, they could no longer resist. They longed to exchange a life of labor and discipline for licentious indolence, and acceded, with shouts, to his propositions. Returning suddenly to Isabella, they endeavored to launch the caravel for immediate embarkation. Disappointed in this by the resistance of Don Diego, Roldan finally determined to return to the vicinity of fort Conception, and again endeavor to make himself master of the garrison.

16. He here exerted every means to overthrow the power of Don Bartholomew. Representing him

14. Did Roldan succeed in taking the fortress? Did the parties come to a peaceful accommodation? 15. What did Roldan now propose to do? What did his followers endeavor to accomplish?

as the tyrant and oppressor of the Spaniards, as well as the Indians, he pretended, for his own part, only to desire the effectual relief of both nations. He united himself with the hostile caciques, and received from their subjects gifts of gold and provision larger than the tributes which they paid to the *adelantado*. Such was the state of affairs when Pero Fernandez Coronal arrived at the port of St. Domingo.

17. This arrival was the preservation of the colony. The title of *adelantado*, which had been given to Don Bartholomew by Columbus, was confirmed by the king. The news that the admiral was favorably and honorably received at court, and that he would soon arrive with a fleet, struck terror into the rebellious, who had supposed him in disgrace. Don Bartholomew set out immediately for St. Domingo. He was followed by the party of Roldan, reduced to a sudden gloom by the unexpected direction which affairs had taken. The *adelantado* was still desirous of coming to a friendly settlement. He sent Fernandez Coronal to treat with the rebels; but Roldan, distrusting the sincerity of his professions, conducted himself with insolent haughtiness.

16. How was Don Bartholomew represented by Roldan? What influence had he gained when Pero Fernandez Coronal arrived at St. Domingo? 17. What news struck terror into the rebellious? Who followed Bartholomew to St. Domingo? How did Roldan return the kindness of Fernandez Coronal?

18. The rebels repaired to Xaragua. Fresh conspiracies broke out among the caciques. Guarionex was again the leader, and again foiled. He fled for refuge to the mountainous province of Ciguay, and placed himself under the protection of its king, Mayobanex. Here he remained, generously and bravely defended, even in his desperate fortunes.

19. From these mountains the Indians made frequent descents to ravage the plains beneath. The *adelantado* determined to pursue them to their recesses among the rocks and caverns, and drive them entirely from the neighborhood. While on his march, with about ninety men, and a few cavalry, he came to the banks of a river, on whose opposite shore about six thousand of the natives were in ambush. The *adelantado* advanced with caution. They had hardly reached the middle of the stream, when the savages burst from their concealment. They were painted, and rushed forward with yells and howling. The *adelantado* and his companions pressed forward through the river, amid a shower of arrows and lances. On their reaching the opposite bank, the Indians immediately fled for shelter to the woods and caverns.

20. Mayobanex behaved nobly towards his guest.

18. Where did the rebels repair? What of Guarionex? 19. What did Bartholomew determine to do? Where were the Indians concealed? What became of them?

His subjects were slain, and their villages burnt. The remainder of his tribe continued lurking among their hiding places in the earth, and among the rocks, till they were dragged forth, to be enslaved or murdered. Both of the insurgent caciques were at length taken prisoners, and carried in chains to the fortress of Conception.

CHAPTER XIII.

Arrival of Columbus. Three Ships of the Admiral's Fleet. Affairs with the Rebels finally adjusted. Ojeda touches at the Island. Roldan sent in Pursuit. Account of Difficulties in Spain. Arrival of Bovadilla. Columbus sent to Spain in Fetters.

1. THIS was the confused state of things in the island, when Columbus arrived at St. Domingo. Many of the Spaniards whom he left at Isabella had perished of sickness, or been slain in their skirmishes with the natives. The man whom he had loaded with benefits was in arms against the regular authorities. There was famine, and distress, and danger, upon every side. The admiral

20. What became of the subjects of Mayobanex? To what place were Guarionex and Mayobanex taken?

1 What was the state of things when Columbus arrived at St Domingo?

at once issued a proclamation, approving of all the measures of Don Bartholomew during his absence, and denouncing Roldan and his companions.

2. The three ships which parted from the admiral at the Canary Islands, had been carried, by the winds and currents, to the coast of Jamaica, with which their pilots were entirely unacquainted. After having wandered about a long time, without knowing where, they at length found themselves upon the coast of Xaragua, near the place where Roldan and his companions had quartered themselves. The rebels at first thought that these ships had been sent in pursuit of them; but they were soon undeceived, and were cunning enough to conceal their own situation in respect to the admiral.

3. The captains of the ships were soon visited by Roldan, and complied, without hesitation, with all his requests. They supposed him to be stationed in his present post by order of Columbus, and supplied him liberally with weapons and provisions. Contrary winds and currents made it impossible for the ships to sail at present for St. Domingo, and it was therefore determined that a party should be despatched by land. Juan Antonio Colombo was appointed to conduct them, and landed with forty men, well armed and provided for the march. All of them, with the exception of

What did he cause to be done? 2. What of the three ships? What did the rebels think when they saw the vessels? 3. What did Roldan do? What was determined upon?

seven or eight, immediately left him, and joined the followers of Roldan.

4. The history of the island, for a considerable period of time, is an account of the successive troubles and accommodations with the rebels. It possesses but little interest, as it is a mere relation of attempts at agreement, and negotiations, which were repeatedly interrupted and broken through. It was but a sad recompense for the great services and merits of Columbus, that he should have been thus exposed to insult and ingratitude from all connected with him in his great discoveries.

5. After protracted difficulties, the admiral at length adjusted affairs with Roldan, and reinstated him in the office of chief justice. News was now brought that four ships had anchored at the western shore of the island, and that their crews were busy in collecting the dye-woods which abounded in that part of the country. It was also understood that they were under the command of the adventurous Ojeda, who had distinguished himself by the capture of Caonabo.

6. Columbus knew the rash character of the man, and was disturbed at his visiting the island in this clandestine manner. He sent Roldan, who was desirous to atone for his past offences, to com-

Who joined the forces of Roldan? 4. What of the history of the island for some time? 5. How were affairs at length adjusted? What news was brought to Columbus? 6. What did he then do?

mand Ojeda to retire from the coast. Roldan found this cavalier at an Indian village, seven or eight leagues from his ships, and accompanied by very few attendants. He might have taken him prisoner upon the spot, but preferred to adopt a different course, inquiring as to his commission, and asking why he was cutting the dye-woods without leave of the admiral, or without even having paid him the civility of a visit. Ojeda replied, that he had left his commission on ship-board, that he intended to pay his respects to the admiral, but that want of provision had obliged him to put in at the nearest port. Roldan was satisfied with this reply, and, after having visited the ships, returned to St. Domingo.

7. Alonzo de Ojeda had been at court, when the despatches arrived from Columbus, giving an account of his discoveries on the coast of Paria. He knew the enmity which Bishop Fonseca entertained against Columbus, and determined to profit by it. Obtaining access to the charts and papers, which gave a description of the route pursued in this last voyage, he ascertained that it would be easy for him to continue what had been so happily begun. He procured a written permission, from the bishop, to visit all countries, except those which belonged to the king of Portugal, and those which had been discovered by Columbus before the year 1495

Where did Roldan find Ojeda? What answer did Roldan obtain to his demand? 7. Of what circumstance did Ojeda take advantage? What did he procure from the bishop?

This document never received the signature of the sovereigns, and was in violation of their express agreement with the admiral; for it left Paria and the Pearl Islands entirely open to the visits of Ojeda.

8. A private expedition was accordingly fitted out at Seville, at the expense of several wealthy speculators. Among these was Americo Vesputio, a Florentine merchant, who had considerable credit for his knowledge of astronomy and navigation. This was the man who published an account of his voyages on his return to Europe, in which he claimed for himself the honor of having first discovered the continent of the New World. By a variety of singular events, it has happened that his impudent pretensions have secured to him an immortality, by associating him with the regions which should have been honored with the name of Columbus.

9. These adventurers sailed in 1499, and followed the course of Columbus to the gulf of Paria. They visited several islands in this vicinity, and bartered with the natives for pearls and gold. Afterwards touching at the Caribbee Islands, they made many prisoners, with the intention of carrying them to

What of this document? 8. At whose expense was a private expedition fitted out? Who was Americo Vesputio? What honor did he claim? What have his pretensions secured to him? 9. When did the expedition sail? What was accomplished during their voyage to Hispaniola?

Spain as slaves. From here, being in want of provisions, they sailed for Hispaniola, where they landed, and had the interview with Roldan.

10. Ojeda promised that he would visit St. Domingo to receive advices from the admiral; but in a little while, information arrived that his ships were on the coast of Xaragua. Roldan was again sent to inquire into his movements, and now perceived his mistake in not having before arrested him. Many of the discontented and rebellious at Xaragua had joined him; some of their own accord, others through necessity. Roldan wrote to Ojeda, requesting an interview, which was refused. Both these men were afraid of each other; each knowing the resolution and valor of his enemy. Ojeda sailed away to the province of Cahay, about twelve leagues from Xaragua, and was followed thither by the vigilant alcayde.

11. Roldan now proposed to Ojeda to come and confer with him on ship-board. The boat was accordingly sent, and Ojeda supposed himself secure of his enemy. On entering the boat with his attendants, Roldan ordered the oarsmen to go on shore. They refused, and were immediately attacked and made prisoners. Desirous of regaining his boat, Ojeda was now obliged to come to terms. He agreed, on the delivery of it, to set sail

10. To what place did Ojeda then sail? Who was sent after him? What had taken place? 11. What of Roldan and Ojeda? How was Ojeda forced to return to Castile?

from the island, and shortly after departed for Castile.

12. But the seditious and ungovernable feelings, which had been excited by these repeated revolts, were not easily to be quelled. The flames burst out upon all sides. It was long before tranquillity was restored. The ringleaders in new conspiracies among the Indians were executed, and all was again quiet. "But this calm," says Charlevoix, "was not of long duration, and concealed only a terrible tempest, to which all that had before happened was only a light prelude. In fact, while Columbus, relying upon his own innocence, and the protection of the queen, thought himself secure from all the attacks of his enemies, the accusations against him had been carried on with infinite art and vigor, supported by the concurrent testimony of the wicked and profligate, who had been returned from the colonies again to burthen the land of their nativity."

13. The court was, at this period, at Granada. Here the disappointed and clamorous adventurers repaired, to utter their calumnies against Columbus. They accused him of an intention to usurp sovereign power over the new countries; knowing that a charge of this nature would find an easy acceptance with the jealous and suspicious Ferdi-

12 How was tranquillity restored? What does Charlevoix say? 13. Where was the court at this time?

nand. The king never appeared in the streets, but that a crowd gathered round him, calling for payment of their services in the Indies

14. On one occasion, about fifty of them collected in the court of the Alhambra, and seated themselves upon the ground, with a quantity of grapes. They then began to fill the air with their complaints, crying out, that the king and Columbus had reduced them to that misery, by not paying them the wages which they had earned by painful labor in the mines. At another time, when the sons of the admiral, then pages to the queen, were passing, they cried out, "There go the children of the traitor who has discovered new countries to make slaves of the Spanish nobility." It was at length determined to send out a judge to Hispaniola, to inquire into the alleged abuses; and to this office Francis de Bovadilla was appointed by the sovereigns.

15. It is sad to reflect upon the result of this mission. Bovadilla was a weak and conceited man, and entrusted by the crown with almost unlimited authority. He arrived at St. Domingo, arrogant in his newly acquired honors. He took the side of the turbulent and discontented mob; listened with eager joy to their falsehoods and

What of Ferdinand and his subjects? 14. What complaints were made by the people? Who was sent to Hispaniola? 15. What was the result of this mission?



Columbus brought before the King in irons.

calumnies; and sent Columbus a prisoner, and in chains, to the adopted country for whose princes he had discovered a world!

CHAPTER XIV.

Arrival at Cadiz. Visit to the Sovereigns. Departure on the fourth Voyage. Arrival at St. Domingo. Violent Storm. Discover the Island of Guanaia. The Wild-cat. Arrival at Veragua. Capture of Quibio and his Escape. Boat's Crew slain by the Indians. Boldness of Pedro Ledesma.

1. THE rumor was no sooner circulated at Cadiz and Seville, that Columbus and his brothers had arrived, loaded with chains, and condemned to death, than it gave rise to an immediate expression of public indignation. The excitement was strong and universal; and messengers were immediately despatched to convey the intelligence to Ferdinand and Isabella. The sovereigns were moved by this exhibition of popular feeling; and were offended that their name and authority should have been used to sanction such dishonorable violence. They gave orders for the immediate liberation of the prisoners, and for their being escorted to Granada

1. What effect had the arrival of the captives on the public mind? What did the sovereigns cause to be done?

with the respect and honor they deserved. They annulled all the processes against them, without examination, and promised an ample punishment for all their wrongs.

2. The admiral spoke but little in the presence of the king, whom he believed to be but ill disposed towards him. At an interview with the queen, however, a few days afterwards, he laid open his views and feelings with so touching an eloquence, that the princess burst into tears. He besought her not to allow him to be dishonorably oppressed, but to grant him the royal protection against his enemies. Isabella was moved from grief to indignation, and resented, feelingly, the insults which had been heaped upon him. She promised that Bovadilla should be immediately dismissed from his command, and that the admiral should be restored to his property, his privileges, and his dignities.

3. He was not however restored to his command at Hispaniola, nor was it till many months afterwards that he was placed at the head of an expedition to open a new passage to the East Indies. On the ninth of May, 1502, Columbus again set sail from Cadiz on a voyage of discovery. He first directed his course to Arzilla, upon the coast of Africa, a Portuguese fortress at that time besieged by the Moors. He arrived too late to be of any

-
2. What of the interview between Columbus and the queen?
3. When did the admiral again set sail? At what place did he stop?

assistance, for the siege had been raised. He sent his son and brother upon shore, to pay his respects to the governor, and continued on his voyage.

4. He now touched, as usual, at the Canary Islands, from whence he proposed to sail directly for the continent. His largest vessel, however, proved so clumsy as to be unfit for service. He determined on this account to steer for Hispaniola, where he found a fleet of eighteen ships ready to depart for Spain. Arrived at St. Domingo, Columbus wrote to the new governor, Ovando, requesting permission to enter the harbor, as well to exchange one of his vessels, as to procure shelter from a violent tempest that was impending. He advised, in the same letter, that the departure of the fleet should be delayed a few days on the same account.

5. His request was refused, and his advice neglected. The fleet set sail, and on the next night were swallowed up by the waves. Of eighteen ships, only two or three escaped. Columbus had taken precautions against the storm, which his superior skill and experience had enabled him to foresee. His little squadron were saved. On board of the vessels which were wrecked were Bovadilla, Roldan, and most of the vicious and discontented

4. What did he find at Hispaniola? What request did Columbus make to the governor? 5. What was the consequence of the governor's refusal? How did Columbus escape from the storm? What men perished on board the fleet?

who had been so busy in injuring the admiral. All their ill-gotten wealth perished with them.

6. Columbus soon left Hispaniola, and sailed towards the continent. Being becalmed on his voyage, the currents carried him to some small and sandy islands, near Jamaica, to which he gave the name of Los Poros, or the Wells. Sailing southward, he discovered the island of Guanaia, where he had an interview with some natives that he found in a canoe. This canoe was eight feet wide, made of one tree, with an awning of palm leaves in the middle, for the women and children. It was laden with cotton cloths, of several colors, and curiously wrought; wooden swords, edged with sharp flints; small copper hatchets; bells and plates; and the berries which they called cacao. Their food was maize bread, and different kinds of roots and grain.

7. Continuing his voyage, on the twenty-fifth of September he came to anchor near a little island called Quiriviri, and a town on the continent, the name of which was Cariari. The country here was very beautiful, full of forests of palm trees, and fine rivers. A large number of the natives crowded from the adjacent country, some with bows and arrows, some with hard and black clubs pointed with fish bones, as if intending to defend themselves

6. Where are the Los Poros? Describe a canoe of the Indians of Guanaia. 7. What of the country at Quiriviri and Cariari? What of the natives?

from the Spaniards. But perceiving they had nothing to fear, the Indians were very desirous to barter the articles they had with them.

8. The admiral, on the succeeding day, ordered his brother to go on shore and examine the interior. Among other wonderful things which they saw here was a large wooden palace, covered with canes, in which were several tombs, with embalmed bodies in them. An account is given by Ferdinand Columbus of an adventure, upon ship-board, between two of the wild animals which they found here. One was a little wild hog, and the other a wild cat. The cat was of a grayish color, with a very long and strong tail. It had been knocked from one of the trees in the neighborhood, by a sailor, who cut off one of its legs and carried it to the ship. The hog had before been master of all the animals on board, chasing the dogs about at his pleasure. The cat immediately wound her long tail about his snout, and brought him back to his good behavior.

9. Columbus proceeded upon his eastward course, stopping at a number of islands, and having various communications with the natives. Being detained by contrary winds, on the fifth of December, he determined to stand about, and go in search of some rich gold mines of which he had

8. What was found in the interior of the country? Relate the anecdote of the hog and cat. 9. What did Columbus now go in search of?

been told, in the province of Veragua. For a number of days, the ships were driven about by violent tempests. The rain poured down in torrents, the thunder rolled and the lightning flashed incessantly. Besides these dangers, they escaped from a tremendous water-spout, which passed very near them, but luckily without injury.

10. On reaching Veragua, the admiral's brother went up the river Belem, in the boats, to find the king. Discovering a great many signs of gold, Columbus determined to leave a colony here. Eighty men were chosen to remain, and houses were built for them covered with palm leaves. One of the ships was to be left behind, with a quantity of wine and biscuit, with nets and fishing tackle. When every thing was ready for his departure, the admiral found that the river had dried so much that there was not water enough to float the ships into the sea.

11. While detained here on this account, it was discovered that Quibio, the cacique of Veragua, had laid a plan to destroy the Spaniards, and burn their settlement. They determined, therefore, to take him and his chief men prisoners. A party of seventy-six men, under the command of the admiral's brother, were despatched on this expedition. Arriving in the neighborhood of the house

Describe the dangers that beset the fleet. 10. What did Columbus do on the island of Veragua? Why was his departure delayed? 11. What of Quibio?

where Quibio resided, they advanced, two by two, as silently as possible, and obtained possession of the cacique's person, together with a good deal of his wealth, and a number of his wives and children.

12. The prisoners were committed to Juan Sanchez, the chief pilot of the squadron, a strong and trust-worthy man, who undertook to carry them safely to the ships. He was told to take special care that the cacique did not escape; and answered, that he would give them leave to pluck out his beard, if he did not keep him from getting away. They had come within half a league of the mouth of the river, when Quibio complained that his hands suffered from the cords with which they were bound. Juan Sanchez then loosed him from the seat of the boat, to which he was tied, and held the rope in his own hand. A little while after, Quibio threw himself into the water, and sunk to the bottom. Night was coming on, and the Spaniards could neither hear nor see what afterwards became of him. The lieutenant, on the next day, returned to the ships with his prisoners and plunder.

13 The river having now been swollen by the rains, Columbus was able to set sail with three of his ships for Spain. When Quibio saw that the

In what manner was he captured? 12. In whose care were the prisoners placed? Relate the adventure.

vessels had left the coast, he immediately started, with his warriors, the little colony that had remained behind. The lieutenant was a man not to be easily discouraged. He went out against the Indians with a very small number of followers, and, with the assistance of a dog, put them all to flight.

14. It so happened that, at the very time of this attack, a boat had been sent from the ships to procure water. For this purpose the captain of it was going some distance up the river, and, though warned of the danger, would not desist from his undertaking. The river was very deep, and sheltered on both sides by over-hanging trees and thick bushes, which grew down to the very edge of the water. When the boat had gone about a league from the colony, the Indians rushed out from the thickets on each side, in their canoes, blowing horns, and making the most hideous noises.

15. The canoes could be easily managed by one man, and all the rest of the crews were busy in sending their arrows and javelins. In such a shower of darts the Spaniards were obliged to drop the oars, and protect themselves with their targets. But there were such a multitude of Indians surrounding them from every quarter, that the seven

13. What did Quibio do after Columbus had sailed for Spain? How were the Indians put to flight? 14. What happened at the time of this attack? 15. Relate the attack of the Indians upon the Spaniards.

or eight men in the boat were soon pierced with a thousand wounds. Only one of them escaped, who threw himself, unobserved, into the water, and swam to shore. Pursuing his way through the thickest of the wood, he reached the colony in safety.

16. The Spaniards were much terrified at the intelligence, and still more affected, when the bodies of their companions came floating down the river, covered with wounds, and followed by the birds of prey. They determined not to remain in the country, and immediately removed from the thickets, where their houses were built, to the open plain. Here they constructed a kind of bulwark with casks and chests, and planted cannon about them at convenient distances.

17. The sea beat so heavily, that it was impossible to have any communication with the ships. Columbus was alarmed at the long absence of the boat, but was unable to send another in search of it. He remained ten days in this condition, during which time the captive Indians escaped, by bursting the hatches at night, and leaping into the water. At length one of the sailors proposed to the admiral that he should be carried in the boat to a certain distance from shore, and that he would swim the rest

How many men were killed? 16. What did the colonists build for defence after they left their houses? 17. What took place during ten days? What did one of the sailors propose?

of the way, and discover what had become of their companions.

18 This man was Pedro Ledesma, a native of Seville. Being borne to within about a musket shot of land, he plunged into the swelling and foaming waves, and succeeded in reaching the shore. He here learned what had happened—the loss of his comrades, and the determination of the colonists not to remain. With this information, Ledesma swam back to the boat that was waiting for him. As soon as the waters became more quiet, those who had been left on shore lashed a couple of Indian canoes together, loaded them with their effects, and, leaving behind them only the worm-eaten hulk of the ship, made for the little fleet of the admiral.

18. What was his name? How did he reach the shore? What did he learn there? What did those do who had been left on shore?

CHAPTER XV.

Great Storm. The Vessels are run ashore at Jamaica. Two Canoes sail for Hispaniola. Mutiny. Prediction of an Eclipse. Caravel arrives. Mutiny is quelled. Mendez arrives with a Ship. Sail for St. Domingo. Return to Spain. Death of Columbus.

1. THE three ships then set sail, and held on their course to Porto Bello, where they were obliged to leave one of the vessels, because it was so worm-eaten and leaky. Continuing their voyage, they passed the Tortugas, and reached the cluster of islands which had been called the Queen's Garden. While at anchor in this place, about ten leagues from Cuba, with very little to eat, and their vessels exceedingly leaky, a great storm arose, and the two remaining ships were driven with such violence against each other, that it was with difficulty they escaped, even with great injury.

2. Sailing hence, with much toil and danger, they reached an Indian village on the coast of Cuba, where they procured some water and provisions, and departed for Jamaica. They were obliged to keep continually working at three pumps in each of the vessels. With all this, however, they could

1. Where did Columbus leave one of his ships? Where did the vessels come to anchor? What accident happened? 2. What did they procure on the coast of Cuba?

not prevent the water from gaining upon them with great rapidity; and when they put into the harbor of Puerto Bueno, it almost came up to the decks. Leaving this port, they run their vessels ashore as far as possible, in the harbor of Santa Gloria, and built sheds upon the decks for the men to lie in.

3. They were thus situated about a bow-shot from the land. It happened that the Indians of the island were peaceable and well-disposed, and came off from all quarters, in their canoes, to traffic. They brought to the ships some little creatures like rabbits, and cakes of bread which they called zabi, which they were glad to exchange for hawks' bells and glass beads. Sometimes the Spaniards gave a cacique a looking-glass or a red cap, and, perhaps, a pair of scissors.

4. It was now necessary to devise means to leave the island. They had no tools to build a new ship with, and it was in vain to stay in hopes that some vessel from Spain would fall in with them. The admiral thought the best course would be to send word to Hispaniola, and request that a ship might be sent to them with ammunition and provisions. Two canoes were, accordingly, selected for this purpose, and committed to Diego Mendez and Bartholomew Fiesco, with six Spaniards and ten Indians to manage them. They went along the coast

In what condition were they now placed? 3. What did the Indians bring to barter with the Spaniards? 4. What became necessary to be done? Who were sent out in the two canoes?

of Jamaica, to the eastern extremity, where it was thirty leagues distant from Hispaniola, and put out to sea.

5. Shortly after the canoes had departed, the men on shore began to grow discontented, and a violent sickness broke out among them. They became turbulent and seditious. The leaders of the sedition were two natives of Seville, brothers, by the name of Porras. One of them openly insulted the admiral on the deck of his ship, and, turning his back on him, exclaimed, "I am for Spain, with all that will follow me." About forty of the most mutinous joined with him, and, seizing some canoes which the admiral had purchased, departed for the eastern extremity of the island.

6. These conspirators treated the natives very cruelly upon the way, committing various outrages, and compelling them to row their canoes for Hispaniola. The sea soon grew rough, and they threw every thing they could spare overboard, in order to lighten their slender barks. At last they threw over even the helpless natives who had been forced into their service, and left them to perish in the waves. With much difficulty the canoes reached the shore. They again ventured out once or twice, after an interval of several weeks, and were again driven back by the winds. From the many ex-

5. What happened after their departure? What of the two brothers? What did the mutineers then do? 6. How did they treat the natives? What happened to the canoes?

cesses committed by these men, and the increasing scarcity of provisions, the Indians at length began to neglect even those who had remained with the admiral, and whom they had hitherto supplied with sufficient quantities of food.

7. The admiral was desirous to awe the natives into a compliance with his requests. He knew that on a certain night there was to be an eclipse of the moon. On the day before this event he invited all the caciques and chief men of the place to an assembly. He here told them, through an interpreter, that the Spaniards believed in a God, who dwelt in heaven, rewarding the good and punishing the evil ; that this deity had been offended with the wicked who rebelled, and had raised up the winds and tempests against them ; that he was angry with the Indians for their negligence in not furnishing food for the white men, and that he would that night give them a sign of his indignation in the skies.

8. The Indians listened, and departed, some in terror, some in scorn. But when the eclipse began, as the moon was rising, they were all struck with fear and confusion. They came running with cries and lamentations from every quarter, bringing provisions, and praying the admiral to intercede for them. Columbus shut himself up while the eclipse

-
- Why did the Indians become incensed against the Spaniards ?
7. What advantage did Columbus take of the coming eclipse ?
8. How did it affect the Indians ?



The Indians alarmed at the Eclipse foretold by Columbus

lasted, and when he saw it begin to go off, he came out of his cabin, and warned them to use the Christians well in future, and bring them all they should require of them. From that time supplies of provisions were always abundant.

9. Eight months passed after the departure of Mendez and Fiesco, before any notice was received of their arrival. Other desertions were on the point of taking place, when, towards dusk, one evening, a caravel was espied in the distance. It proved to have been sent from Hispaniola, under the command of Diego de Escobar. He had orders not to go on shore, nor to permit his crew to have any communication with the followers of the admiral. Escobar went in his boat to deliver to Columbus a letter from the governor, and a present of a cask of wine, and a couple of hams; then, returning to his caravel, he sailed away that very evening.

10. The admiral was very much surprised at this singular conduct, and the people thought the governor intended to leave them there without assistance. But Columbus soothed them with such explanations as he could invent; told them that Mendez had arrived safely at Hispaniola, and gave promises of speedy relief. He now turned his attention towards arranging affairs with the rebels. Messengers were sent to them, whom they insulted

What was the consequence? 9. What vessel at length arrived from Hispaniola? What did Escobar do? 10. How did Columbus treat this strange affair?

and dismissed; and it was at last necessary to come to open battle with them.

11. For this purpose fifty men, well armed, were selected from those who continued faithful to Columbus, and put under the command of the *adelantado*. Having arrived at a small hill, about a bow-shot from the camp of the rebels, two messengers were sent before, to request a peaceable conference with their leaders. They refused to listen to them, but fell, with swords and spears, upon the party of the *adelantado*, thinking to route them immediately. The rebels, however, were finally dispersed with some slaughter.

12. On the next day, all who had escaped joined in an humble petition to the admiral, repenting of their past conduct, and declaring themselves ready to return to their duty. Columbus granted their request, upon condition that their captain should remain a prisoner, as a hostage for their good behavior. They were accordingly quartered about the island, in such places as were most convenient, till the arrival of a ship from Hispaniola.

13. Some days now passed, when Diego Mendez arrived with a vessel which he had purchased, and fitted out, at St. Domingo, on the admiral's credit. They immediately embarked on board of it, and

11. How many men were sent against the rebels? What took place? 12 How did the rebels who escaped conduct themselves? What was done with them? 13. In what vessel did they embark for St. Domingo?

sailing with contrary winds, reached St. Domingo on the 13th of August, 1504. The governor received the admiral with the greatest respect and ceremony. His kindness, however, was only forced and treacherous. He set Porras free from his chains, and attempted to punish those who were concerned in his arrest. Columbus remained here till his ship was refitted and another hired, and in these vessels they pursued their voyage to Spain.

14. Setting sail on the twelfth of September, the mast of one of the ships was carried by the board, when they were about two leagues from shore. This ship returned to the harbor, and the admiral pursued his voyage in the other. The weather proved very stormy, and the remaining ship was much shattered before she arrived at St. Lucar. At this port Columbus received the sad intelligence of the death of his noble patron, Isabella. He then repaired to Seville.

15. But he was doomed to end a life of toil with sad disappointments. Ferdinand was jealous and ungrateful. He was weary of a man who had conferred so much glory upon his kingdom, and unwilling to repay him with the honors and privileges his extraordinary services so richly merited. He deceived him with promises which he never intended to fulfil, and raised hopes which he never intended to satisfy.

In what year was this ? What of the governor ? 14. What happened during the voyage to Spain ? What news did Columbus hear at St. Lucar ? 15. How were his services rewarded by Ferdinand ?

16. Disgusted and mortified by this conduct in a sovereign to whom he had rendered such service, exhausted with the hardships which he had suffered, and oppressed with infirmities, Columbus ended his life at Valladolid, on the twentieth of May, one thousand five hundred and six. "He died," says an elegant historian, "with a composure of mind suitable to the magnanimity which distinguished his character, and with sentiments of piety becoming that supreme respect for religion, which he manifested in every occurrence of his life."

17. The monument erected by Ferdinand to his memory bears this inscription :

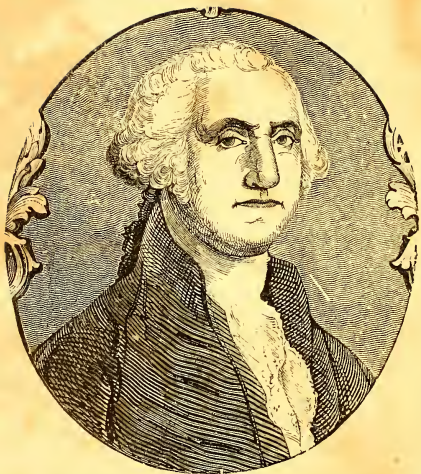
POR CASTILLA Y POR LEON

NUEVO MUNDO HALLO COLON.

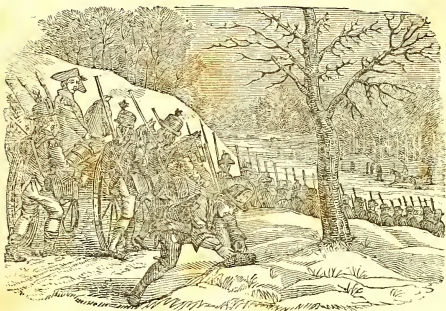
For Castile and Leon Columbus found a New World.



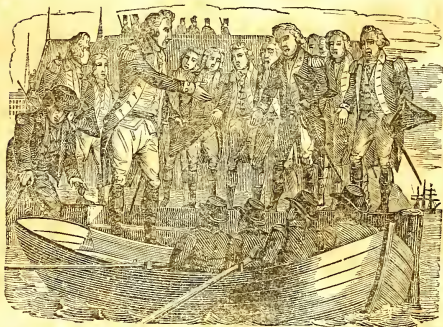
16. With what feelings did Columbus end his life ? Repeat the words of an elegant historian. 17. Who erected a monument to his memory ? What inscription does it bear ?



WASHINGTON.



Encampment at Valley Forge.

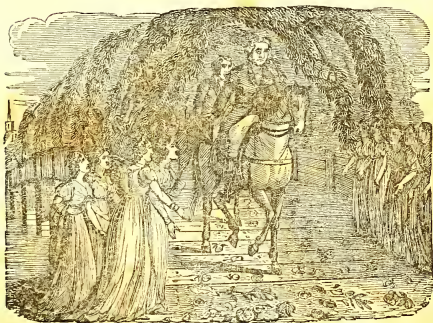


Washington taking leave of his Officers.

THE LIFE
OF
GEORGE WASHINGTON.

ILLUSTRATED BY
TALES, SKETCHES AND ANECDOTES.

ADAPTED TO THE USE OF SCHOOLS.



WITH ENGRAVINGS.

PHILADELPHIA:
CHARLES DESILVER,
251 MARKET STREET.
1857.

Entered according to act of Congress, in the year 1836, by
S. G. GOODRICH,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Massachusetts.

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.—Birth of Washington. Early Education. French Claims. Expedition to the Ohio. Appointed Lieutenant Colonel. March to the Great Meadows. Surrender of Fort Necessity. March of General Braddock. Defeat. Depredations of the Indians. Desertion of Fort Du Quesne. Retirement of Washington.....	7
CHAPTER II.—Taxation of the Colonies. Congress at Philadelphia. Washington chosen Commander in Chief: Arrival at Cambridge. Position of the American Troops. British Army. Want of Ammunition. Difficulty of enlisting Soldiers. Possession of Dorchester Heights.....	20
CHAPTER III.—Evacuation of Boston. Anecdote. Entrance of the American Army. March to New York. Atrocious Plot. Independence. Attempts of Lord Howe at Negotiation. Mission of Colonel Patterson. Orders of Washington. Battle at Long Island. Retreat of the American Army.....	30
CHAPTER IV.—Communication to Congress. Evacuation of New York. A successful Skirmish. Loss of Forts Washington and Lee. Proclamation of Pardon. Retreat. Capture of General Lee. Passage of the Delaware. Letter to Congress. Situation of the British Army.....	38
CHAPTER V.—Army recrosses the Delaware. Battle of Trenton. Retreat. Victory at Princeton. Winter Quarters. Treatment of American Prisoners. Encampment west of Philadelphia. Battle of the Brandywine. General Howe enters Philadelphia.....	46
CHAPTER VI.—Works on the Delaware. Battle of Germantown. Forts taken. Encampment at White Marsh. Winter Quarters at Valley Forge. Sufferings of the Americans. Plan to supplant General Washington. His Letters on the Subject. Situation of the Army at Valley Forge.....	56
CHAPTER VII.—Preparations for the Campaign. Alliance with France. Sir Henry Clinton. Battle of Monmouth. Trial of General Lee. French Fleet. Violent Storm. Difficulty with Count D'Estaing. Plan for the Reduction of Canada. Views of the British Government.....	64
CHAPTER VIII.—Trouble in the Jersey Brigade. Letters from Washington. Reply. Wretched Condition of the Army. Expedition against the Indians. Capture of Stony Point. Paulus Hook. Assault upon Savannah. Winter Quarters. Sufferings of the Soldiers.....	72
CHAPTER IX.—Expedition to Staten Island. Review of four Battalions. Parade of the whole Army. Death of Miralles. Situa-	

tion of the Officers. Loss of Charleston. Lafayette. French Armament. Designs on New York. Indian Chiefs review the Army.....	79
CHAPTER X.—The Story of the Treachery of Arnold.....	87
CHAPTER XI.—The Story of Sergeant Champe.....	95
CHAPTER XII.—Revolt on the Night of New Year. A second Revolt. Troops sent against the Insurgents. Ringleaders shot. Anecdote. Army marches through Philadelphia. An amusing Letter. Arrival of Count de Grasse. Siege of Yorktown.....	105
CHAPTER XIII.—Siege continued. Assault of British Redoubts. Anecdote. Surrender of Yorktown. Anecdotes. Proclamation of Congress. Army returns to the Vicinity of New York. Mutiny. Celebration of the Birth of the Dauphin.....	113
CHAPTER XIV.—Murder of Captain Huddy. Council of War determine upon Retaliation. Story of Captain Asgill. Parade of the Troops. Compliment from Count Rochambeau. Claims of the Army. Anonymous Addresses. Washington's Interview with the Officers. Letter to Congress. Cessation of Hostilities. Washington's Address to the Army. Mutiny among some Pennsylvania Troops.....	123
CHAPTER XV.—Conduct of Washington towards the Mutineers. His Address to Congress. Farewell Orders to the Army. Disbanding of the Troops. British evacuate New York. Splendid Entertainment. Society of Cincinnati. Parting Scene.....	132
CHAPTER XVI.—Anecdote of Baron de Steuben. A Whale or an Eel? The Dwarf of Tatawa Falls. General Gates. Amusing Spleen of General Lee. General Knox. Washington's Opinion of General Greene. General Lincoln. Marquis de Lafayette. Congress express their Respect for him. His Reply.....	139
CHAPTER XVII.—Washington's Resignation. Address to Congress. Mount Vernon. Calling of a Convention. Washington elected President. Passage to New York. Decoration of Gray's Bridge. Triumphal Arch at Trenton. Landing at New York. Ceremonies of Inauguration.....	147
CHAPTER XVIII.—State of Foreign Affairs. Peace made with the Creek Indians. War between France and Great Britain. Washington retires from Office. Denies the Authorship of certain Letters. Mr. Adams inaugurated. Difficulties with France. Commander in Chief. His Letter to Congress. Peaceful Arrangements. Death of Washington.....	155
CHAPTER XIX.—Proceedings of Congress. Extract of a Letter from Mrs. Washington. Tributes of Respect from the People. Anecdotes of Washington. Travelling on Sunday. His Punctuality. Captain Pease and the Horses. His Liberality. Old Lydick.....	165
CHAPTER XX.—Personal Appearance of Washington. Description by Dr. Thacher. Remarks upon his Character.....	173

THE
LIFE OF WASHINGTON.

CHAPTER I.

Birth of Washington—Early Education—French Claims—Expedition to the Ohio—Appointed Lieutenant Colonel—March to the Great Meadows—Surrender of Fort Necessity—March of General Braddock—Defeat—Depredations of the Indians—Desertion of Fort Du Quesne—Retirement of Washington.

1. GEORGE WASHINGTON was born at Bridges Creek, in Westmoreland County, Virginia, on the twenty-second of February, 1732. He was the son of Augustine Washington, a descendant of one of the earliest settlers of the first English Colony in America. His father died, and left him at the age of ten years to be educated by an intelligent and affectionate mother. She devoted herself to the care of her children, and lived to reap the full reward of her anxious labors.

2. In the youth of George Washington, the means of instruction in America were very limited. He

1. When was Washington born? What of his father? His mother?

received merely an English education, of which mathematics formed the most important study. This was of advantage to him in early life, in the practice of his profession as a surveyor and in later years, in its connexion with military science. At the age of fifteen, he was desirous to enter the British navy, and obtained the place of a midshipman ; but the interference of his mother prevented him from adopting this course of life.

3. Of the childhood and early youth of Washington, no authentic anecdotes have been preserved. He is described, however, as silent, diligent, and methodical ; dignified in his appearance, and strictly honorable in all his conduct. A strong proof that he was regarded with respect and confidence, is found in the fact of his appointment to be one of the Adjutant Generals of Virginia, when only nineteen years of age. From this he was soon called to higher honors and services. He was hardly twenty-one, when the government of his native colony entrusted him with the performance of a very important and difficult commission.

4. The French were the first European discoverers of the Mississippi, and claimed all those regions whose waters emptied into that river. They had just formed

2. What of his education ? How was the study of mathematics an advantage to Washington ? What course of life was he anxious to adopt at the age of fifteen ? 3. How is he described when young ? To what office was he appointed at nineteen ? What happened after this ? 4. What of the French ?

a plan of connecting their extensive possessions in America, by the union of Louisiana with Canada. In pursuance of this design, a line of military posts from the Lakes to the Ohio had been recently commenced. This territory was situated within the boundaries of Virginia, and the Governor of that province deemed it his duty to remonstrate against encroachments, which he considered the violation of previous treaties. He determined to send an agent to the French commandant on the Ohio, to convey his views upon this important and delicate subject. He selected for this purpose Mr. Washington.

5. He left Williamsburg on the day he received his commission, and on the fourteenth of November reached the extreme frontier settlement of Virginia. Having procured guides to conduct him over the Alleghany mountains, he immediately pursued his journey. The weather was very stormy, and the snow deep; and a great part of his course lay through an unexplored wilderness. He very wisely secured the friendship of some Indian chiefs, who guided him to the fort at French Creek, where he found the commanding officer on the Ohio. Delivering his letters, in three or four days he received an official reply

6. He immediately departed on his return. Finding the snow deep, and his horses weakened with fatigue, he determined to pursue his way on foot. He took

What work had been recently commenced by the French? What of the governor of Virginia? Whom did he appoint his agent? 5. Relate his journey through the wilderness?

his necessary papers, a gun, and a pack, and wrapping himself in his watch-coat, set out with a single companion. On the day following, they fell in with a party of French Indians, one of whom fired upon them. They took this Indian prisoner, and kept him until nine o'clock in the evening, when they released him, and walked without stopping, all the rest of the night, in order to be out of the reach of pursuit.

7. They found the river, which they reached about dark on the next day, frozen but about fifty yards from each shore. It was therefore necessary to build a raft. They had but one poor hatchet, and after a day's work were able to get their raft under way. Before getting half over, they were enclosed with the ice, and expected to be dashed to pieces. In putting out his pole to stop the raft, that the ice might pass by, Washington was violently jerked into ten feet water, and saved himself by catching hold of one of the raft logs. They were obliged to quit their rafts, and with difficulty reached an Island in safety. The cold was excessively severe, and Mr. Gist, the guide, had his hands and feet badly frozen. The next day they passed the river on the ice, and reached Williamsburg on the sixteenth of January, 1754. The conduct of Washington in this enterprise added to his reputation for judgment and firmness.

8. As the answer of the French Commandant shew

How did he return? What of the French Indians? 7. Relate the adventures of Washington and his companion upon the river Ohio. When did they reach Williamsburg?

no intention of withdrawing from the disputed territory the assembly of Virginia determined to maintain by force the rights of the British crown. A regiment was immediately raised of three hundred men. The command of this body was given to Mr. Fry, and Washington was appointed lieutenant colonel. Desirous to engage in active service, and take as early measures as possible in defence of the colony, Washington obtained permission to march in advance of the other troops, to Great Meadows. On reaching this place, he learned from the friendly Indians that a party of the French were encamped in a valley a few miles to the west. The night was dark and rainy, and entirely concealed the movements of the troops. They surrounded the French camp, and took it completely by surprise. The commanding officer was the only one killed.

9. From the death of Colonel Fry, which took place shortly after this affair, the command of the regiment devolved upon Washington. All the forces now assembled at Great Meadows, to the amount of about four hundred men. A small stockade was erected, afterwards called Fort Necessity. Leaving here the horses and provisions, with a few soldiers to guard them, the main body moved forward, with the intention of dislodging the French from Fort Du Quesne.

8. What did the Assembly of Virginia do? Describe the service that Washington performed. 9. By what circumstance did he obtain the command of the regiment? What of Fort Necessity?

They had proceeded but a few miles, when information was brought by a friendly chief, that the French were advancing, as numerous as pigeons in the woods, and that the fort had been strongly reinforced.

10. A council of war was called, and it was determined to retire immediately to the Great Meadows. This was put into execution without delay, and every exertion made to place Fort Necessity in a state of defence. A ditch was commenced, but before its completion the enemy appeared, to the number of about fifteen hundred men. They attacked the fort with great fury, from the cover of trees and high grass with which that country abounds. The Americans received them with valour; some fighting in the ditch, some within the stockade. Washington remained during the whole day on the outside of the fort, encouraging the men by his cool and intrepid example.

11. The engagement continued from ten in the morning till dark, when the French general demanded a parley, and offered terms of capitulation. These were refused, but in the course of the night other proposals were at length accepted. The fort was surrendered on condition that the garrison should march out with the honors of war, should be permitted to retain their arms and baggage, and to march without molestation into the inhabited parts of Virginia. A

What was the intention of the main body of troops? 10. Why was a council of war called, and what was determined upon? What happened while the Americans were repairing their fort? 11. On what conditions was the fort at length surrendered?





WASHINGTON CROSSING A RIVER.

public vote of thanks was given to Washington, and the officers under his command, for their conduct in this affair; and three hundred pistoles were distributed among the soldiers.

12. Early in 1755, two British regiments were sent to support his majesty's claims to the Ohio lands. They were under the command of General Braddock, who invited Washington to serve the campaign as a volunteer aid-de-camp. This invitation he immediately accepted, and joined General Braddock on his march to Fort Cumberland. Here the army was detained till about the 12th of June, waiting for wagons, horses, and provisions. Soon after they resumed their march, Washington was attacked by a violent fever, and refusing to remain behind the troops, was conveyed with them in a covered wagon.

13. The object of the campaign was the capture of Fort Du Quesne. Washington advised the general to leave his heavy artillery and baggage behind, and to press forward with a chosen body of troops as expeditiously as possible. This advice was adopted, and twelve hundred men were selected, to be commanded by General Braddock in person, and to advance with the utmost despatch. This corps immediately commenced its march, but did not move with the celerity that had been expected. "I found," said Washington,

12. What happened early in 1755? What office did Washington accept under General Braddock? What of his sickness? 13. What was the object of the campaign? How many men were selected to march forward?

in a letter to his brother, "that instead of pushing on with vigor, without regarding a little rough road, they were halting to level every mole hill, and to erect bridges over every brook." They were four days in passing over the first nineteen miles from the Little Meadows.

14. Here, the sickness of Washington made it impossible for him to proceed on the march. General Braddock ordered him to stay behind with a small guard, till the arrival of Colonel Dunbar, with the rear division of the army. As soon as his strength would permit, he rejoined the general in a covered wagon, and immediately entered on the duty of his office.

15. On the next day, the troops had just crossed the Monongahela for the second time, and were in a few miles of Fort Du Quesne. They were advancing without any apprehension of danger, in small columns, through a thick wood, surrounded by high grass. On a sudden they were assailed by an invisible enemy. Shots were rapidly pouring in from all quarters, and the soldiers were thrown into general confusion. Braddock remained perfectly cool and self possessed in the midst of all this danger and death. He was unacquainted with the Indian mode of warfare, and very unwisely endeavored to rally his broken troops in the

What does Washington say in a letter, of the progress of the troops? How long were they passing over 19 miles? 14. What of Washington? 15. Relate the attack upon the troops.



Braddock's Defeat.

open space, where they were exposed to the terrible fire of the secret enemy.

16. From their sheltered positions, the enemy could take deliberate aim in safety. The officers of the British troops were slain in great numbers, and in a short time, Washington was the only aid-de-camp left alive and unwounded. He was obliged consequently to carry all of the general's orders, to every part of the battle-field in person. In performing this duty, he had two horses killed under him, and four balls passed through his coat. "I expected every moment," says an eye witness, "to see him fall. Nothing but the superintending care of Providence could have saved him from the fate of all around him."

17. The action continued nearly three hours. The General himself, after having three horses killed under him, received a mortal wound. His troops immediately fled. It was impossible to rally them, until they had crossed the Monongahela, and placed a river between themselves and their enemy. The Indians were too much occupied with the plunder, to think of continuing the pursuit. Braddock was carried to the camp of Dunbar, where in a few days he died.

18. In his official account of the battle, Washington bears witness to the incomparable bravery of the British officers. He says that the Virginia companies be-

What did General B. attempt to do? What effect had this attack upon the British forces? Did Washington escape unhurt? How did the troops behave upon the fall of their General?

haved like men, and died like soldiers; for of three companies that day on the ground, scarcely thirty men were left alive. The loss of the battle, he attributes to the cowardly behaviour of the regular troops, who broke into confusion in spite of every effort to the contrary, and ran like sheep before hounds. The reputation of Washington suffered no injury from this defeat. His conduct was highly praised, and it was thought if his advice had been pursued throughout, that the disasters of that day would have been avoided.

19. Intelligence of Braddock's defeat arrived, while the assembly of Virginia were yet in session. It was immediately resolved to raise a regiment of sixteen companies, the command of which was given to Washington. In execution of the duties of this office, he visited the frontiers of the state. He was arrested on his way to Williamsburg, by the information that parties of the French and Indians were committing the most fearful outrages in the back settlements. Crops were destroyed; villages burned; men, women, and children murdered. The few troops stationed on the frontiers were unable to afford them any protection, but retired for their own safety to the stockade forts.

20. Before any force could be collected sufficient to meet the assailants, they had retreated beyond the Alleghany mountains; again after a convenient inter-

18. What account does Washington give of the conduct of the officers and regular troops? What was thought of Washington? 19. What command was given to him? What outrages were the French and Indians committing at this time?

val to repeat their cruelties. They continued these attacks for three years. Their manner of conducting them was with the utmost secrecy. Small parties of French and Indians, detached from Fort Du Quesne, would lurk about in the woods in the neighborhood of a village, and suddenly attack some solitary and unprotected family. Captivity, torture or death was the lot of all who fell into their power.

21. The people looked to Washington for the protection he was unable to give. The difficulty of raising a large number of men, and the inability of a small number to protect the extensive frontiers of Virginia, were continual sources of anxiety and distress. The savages made no distinctions in their warfare. They slew the women and children, the aged and the helpless, as well as the men whom they found in arms. Washington, in a letter written during this period to the governor, observed—"The supplicating tears of the women and moving petitions of the men, melt me with such deadly sorrow, that I solemnly declare, if I know my own mind, I could offer myself a willing sacrifice to the butchering enemy, provided that would contribute to the people's ease."

22. Washington made continual representations to the Governor, of the defects of existing measures for defence, and recommended the erection of a line of twenty-two forts along the frontiers, to be garrisoned

23. Where did the assailants retreat? How did they conduct their attacks? 21. Why was Washington unable to protect the people? Repeat the extract from his letter

by two thousand men. He always advised that Fort Du Quesne should be reduced, as the best means of security. It was only after great delay and disappointment, that he could prevail upon the government to undertake this expedition.

23. In 1756, the project was entirely approved by General Forbes, who was charged with the defence of the middle and southern colonies. The movements of the army were immediately directed to that purpose. After a variety of delays in bringing the troops together, the main body commenced their march on the second of October. The progress of the army, however, was so slow, that the lateness of the season made it necessary that the attack upon Fort Du Quesne should be delayed till another campaign.

24. It had been decided in a council of war, that it was unadvisable to proceed any farther that season. Circumstances occurred, however, to put the fort directly in their power, without a battle. Some prisoners were taken, who gave them such information in respect to the garrison as encouraged them to proceed. They advanced slowly, and with caution, till they reached Fort Du Quesne. To their great surprise they found that the troops had deserted it, and retreated down the Ohio.

25. The possession of this fortress secured the peace

22. What did Washington recommend? When was the reduction of Fort Du Quesne at length undertaken? 23. Why was it deferred till another campaign? 24. What circumstance induced the army to proceed to the fort? What did they find there?

and safety of the frontier settlements. Washington immediately resigned his commission, and retired to private life. He married an amiable and beautiful woman, and withdrew to his estate on the Potomac, to the management of which he devoted himself for the next fifteen years.

CHAPTER II.

Taxation of the Colonies—Congress at Philadelphia—Washington chosen Commander-in-Chief—Arrival at Cambridge—Position of the American Troops—British Army—Want of Ammunition—Difficulty of enlisting Soldiers—Possession of Dorechester Heights.

1. THE British Parliament had been pursuing, for a number of years, a course of measures which violated the rights of their American colonies. They had attempted to collect taxes in the different provinces, and claimed the right of exercising this power when and in what manner they pleased. These claims had given rise to a great deal of discontent and confusion, and had drawn forth a decided and general opposition from every part of the country.

25. What was the consequence of the possession of Fort Du Quesne? What did Washington then do? 1. What effect had the measures of the British Parliament upon the American Colonies?

2. In the year 1774, an assembly met in Philadelphia to take into consideration the rights and the grievances of the Colonies. It was composed of men of the first character, sent from each colony to take care of the common interest. Among the delegates from Virginia we find the name of George Washington; and on the subsequent preparations for defence, he was unanimously chosen by the Congress, Commander-in-chief of the American forces.

3. This Congress had taken every means to preserve an honorable peace. They petitioned to their sovereign for the redress of their wrongs, with firmness and propriety, but without effect. Hostilities had commenced at Lexington, and a battle had been fought on Bunker's Hill. It had been found necessary to raise an army, and the appointment of Washington to its command was every where received with approbation.

4. When this election was made known to Washington, he expressed his sense of the high honor that had been conferred on him, and modestly signified a distrust of his own ability and military experience. "Lest some unlucky event," he observed, "should happen, unfavorable to my reputation, I beg it may be remembered by every gentleman in the room, that I this day declare, with the utmost sincerity, I do not

2. What happened in the year 1774? What of the assembly convened at Philadelphia? To what office was Washington elected? 3. What had taken place when the petitions of Congress were refused? 4. What did Washington do when his election was made known to him?

think myself equal with the command I am honored with." He declined all compensation for his services, and only desired that his necessary expenses should be discharged by Congress.

5. He prepared immediately to enter upon the duties of his station. Having passed a few days in New-York, to make some arrangements with General Schuyler, who commanded there, he proceeded to Cambridge, at that time the head quarters of the American army. On his way thither, he received every token of respect and affection, and every promise of support and assistance. A committee of the Congress of Massachusetts met him at Springfield, about one hundred miles from Boston, and escorted him to the army.

6. Immediately after his arrival, the Congress presented him an address, in which they expressed their approbation of his appointment, and the great respect and affection they entertained for him. His reply was well calculated to increase these sentiments. He returned the warmest acknowledgements of their kindness, and promised ever to retain it in grateful remembrance.

7. In the course of his answer, he observed, "In exchanging the enjoyments of domestic life for the duties of my present honorable, but arduous situation, I only emulate the virtue and public spirit of the whole province of Massachusetts, which, with a firm-

5. What General commanded in New York? What was the head quarters of the army? What of Washington? 3. What took place between Congress and Washington?

ness and patriotism without example, has sacrificed all the comforts of social and political life, in support of the rights of mankind, and the welfare of our common country. My highest ambition is to be the happy instrument of vindicating these rights, and to see this devoted province again restored to peace, liberty and safety."

8. On reaching the camp, the first movements of the Commander-in-chief were directed to an examination of the strength and situation of his forces. They amounted to about fourteen thousand and five hundred men; occupying several posts in an extent of about twelve miles. Some were stationed at Roxbury, some at Cambridge, and some on Winter and Prospect Hills in front of Bunker's Hill. A few companies were posted in the towns about Boston Bay, which were most exposed to attacks from British armed vessels. The troops were not sufficiently numerous to defend so large an extent of country, but it was difficult to make a more compact arrangement.

9. The British army were posted in three divisions. The main body, under General Howe was intrenching itself on Bunker's Hill, in Charlestown. Another division was stationed on Copp's Hill, and the third was strongly intrenched and fortified on Roxbury neck. There were three floating batteries in Mystic

7. Repeat Washington's reply to Congress. 8. Where did Washington station his forces? What was their number? 9 How was the British army disposed?

river, and a small body of infantry and light horse stationed in Boston.

10. General Washington made no immediate change in the position or arrangement of his troops, except to form them into three grand divisions. That part of the army about Roxbury formed the right wing, under the command of Major General Ward; that division on Prospect and Winter Hills formed the left wing, under the command of Major General Lee. The centre division was under the immediate command of General Washington, whose head quarters were at Cambridge.

11. On inquiry into the state of the ammunition, it was discovered that there was in the camp, sufficient powder to furnish every soldier with only nine cartridges. This alarming deficiency continued about a fortnight. During this time, efforts were made in all directions, with the utmost despatch and secrecy, to procure supplies. All the colonial committees and governments were petitioned to send every pound of lead and powder that could possibly be spared. If an attack had been made by the British army at this period, after firing a few rounds, the Americans would have been left without any means of defence. Their

10. Under what commanders were the three divisions of the American army placed? 11. What was discovered concerning the powder? What efforts were made at this time? If an attack had been made, what would have been the consequences?

powder would have been exhausted ; and besides that, their muskets were without bayonets.

12. Other difficulties also, were to be contended with. There was no discipline among the troops, owing to their being enlisted only for short periods. Besides the want of arms and powder, they were in need of clothes and tools. The appointment of general officers by Congress gave great dissatisfaction, and induced several of those who thought themselves injured, to quit the service. To remedy all these evils, to substitute discipline for disorder, and regularity for confusion in a large body of men, and under the eyes of an enemy, was a task that required great wisdom and perseverance.

13. General Gage had received a small reinforcement, from New York, so that the whole number of the British army now amounted to about eight thousand men. The two armies continued to work upon their fortifications without interruption. Slight skirmishes occasionally took place, but with very little loss to either party. This mere defence, however, did not satisfy the active disposition of Washington. He was desirous of some decided measure to destroy the army in Boston, before it should be strengthened by any additional reinforcements.

12. What difficulties were to be encountered? What was necessary to remedy these evils? 13. What was the amount of the British officers? How did the two armies employ themselves? Of what was Washington desirous?

14. The situation of the enemy was frequently reconnoitred, and every effort made to ascertain their strength. To carry their works by storm was a dangerous project, but it appeared to Washington practicable, and he determined to suggest it to his general officers. A council of war was called, and the measure proposed. It was decided that the attempt ought not to be at that time made. The original plan of continuing the blockade appeared the most advisable.

15. In the mean time, the want of fresh meat and vegetables occasioned considerable distress in the British army. Small parties sailed from Boston to make excursions along the coast, and to take away whatever stock they could find. It required a great deal of activity to protect the sea-board towns from these attacks. Several applications were made to General Washington, to detach forces from the main army for their defence. It was of course impossible to comply with these requests, and denial created dissatisfaction. Congress accordingly passed a resolution, that the army before Boston ought not to be weakened, by detachments for the security of other parts of the country.

16. After a recess of a single month, the American Congress had again assembled at Philadelphia on the

14. What measure was proposed at the council of war? 15. What occasioned distress in the British army? What application was made to General Washington? What followed? 16. What subject of interest now occupied Congress?

fifth of September. The subject of greatest interest at that time was the re-enlistment of the army before Boston. A committee was accordingly appointed to repair to the camp at Cambridge, and confer with the chief magistrates of the northern Colonies, and the council of Massachusetts, on continuing and regulating the continental army. As soon as this committee had completed their arrangements, Washington proceeded to take the necessary steps for carrying them into execution.

17. Great difficulties occurred in effecting the re-enlistment. Many were unwilling to continue in the army at any rate, and others except on particular conditions. Some insisted on leave to visit their families, and others were undetermined whether to retire or remain. At length, with much labor, the officers were arranged, and recruiting orders were issued. The officers were directed to be careful not to enlist any person suspected of being unfriendly to the liberty of America, or any abandoned person to whom all causes were indifferent. "Let those who wish to put shackles upon freemen, fill their ranks with, and place their confidence in, such miscreants."

18. The new regiments did not fill so rapidly as had been expected. The old troops, whose term of service had expired, were eager to return home; the

17. What difficulties occurred? What direction was given to the officers? 18. What did Washington say to Congress in regard to the difficulties that beset the army?

new troops were slow in coming in. From this circumstance, the lines were often in a defenceless state. "It is not," says General Washington, in a communication to Congress, "in the pages of history to furnish a case like ours. To maintain a post within musket shot of the enemy, for six months together, without ammunition, and at the same time to disband one army and recruit another, within that distance of twenty odd British regiments, is more, probably, than ever was attempted."

19. About the middle of February 1776, the ice had become sufficiently firm to bear the troops. Washington was now desirous to execute his plan of attacking the enemy in Boston. A council of war was again called, and was again almost unanimous against the measure. It was therefore reluctantly abandoned. The regular force engaged for the year now amounted to more than fourteen thousand men, and the militia to about six thousand. With these troops, Washington determined to take possession of the heights of Dorchester; a step which he thought must certainly bring on a general action.

20. To favor the execution of this plan, a heavy bombardment on the town, and lines of the enemy, was commenced, on the evening of the second of March, and continued on the two succeeding nights.

19. What of February 1776? What was the number of the forces? What did Washington determine to do? 20. What happened on the second of March?

On the night of the fourth, a detachment under the command of General Thomas crossed the neck from Roxbury, and took possession of the heights. The ground was deeply frozen, and it was with great labor that the party were able, during the night, to raise works that would protect them against the shot of the enemy.

21. The British were very much surprised on the following morning, at sight of the American fortification. It is reported, that when they first appeared, looming to great advantage through the fog, General Howe observed in astonishment—"I know not what I shall do, the rebels have done more in one night than my whole army would have done in weeks." It was necessary to drive the Americans from their new post, or to abandon the town. Lord Percy, with about three thousand men, was accordingly ordered to dislodge the Americans from these heights. The next day he embarked with his troops, and fell down to Castle Island; a position very favorable for the attack. A violent storm during the night deranged their plans, and before any other measures could be taken, the works were too strongly fortified to be assaulted.

What did the detachment do under General Thomas? 21.
 What of the British? General Howe? What of Lord Percy?
 What was the result of his attempts?

CHAPTER III.

Evacuation of Boston—Anecdote—Entrance of the American army—March to New York—Atrocious plot—Independence—Attempts of Lord Howe at negotiation—Mission of Colonel Patterson—Orders of Washington—Battle at Long Island—Retreat of the American army.

1. WASHINGTON was disappointed in the interruption of the attack upon Dorchester heights. He expected that the best troops of the enemy would be engaged there, and had made preparations to avail himself of their absence, to take possession of Boston. Four thousand men were in readiness at the mouth of Cambridge river to embark on this service; and had their plan succeeded, the British army would probably have been destroyed.

2. It was now necessary for the enemy to evacuate the town. On Sunday, the seventeenth of March, they commenced their embarkation on board of the transports. The American soldiers might have troubled them very seriously as they passed Dorchester heights, but no orders were given to this effect, and no molestation was attempted.

3. An anecdote is related of this siege, which reflects but little honor on the parties concerned in it.

1. What plan had been frustrated by the interruption of the attack upon Dorchester? 2. What took place on the seventeenth of March? 3. Relate the anecdote of the theatre.

The British officers amused themselves with a farce, in which a figure was introduced to burlesque General Washington. It was uncouthly dressed, with a large wig and a long rusty sword, attended by an orderly serjeant, with an old gun seven or eight feet long.

4 Just as this figure appeared, one of the regular serjeants rushed forward, and throwing down his bayonet, exclaimed—"The Yankees are attacking our works on Bunker hill." This was supposed at first to be a part of the play; but when General Howe called out, "*Officers to your posts,*" a scene of the greatest confusion took place among the ladies and gentlemen, who had met to be amused instead of frightened.

5. In entering the town, it was found that much less injury had been done than was anticipated. Washington received joyful congratulations from all sides. The thanks of Congress in the name of the thirteen colonies, were presented to him, and the officers and soldiers under his command, for their brave and spirited conduct. A medal was struck with suitable devices, and presented to the commander in chief, in commemoration of this great event.

6. During the siege, the Old South Church, a brick building near the centre of the town, had been converted into a riding school for Burgoyne's dragoons. The pulpit and pews were removed, and the floor covered with earth, to make it suitable for exercising their

5. What was found on entering Boston? What then took place? 6. What of the South and North Church?

horses upon. A beautiful pew, ornamented with silk and carved work was broken up, and its pieces taken for a fence to a hogstye. The North Church was torn down, and consumed for fuel.

7. Washington was of opinion that the efforts of the British army would now be directed towards the Hudson. Having left a small detachment to complete the fortification of Boston, he immediately marched with the main army for New York. Arriving there on the fourteenth of April, he commenced immediate preparations for the reception of the enemy. The Americans were occupied with these labors till the arrival of the British fleet and army at Sandy Hook. They were deficient in clothing, tents, arms, and military stores of every description. Two thousand men in the camp were unprovided with muskets. In this weak condition, General Washington was to contend with a powerful army, and to guard against the intrigues of those Americans who still remained attached to the British cause.

8. A plot of the most atrocious nature was about this time detected. A party of tories had conspired to join the British army, to assassinate General Washington, and blow up the magazines. The mayor of the city, and an armorer in the service of the tories, were arrested and confined in prison. On examination, it was confessed that money had been received

7. To what place did Washington repair? What was the situation of the army at this time? 8. What plot was discovered?

from Governor Tryon to pay the armorer, and that two of his Excellency's guards were concerned in the plot. Several of these miscreants were convicted and executed.

9. Efforts were now made to reinforce the regular troops, with large numbers of militia. It was determined to form a flying camp of ten thousand men for the defence of the middle colonies. The commander in chief was also authorised to call on the provincial governments for such temporary aids of militia as he might require.

10. While these measures for defence were going forward in the camp, Congress had been gradually preparing to declare the colonies independent of Great Britain. Early in June a resolution to this effect had been moved by Richard Henry Lee, and seconded by John Adams. It was solemnly debated for a number of days and at length unanimously adopted. The Declaration of Independence, which had been prepared by a select committee, was then taken into consideration, and after a few alterations received the sanction of Congress, on the fourth of July.

11. His duties in the field prevented Washington from taking any direct agency in that measure. Throughout the colonies, it was hailed by the citizens with acclamations of joy. On the reception of the instrument, in a letter to the president of Congress,

9. What efforts were now made, and what was determined upon? 10. When was the Independence of the colonies declared? 11. How was this declaration received?

Washington wrote as follows: "Agreeable to the request of Congress, I caused the *Declaration* to be proclaimed before all the army under my immediate command; and have the pleasure to inform them that the measure seemed to have their most hearty consent; the expressions and behavior of both officers and men, testifying their warmest approbation of it."

12. Notwithstanding the declaration of independence, Lord Howe was desirous of a peaceful negotiation. He accordingly sent a letter, by a flag, directed to "George Washington, Esq." This the general refused to receive, as it did not recognize the public character with which he had been invested by Congress. His conduct on this occasion met with the approbation of this body, and they resolved, "that he had acted with the dignity becoming his character."

13. The British commander was very anxious to obtain an interview with Washington, but was unwilling to adopt his military address. He accordingly sent Colonel Patterson to the American head quarters, with a letter to "George Washington, &c. &c. &c." The general still declined receiving it. He said it was true the etceteras implied every thing, they also implied any thing: and a letter, directed to a public character, should have an address descriptive of that character.

Repeat part of Washington's letter? 12. What took place between Lord Howe and General Washington?

14. Colonel Patterson then said that General Howe would not urge his delicacy any further ; repeating his assertion that not the slightest disrespect was intended in the form of the address. Some conversation ensued in respect to the treatment of prisoners ; when the colonel observed that Lord and General Howe had been appointed commissioners by the king, and were very desirous of arranging the difficulties that had so unfortunately arisen.

15. General Washington observed that he was vested with no power of treating upon the subject. He had read the act of parliament, and found Lord and General Howe only authorized to grant pardons. The Americans, having committed no fault, desired no pardon ; they were only defending their rights. Colonel Patterson seemed confused, and said this would open a wide field for argument. After some few remarks, he was invited to a small collation and introduced to the general officers. With many polite expressions at taking leave, he observed — “ Has your Excellency no commands to my Lord or General Howe ? ” “ None, Sir,” replied Washington, “ but my particular compliments to both of them.”

16. The force of General Howe amounted to twenty-four thousand men, well disciplined and provided with all the necessaries of war. He was supported by a powerful fleet and was expecting reinforcements

14. What of Colonel Patterson ? 15. Washington ? What was the result of Colonel Patterson’s embassy ? 16. What was the force of General Howe ?

daily. When he landed on Staten Island, the American forces did not exceed ten thousand men. Before the end of August however they amounted to about twenty-seven thousand. Many were sick however, and a large number were militia. They were distributed about at different posts in the vicinity of New York.

17. An attack from the enemy being daily expected, General Washington exerted himself to establish discipline, and circulate military spirit among his troops. The orders which he issued soon after the arrival of General Howe, were well adapted to cherish a love of liberty, and excite a general indignation against the invaders. "The time," he observed, "is now at hand, which must possibly determine whether Americans are to be freemen or slaves; whether they are to have any property they can call their own; whether their houses and farms are to be pillaged and destroyed, and themselves consigned to a state of wretchedness from which no human efforts can deliver them."

18. On the twenty-second of August, the greatest part of the British troops landed on Long Island, and on the fifth day after, commenced the attack. The possession of this post was necessary to the defence of New York, and a strong detachment had been placed there under the command of General Green. This

What of the American army? 17. What did Washington exert himself to do? What did he say to the people? 19. When did the British commence the attack? What of Gen. Green?

officer was well acquainted with all the passes of the island, but he had unfortunately fallen sick a few days before the attack. The American troops were at that time therefore under the command of General Sullivan.

19. The attack was made at several points by different detachments of the British army. A series of small battles ensued. There were defeats and victories between inconsiderable parties on every side. This continued for a number of hours, when the Americans were completely routed in all directions.

20. While the action was at its height, General Washington passed over to Long Island, to witness a carnage which he could not prevent. It was out of his power to bring the rest of the army into the field; for this would have been to risk every thing on a single engagement. A general defeat at that time might have crushed forever the hopes of liberty.

21. The American troops retired within their lines, discouraged and fatigued, with a victorious army in front, and a powerful fleet about to enter East River, for the purpose of cutting off their retreat. Washington immediately determined to evacuate the island with all his forces. With this view, he crossed over to the island on the night of the twenty-ninth, to conduct the retreat in person.

General Sullivan? 19. What was the result of the attack?
20. What of Washington? 21. The American troops? What
did Washington determine to do?

22. It so happened, that about two o'clock in the morning, a heavy fog enveloped the whole of Long Island. Under this cover, an army of nine thousand men, with their baggage, provision, horses, and military stores, crossed a river more than a mile wide, and landed at New York with no material loss. It was done in such silence, that the enemy, who were so near that they were heard at work with their pick-axes, knew nothing about the matter, till the clearing up of the fog.

23. In conducting this difficult movement, Washington was incessantly active. For forty-eight hours he did not close his eyes, and much of that time he was on horse-back. Notwithstanding the entreaties of his officers, he remained among the last upon the shore, refusing to embark till he saw his troops safely on board the transports.

CHAPTER IV.

Communication to Congress--Evacuation of New York--A successful skirmish--Loss of forts Washington and Lee--Proclamation of pardon--Retreat--Capture of General Lee--Passage of the Delaware--Letter to Congress--Situation of the British army.

1. THE defeat at Long Island created a good deal of alarm in the American camp. The soldiers knew

22. What circumstance enabled the Americans to leave the island unobserved? 23. How did Washington conduct the retreat? 1. What was the consequence of the defeat at Long Island?

their own inexperience and want of discipline, and attributed their ill success entirely to the military skill of the enemy. They began to fear that nothing would compensate for a want of military knowledge. They were apprehensive, whenever the enemy approached, of some new surprize, or some skilful manœuvre, from which nothing could save them but flight. The militia, in particular, became more and more disorderly every day.

2. Washington had recourse to entreaty, to persuasion, and to promises, to arrest the progress of this evil. He addressed to Congress a faithful account of their situation. In this communication he urged upon them the necessity of making enlistments for a longer period. The defence of the public liberties was to be entrusted only to a permanent army, regularly disciplined. It required time, to reduce to necessary order, men who had been subject to no control but that of their own will, and who refused to submit to restraint and government.

3. In a few days after this remonstrance, Congress resolved to raise eighty-eight battalions to serve during the war. It was important therefore, to wear away the present campaign with as little loss as possible, in order to take the field the next year with a permanent body of troops. The evacuation of New York was accordingly determined on, as soon as it might be necessary to prevent risking the army. ✎

2. What of General Washington? 3. What of Congress? What was determined upon?

4. While Washington was taking measures to preserve his troops and stores by evacuating the city, the British commander was pursuing his plan of bringing about a general action. On the fourteenth of September, General Clinton landed with four thousand men, three miles above New York. This was effected under cover of five men of war. Works had been thrown up at this place by the Americans, and they were capable of defence; but the troops posted there, on the firing of the ships, immediately abandoned them.

5. Two brigades were detached from the main body to support them. Washington rode promptly to the scene of action, and to his great mortification found the whole retreating. While attempting to rally them, and with some success, on the appearance of a very small body of the enemy, they again broke and retreated in great confusion.

6. At this shameful conduct, Washington entirely lost his self-command. He thought of the ruin, which this miserable cowardice might bring upon the cause in which his whole soul was engaged. In despair he turned his horse's head towards the enemy, with the intention of seeking an honorable death. It was only by the friendly violence of his aids, that he was compelled to retire, and his life saved for his country.

7 The issue of this day hastened the evacuation of New York. It was accomplished with the loss of very

4 British Commander? General Clinton? American troops?
5. Washington? 6. How was he affected by the cowardice of the Americans? 7. What of New York?

few men, though all the heavy artillery, the tents, and most of the military stores were left behind. The British general immediately stationed a detachment in the city, and posted his main army in front of the American lines, in encampments across York Island. The flanks, or sides of the army from front to rear, were protected by the shipping.

8. Washington had made his strongest post at Kingsbridge, as that secured communication with the country. In front of this he had placed a strong detachment in a fortified camp, within a mile and a half of the enemy. He was pleased with this position of the two armies, because it would naturally lead to frequent skirmishes, and accustom his troops to military service.

9. On the very day after the retreat from New York, a body of the enemy appeared in the open plain between the two camps. The general detached some troops under the command of Colonel Knowlton and Major Leitch to attack them. After leading their men into action, in the most soldier-like manner, both these officers were brought mortally wounded from the field. Their troops bravely continued the attack, and drove the enemy, though superior in numbers, from their position. The success of this skirmish had a great influence upon the army.

10. In his general orders, Washington applauded

British general? 8. Position of the American forces? 9. Describe an attack upon the British. 10. What did Washington do to encourage his army?

the courage of the officers and men on this occasion, and contrasted it with the cowardly conduct of the troops the day before. He called upon the whole army to remember and imitate this brave example. He gave out on the next day "Leitch," for the *parole*. The parole is a word selected by the commanding officer, for the purpose of knowing friends from enemies. In filling the vacancy occasioned by the death of the colonel, he observed that "the officer succeeded the gallant and brave Colonel Knowlton, who would have been an honor to any country, and who had fallen gloriously fighting at his post." This was the method which he adopted to animate the spirits of his army.

11. The camp of the Americans was now too strong to be attacked by a prudent commander. General Howe endeavored to force them to abandon their position, or hazard a general engagement. With this view, he determined to form an encampment from the North river along the rear of the American lines. The troops were landed, and several skirmishes took place; but the project of getting in the rear of the army, was prevented by frequent changes of its position. The encampment was not to be forced, and General Howe determined to change the scene of his operations.

12. His immediate object was to invest forts Washington and Lee. The possession of these posts would

11. General Howe? 12. What of Fort Washington and Lee? What followed?

give him the commands of North river, and assist the invasion of New Jersey. Having prepared for an assault upon Mount Washington, the British general called upon the garrison to surrender. Colonel Magaw, the officer of that station, replied that he should defend his works to the last extremity. On the next day the attack was commenced from four different quarters, and after a brave defence the garrison was obliged to surrender.

13. Two thousand men marched out as prisoners of war. The loss at this time was very heavy. Tents and military stores were taken by the enemy, which it was impossible to replace. The conquest of Mount Washington made the immediate evacuation of fort Lee necessary. This was effected with little loss of men, but with a great loss of baggage and artillery.

14. When General Howe crossed into New Jersey, Washington posted his army along the Hackensack. As the British forces advanced, he retreated towards the Delaware. It often happened, that the front guard of one army entered a village, as the rear guard of the other was quitting it at the opposite end. Whenever it could be done with prudence, Washington took a stand and made a show of resistance; sometimes advancing a small detachment as if to engage the enemy.

15. At Brunswick, Lord and General Howe, issued a proclamation as commissioners, commanding all per-

13. Loss of the Americans? Fort Lee? 14. Conduct of Washington? 15. What was issued at Brunswick?

sons in arms against the king to return peaceably to their homes, and offering a full pardon to all who would subscribe a submission to the royal authority. This was the darkest period of the whole war. The American army were reduced in numbers, worn out with fatigue, disheartened by defeat, barefoot, without tents or clothing, and flying before a numerous and disciplined body of well armed and well provided troops.

16. In this situation, in the coldness of winter, they performed a retreat through a desponding country, more disposed to submission than resistance. Scarcely one of the inhabitants joined them during this period, while large numbers daily flocked to the British standard, to perform the required conditions, and accept the promised pardon. The small force which commenced the retreat was continually lessened, by the expiration of the term of service for which the soldiers were engaged. No persuasion would induce them to remain. They would leave their general, when the advancing enemy was almost in sight.

16. General Lee, who commanded the eastern troops, had been repeatedly ordered to join the main army. He obeyed with reluctance and delay. Soon after he entered New Jersey, taking up his quarters for the night in a house three miles from his troops, he was surprized and made prisoner by a party of British dragoons.

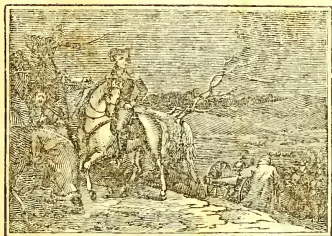
State of the army? Retreat? Conduct of the soldiers? 16.
General Lee?

17 Washington remained calm and confident in the midst of all these evils. He omitted no opportunity to animate his soldiers and embarrass the enemy. The public danger only roused him to more active exertions. He was always cheerful and composed. As the British army advanced, it was found necessary to retreat beyond the Delaware. This river was accordingly crossed on the eighth of December. The boats were all secured, the bridges broken down, and parties stationed in such a manner as to guard the different fording places over which it was possible for the enemy to pass. General Howe, after an unsuccessful attempt to obtain boats to pass the river, posted his army in New Jersey; intending to wait till the ice should furnish him with a passage to Philadelphia.

18. During this retreat, when affairs were taking their most gloomy aspect, Washington observed to Colonel Reed, passing his hand over his throat: "my neck does not feel as if it were made for a halter, we must retire to Augusta county, in Virginia, and if overpowered, we must pass the Alleghany mountains."

19. Washington kept a narrow watch upon the movements of the enemy. He took advantage of his present situation, to renew his remonstrances to Congress on the subject of short enlistments. With the utmost deference and delicacy, he suggested the necessity of enlarging his own powers, to enable him to

17. Washington? Crossing the Delaware? General Howe?
 18. Anecdote of Washington? 19. Remonstrances of Washington?



American Army crossing the Delaware

execute important measures in the most effectual manner. "I have no lust," he observed, "after power, but wish with as much fervency as any man upon the wide extended continent, for an opportunity of turning the sword into a ploughshare. But my feelings as an officer, and a man, have been such, as to force me to say, that no person ever had a greater choice of difficulties to contend with than I have."

20. Every exertion was made to procure reinforcements, to supply the place of those who were daily leaving them. It was all however unavailing, except in the city and neighborhood of Philadelphia. Fifteen hundred citizens were here enlisted to march to the aid of Washington. At the same time, an addition was made to his forces by the arrival of the troops under General Sullivan; upon whom the command had fallen on the capture of General Lee. The whole army now amounted to about seven thousand men.

21. The British army, in the security of conquest, were dispersed through the different towns of New Jersey, separated from their enemies only by the river Delaware. On learning their scattered situation, Washington observed—"Now is the time to clip their wings, when they are so spread." He determined to re-cross the Delaware and attack the British posts.

20. How were the forces increased? What was now their number? 21. British array? Determination of Washington?

CHAPTER V.

Army re-crosses the Delaware—Battle of Trenton—Retreat—Victory at Princeton—Winter quarters—Treatment of American prisoners—Encampment west of Philadelphia—Battle of the Brandywine—General Howe enters Philadelphia.

1. THE evening of Christmas was assigned for this daring enterprize. Arrangements were made for passing over in three divisions. The weather proved to be intensely cold, and so much ice was formed in the river, that two parties found it entirely impossible to force their way. The main body of the army, under the immediate command of Washington, alone succeeded; but their course was so much delayed, that it was nearly four o'clock in the morning before they were ready to take up their march on the Jersey side.

2. This army was now formed into two divisions, one to enter Trenton at the west, and the other at the north end. The general commanded the body on the north road, and reached the out-posts of the enemy exactly at eight o'clock. In three minutes after, he heard the guns of the other division. The commanding officer at this post, Colonel Rawle, immediately paraded his soldiers for defence. He was mortally wounded by the first fire, and his troops attempted to file off towards Princeton. General Washington perceived their design, and moved a part of his troops

1. Relate the manner of passing over the Delaware. 2. At tack on the enemy at Trenton ?





BATTLE OF TRENTON.

into the road in their front. He pressed upon them; their artillery was seized, and their troops surrendered.

3. One thousand men were made prisoners. Of the American troops, two privates were killed, an officer and five or six privates wounded, and two frozen to death. On the same day, General Washington re-crossed the Delaware with his prisoners, six pieces of artillery, a thousand stand of arms, and some military stores. These being secured, and his men having enjoyed two or three days of rest, he returned, and took possession of Trenton.

4. On the next day Lord Cornwallis moved forward with a numerous force, and reached Trenton about four o'clock in the afternoon. General Washington drew up his army behind a creek which runs through the town, and in this position waited for the movements of the enemy. After having attempted to cross this creek, and finding the passes guarded, the British general halted his troops, and determined to defer the attack till the following morning.

5. The situation of the American troops was critical. Washington called a council of his officers, and laid before them the different plans that they might adopt. A retreat across the Delaware was impracticable on account of the ice. A defeat, if they risked an engagement, would be entire destruction. It was

3. Result? Washington? 4. Lord Cornwallis? Why was the attack deferred? 5. Plans of the Americans? Which was determined upon?

determined to quit their present position, and get in the rear of the British army at Princeton.

6. On the next morning, Lord Cornwallis discovered that his enemy had disappeared. Soon after dark, Washington had given orders for the removal of the baggage to Burlington. Guards were stationed to perform the usual rounds, and to keep the watch-fires burning throughout the night. At one o'clock, the army silently left the camp, and gained the rear of the enemy. They reached Princeton early in the morning, and would have completely surprized the British, if they had not been met by an advance of three regiments, which were on their way to join the main army.

7. The centre of the American troops was severely charged by this party, and gave way in disorder. In his effort to rally them, General Mercer was mortally wounded. At this moment, Washington advanced at the head of his troops, and plunged into the hottest fire of the enemy. He was bravely supported by his men, and the British were obliged to retreat. One party of them fled to the colleges, but after a few discharges from the American field-pieces, they came out and surrendered themselves. More than an hundred of the British were left dead upon the battle ground, and three hundred were made prisoners.

8. These victories at Trenton and Princeton produced very important consequences. Philadelphia was saved for the winter. The enemy at Christmas were

6. Retreat to Princeton? 7. Battle of Princeton? 8. Consequences of these victories?

in possession of the whole of New Jersey ; before the end of January they held but two posts in the state. The courage of the American troops was revived by this success. The character of the commander in chief acquired new esteem, and rose still higher in public confidence. Every thing brightened with hope.

9. Washington retired with his troops to quarters in Morristown. In the course of the winter several slight skirmishes took place, which were usually in favor of the Americans. The arrangement of the army in spring, occasioned a good deal of difficulty. The troops were raised by the states, and not by the general government. Each state, therefore, that supposed itself in danger of an invasion, was desirous of retaining a part of its force for its own security. This embarrassment was finally removed by the authority and personal influence of the commander in chief.

10. The treatment of American prisoners by the British officers, was a source of great vexation and difficulty. They were viewed as rebels, and confined in prisons with common felons. General Washington had written to General Gage on this subject early in the war. In this letter he declared the intention, to regulate his conduct towards prisoners in his own hands, by the treatment which those should receive in the power of the British general. To this communication an insolent reply was received, which drew

9 Skirmishes? Difficulties? 10 American prisoners
Washington's letter? Reply

from Washington an answer "to close their correspondence, perhaps forever."

11. In the approach of active operations, Congress determined to form an encampment on the western side of Philadelphia. Washington had made his arrangements for the campaign, with the expectation that the British would attempt to obtain possession of Philadelphia, or the Highlands on the Hudson. To prevent this, the northern troops were divided between Ticonderoga and Peekskill; while those from the south were posted at Middlebrook, near the Raritan. This position was fortified by entrenchments. The American forces were in a weak condition, and much inferior in numbers to the enemy.

12. Early in June, Sir William Howe collected his forces at Brunswick. He attempted every means to induce Washington to leave his camp, and hazard a general engagement. Finding this impossible, he withdrew his troops to Staten Island, with the design of embarking them for the Delaware or the Chesapeake. Washington was doubtful in respect to the destination of the enemy. After leaving Sandy Hook, their fleet put out to sea, and were not heard of for nearly three weeks.

13. This uncertainty continued till about the middle of August. Accounts were at that time received that the British had taken possession of the Chesapeake, and landed as near as possible to Philadelphia.

11. Position of the Americans? 12. Sir William Howe?
13. Position of the British? Washington?

Washington immediately put his forces in motion to meet them. His whole army did not exceed eleven thousand men. He passed with every appearance of confidence through Philadelphia, to give an impression of his strength, to those citizens who remained hostile to the American cause. The two armies approached each other on the third of September.

14. As the British troops advanced, Sir William Howe endeavored to gain the right wing of the American army. General Washington continued to fall back until he crossed the Brandywine river. He here posted his troops on the high ground near Chadd's ford. The light corps under General Maxwell was advanced in front, and placed on the hills south of the river, in order to assail the enemy if they should approach in that direction. Troops were also posted at a ford two miles below, and at several passes some miles above. The opinion of Congress, and the general wish of the country, made it necessary for Washington to risk a general action at this place.

15. On the morning of the eleventh, the British army advanced in two columns to the attack. One column took the direct road to Chadd's ford, and soon forced Maxwell's corps to cross the river, with very little loss on either side. General Knyphausen, the commander of this body, continued to parade on the heights, to reconnoitre the American army, and was apparently preparing to attempt the passage of the river.

14. Where were the two armies stationed? 15. British army?

16. The other column, led by Lord Cornwallis, moved up on the west side of the Brandywine, making a circuit of about seventeen miles. On coming within view of the American troops, it instantly formed the line of battle, and at about half after four the action began. It was continued with great spirit for some time. The American right first fell into disorder and gave way. They attempted to rally, but on being vigorously charged by the enemy, again broke. The flight now became common. General Washington, who had hastened towards the scene of action as soon as the firing commenced, only arrived in season to cover the retreat.

17. When the right wing was engaged with Lord Cornwallis, the works at Chadd's ford had been assaulted and carried by General Knyphausen. The whole army retreated that night to Chester, and on the next day to Philadelphia. The Americans lost in this battle, about nine hundred men, three hundred of whom were slain and the rest wounded and taken prisoners.

18. This defeat occasioned no dejection either among the citizens, or in the army. Measures were immediately taken to procure reinforcements. Fifteen hundred men were marched from Peekskill, and large detachments of militia ordered into the field. It was determined to risk a second engagement, for the security of Philadelphia. The enemy sought it, and Washington was willing to meet it.

16. Battle of the Brandywine ? 17. Loss of the Americans ?
18. Consequences ?

19. Perceiving that the enemy were moving into the Lancaster road towards the city, General Washington took possession of ground upon their left, about twenty-three miles from Philadelphia. The advance of the two armies met, and commenced a skirmish, when a violent storm of rain arose and continued for a day and a night. When the rain ceased, the Americans discovered that their ammunition was entirely spoiled. Many of the soldiers were without bayonets, and the army was consequently in a very dangerous position.

20. On ascertaining the extent of damage to the arms and ammunition, General Washington ascended the Schuylkill, and crossed it, to repair their deficiencies. He still resolved to risk a general action for the preservation of the city. He re-crossed the Schuylkill at Parker's ferry, and encamped on the east side. As the British army approach the river, General Washington posted his army in their front. Instead of urging an action, Sir William Howe continued his march towards Reading. To save the stores which had been deposited in that place, the American general took a new position, which left the road to the Capital exposed to the enemy. On the twenty-sixth of September, General Howe entered Philadelphia.

19. What happened during the skirmish? 20. What took place between the two armies?

CHAPTER VI.

Works on the Delaware—Battle of Germantown—Forts taken—Encampment at White Marsh—Winter quarters at Valley Forge—Sufferings of the Americans—Plan to supplant General Washington—His letters on the subject—Situation of the Army at Valley Forge.

1. GENERAL WASHINGTON had seasonably removed all public stores from the city, and secured those articles of merchandize which might be required for the use of the army. Though failing in his plan to save Philadelphia, he retained the undiminished confidence of the States and of Congress. Instead of now going into winter quarters, he approached and encamped near the enemy.

2. Four regiments of the British army were posted in Philadelphia, and the remainder at Germantown. The first object of Sir William Howe was to effect an open communication through the Delaware with the British fleet. General Washington was desirous to cut off this source of supplies, and erected forts on both banks of this river, near its junction with the Schuylkill, and about seven miles below Philadelphia. In the channel between the forts, large pieces of timber strongly framed together and pointed with iron, were sunk in two ranges, to obstruct the passage of the ships. These works were covered by floating batteries and armed ships.

1. General Washington ? 2. Sir William Howe ? What of forts ? What was done in the channel ?

3. A considerable body of British troops having been despatched to destroy these works, it was thought a favorable time to attack their main body. The American forces now amounted to about eight thousand regular troops and three thousand militia. The plan formed, was to attack the enemy in front and rear at the same time; and, on the fourth of October the army was moved near the scene of action. The line of the British encampment crossed Germantown at right angles.

4. At sun-rise on the next morning the attack was commenced. The American troops were at first successful. They routed the enemy at two different quarters, and took a number of prisoners. But the morning was extremely foggy, and the Americans were unable to take advantage of their success. They could not perceive the situation of the enemy, nor understand their own situation. The field was hastily abandoned, and Washington was obliged to resign a victory of which he had thought himself secure. The loss of the Americans, including the wounded and four hundred prisoners, was about eleven hundred. A retreat was made twenty miles to Perkioming, with the loss of a single piece of artillery.

5. Sir William Howe moved his whole army to Philadelphia. The attention of the generals was now turned to the works on the Delaware. Detachments

3. Number of the American forces? Position of the British army? 4. Battle of Germantown? 5. What was now done by the Americans?

were stationed on both sides of the river, to intercept supplies from the British ships, and to cut off parties that were sent from the city to procure provisions. The government of New Jersey were called upon to turn out their militia, and form an encampment in the rear of fort Mercer. Guards were posted on the roads leading to Philadelphia, to prevent the inhabitants of the neighborhood from carrying their articles to market.

6. At this time, the reverend Jacob Duchè, a man of piety and influence, who had been chaplain of Congress, addressed a long letter to General Washington. The object of it was to persuade him to abandon the war. It represented the calamities into which the country was plunged, and the improbability of a successful resistance to Great Britain. Such a letter, from a man of the character of the writer, and agreeing with the sentiments of so large a number of the community, might have seemed to demand some consideration. Washington returned it, with a message, that if the contents had been known, it would have been sent back unopened.

7. The royal army succeeded in removing the obstructions from the Delaware. The forts were taken and the galleys abandoned and burned. After receiving a reinforcement from the northern army, General Washington removed nearer to the British lines. He encamped at White Marsh, a very strong position,

6. Jacob Duchè's letter? Washington's reply? 7. Royal army? Where did Washington encamp?

about fourteen miles from Philadelphia. On the next morning, Sir William Howe marched out with almost his whole force, and took a position upon Chesnut Hill, about three miles in front of the Americans.

8. The British commander spent several days in reconnoitring the American camp. He changed his ground, and made every appearance of an intention to commence an attack. Several severe skirmishes took place, and a general action was hourly expected. But Sir William Howe was too well aware of the advantage of the enemy's position; and returned to Philadelphia without coming to an engagement.

9. Three days after the retreat of the British army, Washington made preparations to retire into winter quarters. He expressed in his general orders, strong approbation of the conduct of his troops. Presepting them with a favorable view of their country's situation, he exhorted them to bear with firmness the sufferings to which they must be exposed in the position they were about to occupy.

10. Valley Forge, about twenty-five miles back of Philadelphia, was fixed upon for winter quarters. The American army might have been tracked by the blood of their bare feet, from White Marsh to their new position. They were badly clothed and badly provided with food. Many were obliged to go almost naked,

What position did Sir William Howe take? 8. What of skirmishes? Retreat of the British? 9. What did Washington say to his soldiers? 10. What of Valley Forge? Sufferings of the Americans?



Encampment at Valley Forge

suffering at the same time from famine. In this situation the men behaved with great fortitude. They felled trees, and built log-huts, which were covered with straw and earth, and afforded but very poor shelter from the severity of the season.

11. Washington was now obliged to pursue a course, which he adopted with the greatest reluctance. The army suffered exceedingly from hunger. It was necessary that they should be allowed to satisfy their wants by force. In obedience to the commands of Congress, the general issued a proclamation, calling on "the farmers within seventy miles of head-quarters to thresh out one half of their grain by the first of February, and the residue by the first of March, under the penalty of having the whole seized as straw."

12. While these transactions had been going on in the middle states, the northern campaign had terminated in the capture of the army of General Burgoyne. This event had very highly raised the reputation of General Gates, the commander in that department. The different issue of affairs under General Washington, afforded the ignorant and discontented with an occasion to murmur and complain. Several members of Congress, and a few general officers of the army, were engaged in a plan to supplant him in his office, and raise General Gates to the chief command.

11. What was Washington obliged to do? 12. What had happened in the mean while in the north? What plan were some of the Americans engaged in?

13. In the prosecution of this scheme, every effort was made to injure the character of General Washington. The conspiracy did not escape his notice; but love of country was superior to every consideration. He repressed his indignation, to prevent an appearance of disunion and dissension, that might ruin the the cause in which he was engaged. His private letters at this period exhibit the state of his feelings, and the honorable motives which directed his conduct.

14. In a communication to the president of Congress, Mr. Laurens, he observes upon this subject:—
“My enemies take an ungenerous advantage of me. They know the delicacy of my situation, and that motives of policy deprive me of the defence I might otherwise make against their insidious attacks. They know I cannot combat their insinuations, however injurious, without disclosing secrets, it is of the utmost moment to conceal. But why should I expect to be exempt from censure, the unfailing lot of an elevated station. Merit and talents which I cannot pretend to rival, have ever been subject to it. My heart tells me it has been my unremitted aim to do the best, which circumstances would permit; yet I may have been very often mistaken in my judgment of the means and may, in many instances, deserve the imputation of error.

13. What of General Washington? 14. Repeat part of his letter to Mr. Laurens.

15. To a friend in New England, who wrote to him in respect to a report that he was about to resign his office, Washington, in the course of his reply, observed: "I have said, and I still do say, that there is not an officer in the service of the United States, that would return to the sweets of domestic life with more heart-felt joy than I should. But I would have this declaration accompanied by these sentiments, that while the public are satisfied with my endeavors, I mean not to shrink from the cause. But the moment her voice, not that of faction, calls upon me to resign, I shall do it with as much pleasure as ever the wearied traveller retired to rest."

16. These efforts to displace the commander in chief, exposed their authors to the resentment of the community. The people reposed entire confidence in his integrity, courage, and military skill. The army were affectionately attached to him: their indignation was so strong against his most active enemies, that none of them dared to appear in camp.

17. The sufferings of the troops at Valley Forge continued to be extremely severe. Early in February, the country in the vicinity of the camp was completely exhausted. General Washington addressed letters to the governments of the New England states, representing the miserable condition of the army, and urging the necessity of immediate assistance. Before

15. To a friend in New England? 16. Feelings of the people towards Washington? 17. Sufferings of the camp.

relief could be obtained from this quarter, the total destruction of the army was threatened by famine.

18. Of more than seventeen thousand men at that time in camp, not more than five thousand were able to do military duty. Nearly four thousand were unfit from nakedness. The hospitals were filled with the sick. Many foreigners went over to the British camp; but very few native Americans could be induced even by intense suffering to desert their cause. If Sir William Howe had attacked the camp, the want of all the necessaries of life would have forced the Americans to disperse. Fortunately, however, he was unwilling to exchange comfortable quarters in Philadelphia, for the dangers and distresses of a winter campaign.

CHAPTER VII.

Preparations for the campaign—Alliance with France—Sir Henry Clinton—Battle of Monmouth—Trial of General Lee—French fleet—Violent storm—Difficulty with Count D'Estaing—Plan for the reduction of Canada—Views of the British government.

1. DURING the encampment at Valley Forge, Washington was preparing for an early campaign in 1778. Congress determined to send a committee of their body to consult with the general in the camp, and

18. State of the men in the camp? Where was Sir William Howe at this time? 1. What did Congress do in 1778?

examine into the state of the army. This committee repaired to head quarters in January. With the advice of his officers, Washington laid before them a statement of the defects and abuses of the existing system, and recommended several measures which were approved by Congress.

2. News having arrived that Congress had formed a treaty of alliance with the court of France, orders were issued by General Washington under date of May 5th, in respect to the celebration of this important event. The army on the next day attended divine service at nine o'clock. The intelligence was read to them from the Pennsylvania Gazette, after which a prayer was offered and a suitable discourse delivered.

3. On a given signal the army repaired to their posts, and were reviewed by the commander in chief. After the discharge of cannon and musquetry, the whole army joined in the huzza—*Long live the King of France!* After a second discharge, there was a general huzza—*Long live the friendly European powers!* A third discharge was followed with—*Huzza for the American states!*

4. The officers were then invited to a collation, at which several patriotic toasts were drank with loud cheers. His Excellency took leave of the officers at five o'clock amid universal huzzaing of *Long live General Washington!* and clapping of hands till

2. Recount the celebration of the treaty of alliance with France?

he had ridden to some distance. Great joy reigned throughout the camp.

5. Sir William Howe had resigned the command of the British army, and was succeeded by Sir Henry Clinton. This officer received immediate orders to evacuate Philadelphia. Washington was uncertain what course he would probably pursue. Deciding on a march to New York, the British general crossed the Delaware about the middle of June. When this was known, a council of war was immediately called in the American camp.

6. There was a great difference of opinions. Since the recent alliance with France, independence was considered secure, unless the army should be defeated. Under such circumstances a general engagement was not to be hazarded, without a fair prospect of success. This was the opinion of a majority of the general officers. Washington, however, was very desirous to risk an action.

7. When Sir Henry Clinton had advanced to Allentown, instead of pursuing the direct course to Staten Island, he drew towards the sea coast. On learning that he was marching in this direction, towards Monmouth court-house, Washington sent Brigadier Wayne with a thousand men to reinforce his advanced troops. The command of this body was offered to General Lee, who in the exchange of prisoners had been re

5. Sir William Howe? What was called in the American camp? 6. What were the different opinions of the council? 7. Sir Henry Clinton? Washington? General Lee?

stored to the American army. This officer was opposed to any engagement with the enemy at that time, and declined the service. It was accordingly given to the Marquis de Lafayette.

8. The whole army followed the advanced corps, at a convenient distance to support them when attacked. This advance was afterwards increased by two brigades, and the command of the whole given to General Lee. On the next morning orders were sent to this officer to commence the attack, unless there should be strong reasons for delaying it. Washington moved forward to support the advanced troops, and found them retreating. He immediately rode up to General Lee to request an explanation. Some warm words ensued on both sides. The troops were then formed in an advantageous position, and General Lee was ordered to take measures to check the enemy.

9. Washington returned to the main army, which was soon formed for action. After several unsuccessful movements of the British troops, they retired and took the ground that had been before occupied by General Lee. Washington determined to attack them; and ordered two detachments to move round, upon their right and left sides. They did not arrive at their ground in season to commence the attack that night. They remained in that position till morning.

Lafayette? 8. Who commanded the advanced corps of the American army? Conduct of General Lee? 9. Washington? British troops? American forces?

General Washington reposing on his cloak under a tree, in the midst of his troops.

10. Before dawn, the British moved away in great silence. Nothing was known of their march till the next day. They left behind four officers, and forty privates; so severely wounded that it was not safe to remove them. Including prisoners, the whole loss of the British army was about three hundred and fifty. They pursued their march to Sandy Hook without farther interruption, and without any loss of baggage. The Americans lost about two hundred and fifty men. Declining pursuit of the royal troops, they retired to the borders of the North river.

11. Shortly after the action, Congress resolved on a vote of thanks to General Washington, for his activity and great good conduct in gaining this important victory. The subsequent behaviour of General Lee rendered it proper, that his conduct, on this occasion should be submitted to a court-martial. Several charges were exhibited against him, and he was suspended from command in the armies of the United States for the term of one year.

12. Soon after the battle of Monmouth, the American army took post at White plains, and remained there till late in the Autumn. They then retired to Middlebrook in New Jersey. During this period, several unimportant skirmishes took place, in which

10. Retreat of the British? Prisoners? Loss of the Americans? 11. What was done by Congress soon after the action? What of General Lee? 12. White Plains? Middlebrook?

General Washington was not personally engaged. He was fully occupied, however, with affairs which required the exercise of all his judgment and firmness.

13. The French fleet arrived too late to attack the British in the Delaware. It was determined therefore that a joint expedition, with the sea and land forces, should be made against the British posts in Rhode Island. General Sullivan was appointed to the conduct of the American troops: Count D'Estaing commanded the French fleet. The preparations for commencing the attack had been nearly completed, when a British fleet appeared in sight. The French commander immediately put out to sea, to come to an engagement. A violent storm arose, and injured both fleets to such an extent, that it was necessary for the one to sail for Boston, and the other to New York, to refit.

14. General Sullivan had commenced the siege, in the expectation of being shortly seconded by the French fleet. The determination of D'Estaing to return to Boston excited general alarm. It left the harbors of Rhode Island open for reinforcements to the British, from their head-quarters in New York. The very safety of the American army was endangered by it. Every effort was made to induce the French commander to change his intentions, but without effect. This affair produced a great deal of discontent and irritation,

General Washington ? 13. What was now determined upon ? Who commanded the Americans ? Who the French ? Storm ? 14. Conduct of D'Estaing ?

among the American officers, and was likely to lead to very serious difficulties.

15. With his usual prudence and good judgement, General Washington exerted his influence to quiet the wounded feelings of both parties. He was powerfully assisted in this attempt, by the Marquis de Lafayette; who was very much beloved by the Americans as well as the French, and gladly rendered his services to bring about a reconciliation. Washington wrote on the subject to the several general officers of his army, and took the first opportunity of recommencing his correspondence with Count D'Estaing. His letter took no notice of the angry dispute that had occurred, and good humor and cordial good will were speedily restored.

16. In the latter months of the year 1778, Congress were occupied with a splendid plan for the reduction of Canada. This was to be attempted in the ensuing year by an union of the French and American forces. The measure was almost entirely arranged, before it was communicated to Washington. He was then requested to write to Dr. Franklin, the American minister at Paris, to secure the active assistance of the government of France.

17. In reply to the communications of Congress, General Washington expressed himself in direct opposition to the measure. He was unwilling that any engagements should be made with foreign powers, of

15. What course did Washington and Lafayette adopt? Effect of Washington's letter? 16. Plans of Congress in the year 1778? 17. Washington's opinion of the measure?

which circumstances might prevent the performance. The plan appeared to him loaded with embarrassments. A Committee was afterwards appointed by Congress to confer with him upon the subject, and by his advice the proposed expedition was prudently abandoned.

18. The alliance with France had seemed to many to secure our independence. It was supposed that Great Britain would despair of final success, and relinquish farther prosecution of the war. Washington was very busy in opposing the progress of this dangerous delusion. In his correspondence with members of Congress, and influential men throughout the state, he represented the fallacy of this opinion, and the impolicy of indulging it. He was anxious that early and vigorous measures should be taken for the next campaign. Yet it was not till the twenty-third of January, 1779, that Congress passed resolutions for re-enlisting the army; and not till the ninth of March, that the States were called upon to furnish their proportion of the general forces.

19. The British government had, from the first, entertained the most certain expectation of conquest. The loss of the army under General Burgoyne, the alliance with France, and the firmness with which the Americans maintained the contest, had now diminished their early confidence. They determined to change the scene of their operations. Keeping possession

Consequences? 18. What of the alliance with France? Representations of Washington? What took place in 1779?
19. British government? Their proceedings?

of the islands about the Hudson, their arms were to be directed particularly against the Southern states. The most active measures of the ensuing campaigns took place accordingly in that part of the country.

CHAPTER VIII.

Trouble in the Jersey Brigade—Letters from Washington—Reply—Wretched condition of the army—Expedition against the Indians—Capture of Stony Point—Paules Hook—Assault upon Savannah—Winter Quarters—Sufferings of the soldiers.

1. THE paper money, which had been issued by government to support the expenses of the war, had been rapidly decreasing in value. It depreciated so much, that the nominal pay of an officer was insufficient to discharge his expenses. This occasioned in the army a great deal of difficulty and discontent. In the month of May, the Jersey brigade, that had been stationed at Elizabethtown, was ordered to march by regiments to join the western army. In answer to this order, a letter was received from General Maxwell, stating that the officers of the first regiment had determined to resign their commission, unless the legislature of the state should give immediate attention to their complaints on the subject of pay and support.

1. What of paper money ? Jersey Brigade ?

2. General Washington knew the sufferings to which the army were exposed, and the virtue and firmness with which they had borne up under them. He knew the truth and justice of the complaints now made by the Jersey regiment; but immediately saw the evils that would result from the measures they had adopted. Relying on their patriotism and personal attachment to himself, he immediately wrote to General Maxwell a letter to be communicated to the officers.

3. In this address, he adopted the language of a friend as well as of an officer. He acknowledged the inconvenience and distress to which the army were exposed; and expressed the hope that they had done him the justice to believe, that he had been incessant in endeavors to procure them relief. The limited resources of the government were mentioned, and their embarrassment in procuring money. He then alluded to the progress of the cause, the probability of soon attaining the object of their struggles, and the meanness of a shameful desertion, and forgetfulness of what was due to their country.

4. "Did I suppose it possible," he observed, "this could be the case, even in a single regiment of the army, I should be mortified and chagrined beyond expression. I should feel it as a wound given to my own honor, which I consider as embarked with that of the army at large. But this I believe to be impossible. Any corps that was about to set an example

2. Washington? 3. What language did he use to the officers in his letter? 4. Repeat part of the letter.

of the kind, would weigh well the consequences; and no officer of common discernment and sensibility would hazard them. If they should stand alone in it, independent of other consequences, what would be their feelings, on reflecting that they had held themselves out to the world in a point of light inferior to the rest of the army. Or if their example should be followed, and become general, how could they console themselves for having been the foremost in bringing ruin and disgrace upon their country. They would remember, that the army would share a double portion of the general infamy and distress, and that the character of an American officer would become as despicable, as it is now glorious."

5. The officers did not expressly recede from their claims, but they were prevailed upon by the representations of the letter to continue in service. In an address to General Washington, they expressed regret that any act of theirs should have given him pain, and proceeded to justify the measures they had taken. They stated that their repeated memorials to the legislature had been neglected, and that they had lost all confidence in that body.

6. "Few of us," they said "have private fortunes; many have families who already are suffering every thing that can be received from an ungrateful country. Are we then to suffer all the inconveniences, fatigues and dangers of a military life, while our wives and our children are perishing for want of common necessities

at home; and that without the most distant prospect of reward, for our pay is now only nominal? We are sensible that your excellency cannot wish nor desire this from us."

7. Washington took no farther notice of this reply, than to declare to the officers through General Maxwell, that while they continued to do their duty, he should only regret the part they had taken, and should hope they would perceive its impropriety. The legislature of New Jersey were alarmed, and at length induced to take some notice of their situation. The remonstrance was withdrawn, and the officers continued to perform their duty as usual.

8. This occasion was a favorable one, for the commander in chief, to urge upon congress the necessity of making suitable provision for the officers of the army. The members of this body differed in opinions in respect to the proper military arrangements. Many opposed enlistments for a long period, in order to avoid all danger of establishing a permanent military body. Others agreed with Washington, in his views of the absolute necessity of raising a well equipped and amply supported national army.

9. The army during this time was miserably provided with food and clothing. It did not exceed thirteen thousand in number, while the British, strongly fortified in New York and Rhode Island, amounted to sixteen

7. What notice did Washington take of the reply? 8. What did he urge upon Congress? Different opinions? 9. Suffering of the army? Numbers? What of the British?

or seventeen thousand. It was of course entirely impracticable for the Americans to dislodge them from these strong positions. They were secured by their fortifications and their shipping from a successful attack. The American army was obliged consequently to act upon the defensive; and limit its operations to securing the passes of the North river, and protecting the country, as far as was consistent with that important object.

10. One of the principal expeditions, undertaken during this campaign was directed against the nearest hostile tribes of the Six Nations of Indians. These tribes had committed great outrages upon the white people in their neighborhood; burning villages, and murdering their inhabitants. It was necessary to take very severe measures against them. The commander in chief marked out the best method of conducting the invasion. According to his instructions General Sullivan penetrated into the Indian country, in three directions, destroying their crops and laying waste their towns. This severity secured the future peace of the frontier settlements.

11. Early in the year, Sir Henry Clinton had made some movements up the North river, which indicated an intention to attack the posts in the Highlands. Washington united all his forces for their defence. To allure him from these fortresses, the British commander sent detachments to ravage the towns on the

American army? 10. What of the Six Nations? Expedition against them? Consequences? 11. Movements of Clinton?

coast of Connecticut. While these devastations were going on, Washington planned an expedition against Stony Point. This was a strong position upon the Hudson, which had been garrisoned by the enemy with about six hundred men. The enterprize was committed to General Wayne, and proved completely successful.

12. This fortunate event was soon followed by the surprise of the British garrison at Paulus Hook. An expedition against this post was first projected by Major Henry Lee. It was concluded on the eighteenth of August. The fort was taken at about three o'clock in the morning, by three hundred Americans. With the loss of two killed and three wounded, they entered the works, and carried away one hundred and fifty-nine prisoners.

13. It was thought best to avoid all dangerous movements, from the expected arrival of a French fleet in the course of the year. This fleet under Count D'Estaing reached the vicinity of Georgia, with a body of troops, and besieged the city of Savannah. The commander of the American army in the southern colonies, General Lincoln, combined his forces with those of the French leader, and formed the resolution of taking this post by assault. The united forces were led to the lines of the enemy with great valor and firmness, but after standing a very severe fire for about an hour, they were repulsed with loss.

Stony Point? General Wayne? 12. Paulus Hook? Describe the capture of the garrison. 13. Attempt on Savannah?

14. The campaign terminated in the northern states without any decisive efforts on either side. The British attempts upon the posts in the Highlands had been defeated. The Indians had been reduced to peace. Winter quarters for the American army were chosen at Morristown. On their march to this place, and after their arrival, they suffered exceedingly. The snow was two feet deep, and the soldiers were destitute both of tents and blankets, some of them barefooted and almost naked. At night their only defence against the weather was in piles of brushwood.

15. After reaching the place that had been chosen for winter quarters, they found it very difficult to pitch their tents in the frozen ground. They built up large fires, but could hardly keep from freezing. Besides the sufferings from cold, they were without necessary food. For seven or eight days together they had no other provision than miserable fresh beef, without bread, salt or vegetables.

16. The weather in January 1780, was remarkably cold and severe. On the third of the month, there was a most violent snow storm. Several of the marquees were blown down over the officers' heads, and some of the soldiers were actually buried under the snow in their tents. The officers of the army had a sufficient supply of straw, over which they could spread their blankets, and with their clothes and large fires, keep themselves from extreme suffering. But the poor

14. What of the northern campaign? Sufferings at Morristown? 16. What of January 1780?

common soldiers, on duty, during all the violence of the storm, and at night with but a single blanket, were exposed to great distress. They were so enfeebled from cold and hunger as to be almost unable to labor in the erection of their log huts.

17. Complaints were sometimes made by the farmers in the neighborhood that their pigs and poultry were stolen by the soldiers. Severe measures were resorted to, in order to put a stop to these practises. Death was sometimes inflicted in cases of atrocious robbery, but the usual punishment was public whipping. This course was adopted by Washington to preserve a necessary discipline, though he deeply sympathized with the sufferings of the soldiers, and was sensible of the heroic firmness and patience with which they submitted to them.

CHAPTER IX.

Expedition to Staten Island—Review of four battalions—Parade of the whole army—Death of Miralles—Situation of the officers.—Loss of Charleston—Lafayette—French armament—Designs on New York—Indian Chiefs review the army.

1. NOTWITHSTANDING the situation of his army, General Washington was active in seeking opportunities for a favorable attack. An expedition was accordingly

Condition of the army? 17. Complaints of the farmers? Punishment of theft? Washington? 1. Expedition against Staten Island?

planned against the British works on Staten Island. A detachment of twenty-five hundred men was despatched on this service under Lord Stirling. They went in about five hundred sleighs, and expected to take the enemy by surprise.

2. The party passed over from Elizabethtown, at night, on the ice. The British troops, however, had received intelligence of their design, and withdrawn into their fortifications. All the benefit of the expedition was in obtaining a quantity of blankets and military stores, with a few casks of wine and spirits. The snow was three or four feet deep, and the troops remained on the island twenty-four hours without covering. About five hundred of them were slightly frozen, and six were killed; the retreat was effected with no other loss.

3. The soldiers in winter quarters were obliged to continue in their tents till about the middle of February. They had then completed their huts. A large body of snow remained upon the ground all winter; while the same deficiency of food and clothing distressed the army.

4. Towards the latter part of April, General Washington arrived at Morristown from Philadelphia, with the French minister, and Juan de Miralles, a gentleman of distinction from Spain. They were met at a distance from the camp, and escorted with the usual

2. Benefits derived? Sufferings from cold and hunger? 4. Describe the arrival of Washington at Morristown, with the French minister, and Juan de Miralles?

military honors to head quarters. These gentlemen with their aids and attendants, with the commander in chief and general officers of the American army, were all mounted on elegant horses and presented a very beautiful appearance. Preparations were made for a grand parade of the army, while General Washington with his visitors went to take a distant view of the British posts on York and Staten Island.

5. On the twenty-fourth of the month, four battalions of the army were reviewed by the French minister and the general officers. A large stage was erected in the field, which was crowded with officers, and gentlemen and ladies from the adjacent towns. The troops exhibited a very military appearance, and performed the various manœuvres and evolutions with great skill. The French minister was highly satisfied and pleased. In the evening, General Washington with his visitors attended a ball given by the principal officers. An exhibition of fire-works concluded the entertainment.

6. On the next day the whole army was paraded under arms, and again reviewed by the French minister. This gentleman was then escorted part of the way to Philadelphia. On the twenty-ninth of the month, Don Juan de Miralles died at head-quarters. He was of high rank, and had been resident in America with the congress about a year. General Washington with several officers, and members of Congress attend-

5. Review of the army ? 6. A second review ? Death of Don Juan de Miralles ? Funeral ceremonies ?

ed the funeral as chief mourners. The corpse was richly dressed, and the coffin covered with black velvet, and superbly ornamented. The funeral procession extended about a mile, and the coffin was borne upon the shoulders of four artillery officers in full uniform. Minute guns were fired, and the Roman Catholic service was performed at the grave. The coffin was deposited in the burying ground at Morristown.

7. The officers of the American army had been for some time dissatisfied with their situation. They had been exposed to great distress, and had made great sacrifices, for small wages, paid with no punctuality. The paper money had diminished so much in value, that it was difficult to procure supplies with it, even at its reduced value. Forty dollars in these bills were worth less than one dollar in silver. A number of officers were compelled by necessity to give up their commissions. General Washington was unwearied in his efforts to procure from Congress a more generous provision for them, and at length succeeded.

8. In the latter part of May, four battalions were reviewed by the committee of Congress, in the presence of the commander in chief. The soldiers were again suffering from want of provisions, their patience was exhausted, and their spirits were broken. They became dissatisfied, and began to lose their first ardent attachment to the cause. Their confidence in Washington, however, and their devoted love for him, were never diminished. Two regiments of the

-
7. American affairs ? Efforts and success of Washington ?
8. sufferings of the soldiers ? Affection of Washington ?

Connecticut line revolted, but their leaders were secured, and they returned to their duty.

9. General Washington now received intelligence of the loss of Charleston, and the surrender of that detachment of the southern army, under Gen. Lincoln. This force amounted to between two and three thousand men, which had been posted for the defence of this important town. General Clinton besieged the place with a powerful fleet, and an army of thirteen thousand men. The defence was very judiciously managed, but in the end, it was necessary to surrender the town and garrison by capitulation.

10. Soon after this surrender of the southern army, the commanding officer of the enemy in New York, thought to take advantage of the discontent and distress prevailing among the northern troops. General Knyphausen crossed over from Staten Island with about five thousand men. Orders were immediately given in the American camps, to be in readiness to march at a moments notice. The enemy advanced to Springfield, and set fire to the village; burning the church, and twenty or thirty dwelling houses. They then made a rapid retreat to Staten Island. The object of this expedition was supposed to have been the destruction of the stores at Morristown.

11. Late in April, the Marquis de Lafayette had arrived at Boston in a royal frigate, and immediately hastened to head-quarters. He brought intelligence

9. Loss of Charleston ? 10. Burning of Springfield ? 11. Lafayette ?

that the French king had determined to send a large fleet and army to the assistance of the Americans. This news was received with great joy, and gave a fresh impulse to the state legislatures and to Congress. On the fourteenth of July, information was received at head-quarters of the arrival of the French armament at Newport in Rhode Island. The commander in chief soon communicated this pleasing intelligence to the army, and recommended to the officers to blend with their black cockades, a relief of white, as a symbol of friendship for their allies, who wore cockades of that color.

12. The season was so far advanced, that Washington, without knowing the number of American troops that would finally be levied, despatched definite proposals to the French commanders for the siege of New York. Orders were given for the army to be in readiness to march at a moment's notice. Two brigades were selected from the different regiments, to be put under the command of Lafayette.

13. The army was ordered to send all its baggage, with the women and children to West Point. Provisions, for two days in advance, were to be cooked for the soldiers, who were to be always prepared to start. The horses in the baggage wagons were kept in harness. The order and regularity of the troops were such, that the whole army, extended over several

French fleet? Joy in the army? 12. Orders of Washington?
13. Preparation for the siege of New York?

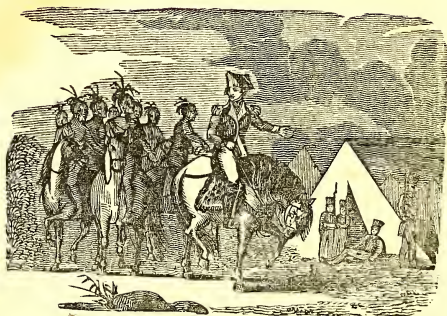
miles, could be put in motion, and take up the line of march in less than an hour. The fifth of August was fixed upon as the day, when the united armies were to commence operations.

14. Sir Henry Clinton who had returned the preceding month with his victorious troops from Charleston, had embarked about eight thousand men with the apparent intention of attacking the French force at Rhode Island. Washington had put his army in motion, and crossed the Hudson, to besiege New York during his absence. The enemy were alarmed at the danger of this city, and returned to defend it. The American army re-crossed the Hudson to the Jersey shore. This passage was made in boats and floats, and occupied three days and nights.

15. The designs on New York were only suspended, not entirely abandoned. General Washington had a personal interview on this subject, with the French commander at Hartford. But the arrival of Admiral Rodney, with eleven ships of the line, upon the American coast, disarranged the plans of the allies. No expedition of the kind could be undertaken during the present campaign.

16. On the thirteenth of September, the army was paraded for review. General Washington, mounted on his noble bay horse, rode in front of the army and received the usual salute. He was accompanied by

14. Sir Henry Clinton? Movements of the British and Americans? 15. Admiral Rodney? 16. Review of the army?



Washington and the Indian Chiefs.

six Indian chiefs, on whom he thought it prudent to impress an idea of the strength of the troops. These chiefs are described by Dr. Thacher, who was a surgeon in the revolutionary army, as the most disgusting and contemptible of the human race.

17. Their faces were painted with various colors, and their hair twisted and knotted on the top of their heads. They were dressed in wretched Indian garments, some with a dirty blanket, and others most naked. Their horses were miserable animals, with undressed sheep-skins for saddles, and old ropes for bridles. Rum was eagerly sought after by these chiefs, and some of them became so intoxicated that they could not sit upon their horses.

CHAPTER X.

The Story of the Treachery of Arnold.

1. WEST POINT is a very strong post situated among the Highlands, on the west side of the Hudson, sixty miles above New York. It was considered, at this period, as the most important station in the United States. The position of it is admirably adapted for defence, being on a bend of the river, with high rocks rising one above another, whose summits are crowned with cannon.

Indian chiefs? 17. Describe them. 1. Where is West Point? What of it?

2. The most formidable fortress was built on a natural platform of rock, surrounded on all sides by steep ridges. It is called "Fort Putnam," from the brave general who was the principal agent in planning and constructing it.

3. The natural strength of West Point was so great, that when properly guarded, the fortress was secure against an enemy of almost any force. No position in America could afford the British greater advantages, if they could only once obtain possession of it. It commanded the whole extent of country on the Hudson, and secured a communication between the eastern and southern states.

4. This important fortress has been connected with the blackest act of treachery that disgraces the history of any period. This was the conspiracy of Arnold.

5. Benedict Arnold had been regarded from the commencement of the American war, as a brave and patriotic officer. He had fought in several battles, with great valor and gallantry, and acquired the entire confidence of his countrymen. His services had been rewarded by promotion to the rank of major-general.

6. At his own request and solicitation, he was entrusted with the command of West Point. Partly from motives of avarice, and partly from feelings of

2. What of Fort Putnam? 3. What were the advantages of the fortress? 4. What circumstance is connected with it? 5. Benedict Arnold? 6. With what command was he entrusted? By what motives was he actuated?

revenge, for some public censures he had received from the government, he determined to deliver this post into the hands of the enemy. He entered into a secret correspondence with Sir Henry Clinton, and actually agreed to put him in possession of the garrison.

7. The British general readily consented to the treachery, and selected Major John Andre, his adjutant general and aid-de-camp, to have a personal interview with Arnold, and arrange the plan for the surrender of the post.

8. A British sloop of war, called the Vulture, sailed up the North river, and anchored about twelve miles below West Point. On board of this vessel was Major Andre, under the assumed name of John Anderson. The parties could now communicate with each other, without exciting suspicions of any treasonable designs. But a personal interview became at length necessary. The place chosen for this purpose was the beach, near the house of Mr. Joshua Smith, who had long been suspected of favoring the British cause.

9. Arnold now sent a boat to bring Andre on shore. This was unexpected to the British officer, but he was unwilling that the enterprize should fail, through any fault upon his part. Putting on a grey surtout, to hide his uniform, he accompanied the messenger of Arnold to the shore.

7. Who was selected to arrange the plan with Arnold? 8. How did they communicate with each other? What place was chosen for a personal interview? 9. How did Andre get on shore?

10. After conversing some time at the water's edge, they went to the house of Smith for greater security. Andre remained concealed here till the following night, when he became anxious to return on board the Vulture. He went alone to the beach, where he expected to find a boat to convey him to this vessel.

11. During his visit to the shore, however, the Vulture had been driven from her station, and had removed some miles farther down the river. When Andre proposed to the boatmen to carry him back to the vessel, they told him that it was too far, and refused to go.

12. It was impossible to procure a boat and men for the purpose, and it was resolved that Andre should return to New York by land. For this dangerous attempt, he laid aside his uniform altogether, and put on another dress. Arnold furnished him with a horse, and accompanied by Smith he set out upon his journey. Each of them had a passport from Arnold—"to go to the lines on White Plains, or lower if the bearer thought proper; he being on public business."

13. By means of these passports they got beyond all the American out-posts and guards, without being suspected. They lodged together on the night of their departure at Crompond. They arrived without interruption a little beyond Pine's Bridge, a village situated

10. What then took place? 11. What had happened to the Vulture? What of the boat-men? 12. What was resolved upon? What of the passport? 13. How were they of advantage? Relate their progress as far as the lines.

on the Croton. They had not yet crossed the lines, though they were in sight of the ground occupied by the British troops.

14. Smith here looked round, and seeing no one, and no sign of danger, he said to Andre — “You are safe—good by,” and retook the road by which they had come. Andre put spurs to his horse, and supposing himself out of danger, rode forward at full speed to deliver the favorable result of his mission.

15. He had proceeded about a dozen miles with the same good fortune. He was about entering Tarry town, the border village that separated him from the royal army, when a man sprung suddenly from a thicket and exclaimed “where are you bound?” This man was armed with a gun, and was immediately joined by two armed companions.

16. They were not in uniform, and Andre supposed at once they must be of his own party. Instead of producing his passport, he asked them in his turn where they belonged. They replied, “to below,” alluding to New York. “And so do I,” said Andre, “I am a British officer, on urgent business, and must not be detained.” “You belong to our enemies,” was the reply, “and we arrest you.”

17. Andre was surprised at this unexpected language and produced his passport. This paper however, notwithstanding the signature of Arnold, was of no avail, and he was obliged to surrender himself prison-

14. What of Andre after Smith's departure? 15. Relate the adventure with the men

er. He offered his captors gold, his horse, his watch, and any amount of goods that they might name, if they would allow him to pass to New York. All his offers were rejected with disdain.

18. The names of the faithful soldiers who arrested Andre, were John Paulding, David Williams, and Isaac Van Vert. On examining their prisoner, they found in his boots the important papers that gave minute accounts of the condition of West Point, with its forces and defences, all in the hand-writing of General Arnold.

19. The captors immediately deliver their prisoner with the papers found on him, into the hands of Colonel Jameson, who commanded the American outposts. When questioned by that officer, he still called himself Anderson, the man named in the passport, and behaved with great coolness and composure.

20. In order to inform Arnold of his arrest that he might have time to escape, he prevailed upon Colonel Jameson to write a letter to the commanding officer of West Point, telling him that Anderson, the bearer of his passport, had been detained. After sufficient time had elapsed for the traitor to make his escape, Major Andre declared himself to be the adjutant general of the British army.

18. What were the names of the soldiers who arrested Andre? What was found on Andre's person? 19. Into whose hands was the prisoner delivered? His behaviour. 20. How was Arnold informed of the arrest of Major Andre?

21. Arnold was busy with his arrangements for the reception of the enemy, when he received the letter from Jameson. Those who were present at the time, afterwards recollected that he was very much dismayed and agitated. Recovering himself quickly, he said in a loud voice that he would write an answer, and withdrew to reflect upon the course which it was best for him to pursue.

22. The entrance of two American officers interrupted his reflections. They were sent by the commander in chief, and informed Arnold that he had arrived within a few leagues of West Point, and was to have set out a few hours after them, to complete his journey. He had been on important business to Hartford, and, by a mistake of the messenger despatched by Jameson, had not heard of the capture of Andre.

23. The traitor had now no safety but in immediate flight. Concealing his emotions, he told the two officers that he wished to go and meet the general alone, and begged them not to follow him. He then entered the apartment of his wife, exclaiming—“All is discovered; Andre is a prisoner; the commander in chief will know every thing. Burn all my papers—I fly to New York.”

24. Leaving his wife, without waiting for a reply, he mounted the horse of one of the two officers, and

-
21. What of Arnold? 22. What of the commander in chief?
23. What did Arnold now do? What did he say to his wife?
24. How did he escape?

rushed towards the Hudson. Here he had taken care to have always ready a barge well-manned. He threw himself into it, and ordered the boatmen to make for the English sloop with all possible despatch. The barge, bearing a flag of truce, was in sight when Washington arrived.

25. The officers related to him what had happened. Arnold had absconded. No one knew how to account for it. The commander in chief instantly repaired to the fort of West Point, but he could learn nothing there. He returned to the house of General Arnold, where the messenger of Jameson presented himself, and delivered the packet with which he was charged.

26. Washington seemed for a few moments overwhelmed by the enormity of the crime. Those who were near him waited silently, but impatiently, for the result. He at length said—"I thought that an officer of courage and ability, who had often shed his blood for his country, was entitled to confidence, and I gave him mine. I am convinced now, and for the rest of my life, that we should never trust those who are wanting in probity, whatever abilities they may possess.—Arnold has betrayed us."

27. Major Andre was conducted to West Point, and afterwards to head quarters at Tappan. A court martial was here instituted, and this unfortunate officer was condemned to death. General Washington was

24. How did he escape ? 25. What did the commander in chief do ? Messenger of Jameson ? 26. What did Washington say on reading the letter ? 27. What of Andre ?

now called upon to discharge a duty from which he revolted, and it is said that his hand could hardly command his pen, when signing the warrant for the execution. But the laws and usages of war required that Andre should die, and he accordingly perished on the scaffold.

CHAPTER XI.

The Story of Sergeant Champe.

1. A TRANSACTION connected with this sad affair, known only to Washington and a single confidential officer, has been given to the world in the interesting Memoirs of Major Lee. Most of the story that follows, is in the very words of the original narrator.

2. The treason of Arnold, the capture of Andre, together with private intelligence received from New York, induced General Washington to believe that other officers in his army were connected with the late conspiracy. This belief gave him great uneasiness. The moment he reached the army, then encamped at Tappan, under the command of Major General Greene, he sent to request an interview with Major Lee.

3. This officer immediately repaired to head quarters, and found the general in his marquee alone, busi-

Washington's feelings and conduct in this affair? What became of Andre?

1. What of Major Lee? 2. What gave Washington great uneasiness?

ly engaged in writing. As soon as Lee entered, he was requested to take a seat, and a bundle of papers, lying on the table, was given to him for perusal. In these much information was detailed, tending to prove that Arnold was not alone in treachery, but that the poison had spread, and that a Major General, whose name was not concealed, was certainly as guilty as Arnold himself.

4. This officer had enjoyed, without interruption, the complete confidence of the commander in chief. The only reason for suspicion rested on the intelligence derived from papers before him. Major Lee immediately suggested that the whole was a contrivance of Sir Henry Clinton, to destroy the necessary confidence between the commander and his officers. This suggestion had occurred to the mind of Washington ; but he was still anxious and distrustful.

5. Deeply agitated, as was plainly shown by his tone and countenance, the general proceeded : " I have sent for you in the expectation that you have in your corps individuals capable and willing to undertake an indispensable, delicate and hazardous project. Whoever comes forward will oblige me forever, and, in behalf of the United States, I will reward him amply. No time is to be lost. My object is to probe to the bottom the afflicting intelligence contained in the papers you have just read ; to seize Arnold, and, by getting

3. What took place between Washington and Major Lee ?—

4. What did Major Lee suggest ? 5. Repeat Washington's remarks to Major Lee.

him, to save Andre. 'They are all connected. My instructions are ready ; here are two letters to be delivered as ordered, and some guineas for expenses.'

6. Major Lee replied that he had no doubt his legion contained many individuals capable of the most daring enterprises. There were some feelings of delicacy that prevented him from suggesting the step to a commissioned officer, but he thought the sergeant-major of the cavalry in all respects qualified for the undertaking, and to him he would venture to propose it.

7. He then described the sergeant, as a native of Loudon county, in Virginia, about twenty-four years of age, rather above the common size, full of bone and muscle, grave and inflexible. He had enlisted in 1776, and was as likely to reject a service coupled with ignominy as any officer in the corps.

8. The general exclaimed that he was the very man for the business ; that he must undertake it ; that going to the enemy at the request of his officer was not desertion, though it appeared to be so. He enjoined that this explanation should be impressed upon Champe, as coming from him, and that the vast good in prospect should be contrasted with the mere semblance of doing wrong. This he hoped would remove every scruple.

9. Major Lee assured the general, that every exertion should be used on his part to execute his wishes, and, taking leave, returned to the camp of the light

6. What reply did Lee make ? 7. Describe the sergeant that the Major recommended. 8. What instructions did Washington give in respect to the undertaking ? 9. What did Lee then do ?

corps, which he reached about eight o'clock at night. He sent instantly for the sergeant-major, and introduced the subject in as judicious a manner as possible. Dressing out the enterprise in brilliant colors, he finally removed all scruples from the honorable mind of Champe, and prevailed on him to yield entirely to his wishes.

10. The instructions were then read to him. He was particularly cautioned to be careful in delivering his letters, and urged to bear constantly in mind that Arnold was not to be killed under any circumstances, but only to be taken prisoner. Giving the sergeant three guineas, he recommended him to start without delay, and enjoined him to communicate his arrival in New York as soon thereafter as might be practicable. Pulling out his watch, Champe reminded the major of the necessity of holding back pursuit, as he should be obliged to go in a zigzag direction in order to avoid the patrols.

11. It was now nearly eleven ; the sergeant returned to camp, and, taking his cloak, valise and orderly book, drew his horse from the picquet, and mounting, committed himself to fortune. Within half an hour, Capt. Carnes, the officer of the day, waited on the major, and told him that one of the patrol had fallen in with a dragoon, who, on being challenged, had put spurs to his horse, and escaped. Major Lee contrived various ex-

What happened between him and the sergeant ? 10. What instructions were given to Champe ? 11. When did Champe set out ? What of Captain Carnes ? What did Major Lee then do ?

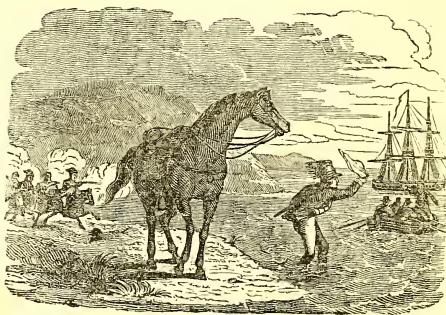
pedients to delay sending a party in pursuit ; but it was finally despatched, under the command of Cornet Middleton.

12. When Middleton departed, it was only a few minutes past twelve, so that Champe had only the start of about an hour. Lee was very anxious, not only from fear that Champe might be injured, but that the enterprise might be delayed. The pursuing party were delayed by necessary halts to examine the road. A shower had fallen soon after Champe's departure, which enabled them to take the trail of his horse, as no other animal had passed along the road since the rain. When the day broke, Middleton was no longer obliged to halt, but passed on with great rapidity.

13. As the pursuing party reached the top of a hill on the north of the village of Bergen, they descried Champe not more than half a mile in front. The sergeant at the same moment discovered them, and gave the spurs to his horse. He eluded them, just as they felt secure of taking him, and again disappeared. Pursuit was renewed, and Champe was again descried. He had changed his original intention of going directly to Paulus Hook, and determined to seek refuge from two British galleys, which lay a few miles to the west of Bergen.

14. As soon as Champe got abreast of the galleys, he dismounted, and ran through the marsh to the river. He had previously prepared himself for swim-

12. When did Middleton set off? 13. Relate the account of the pursuit.



Escape of Sergeant Champe.

ming, by lashing his valise on his shoulders, and throwing away the scabbard of his sword. The pursuit was so close and rapid, that the stop occasioned by these preparations for swimming, had brought Middleton within two or three hundred yards. The sergeant plunged into the water, and called upon the galleys for help. They sent a boat to meet him; he was taken on board, and conveyed to New York, with a letter from the captain of the galley, who had witnessed the whole of the scene.

15. The horse, with his equipments, the sergeant's cloak and sword scabbard, were taken by the pursuing party. About three o'clock in the evening they returned, and the soldiers, seeing the horse, made the air resound with cries that the scoundrel was killed.—Called by this heart rending annunciation from his tent, Major Lee began to reproach himself with the blood of the faithful and intrepid Champe. He was relieved by Middleton's information, that the sergeant had made his escape. The commander in chief was sensibly affected by the perilous adventures of Champe, and anticipated the confidence that would follow the enemy's knowledge of its manner.

16. Champe was conducted to Sir Henry Clinton, who, after a long conversation, presented him with a couple of guineas, and recommended him to call on General Arnold, who was engaged in raising an Amer-

15. What did the soldiers exclaim on seeing the horse of Champe? What of Major Lee? Washington? 16. Sir Henry Clinton? Arnold?

ican legion in the service of his majesty. Arnold expressed much satisfaction on hearing from Champe the manner of his escape, and the influence which he attributed to his own example, and concluded his numerous inquiries by assigning him quarters.

17. Champe now turned his attention to the delivery of his letters, which he was unable to effect till the next night, and then only to one of the parties. This man received the sergeant with extreme attention, and assured him that he might rely on his prompt assistance in any thing that could be prudently undertaken. The sole object in which the aid of this individual was required, was in regard to the general and others of the army, implicated in the information sent by him to Washington. This object he promised to enter upon with zeal.

18. Five days had elapsed after reaching New York, before Champe saw the confidant to whom only the attempt against Arnold was to be entrusted. This person entered at once into his design, and promised to procure a suitable associate. The complete innocence of the suspected general was soon established. Andre had confessed the character in which he stood, disdaining to defend himself by the shadow of a falsehood. He had been condemned as a spy, and suffered accordingly.

19. Nothing now remained to be done by Champe, but the seizure and safe delivery of Arnold. To this

17. What of the letters ? 18. Champe and his confidant ? 19
What now remained to be done ?

object he gave his undivided attention, and Major Lee received from him the complete outlines of his plan, on the nineteenth of October. Ten days elapsed before Champe brought his measures to a conclusion, when Lee was presented with his final communication, appointing the third subsequent night for a party of dragoons to meet him at Hoboken, when he hoped to deliver Arnold to the officer.

20. Champe had been improving every opportunity to become acquainted with the habits of the general. He discovered that it was his custom to return home at about twelve every night, and that previous to going to bed, he always visited the garden. During this visit, the conspirators were to seize him, and, being prepared with a gag, were to apply it instantly.

21. Adjoining the house in which Arnold resided, and in which it was intended to seize and gag him, Champe had taken off several of the palings, and so replaced them that he could easily open his way to the adjoining alley. Into this alley he meant to have conveyed his prisoner, with the assistance of a single companion. Another associate was to be prepared with a boat to receive them at one of the wharves on the Hudson

22. Champe and his friend intended to have placed themselves each under Arnold's shoulder, and to have thus borne him through the most unfrequented alleys and streets to the boat. If questioned, they were to

19. Communications to Major Lee ? 20. What plan had Champe formed ?

represent him as a drunken soldier whom they were conveying to the guard house.

23. The day arrived, and Lee, with a party of dragoons, left camp late in the evening, with three led, accoutred horses, one for Arnold, one for the sergeant, and the third for his associate, never doubting the success of the enterprise. The party reached Hoboken about midnight ; hour after hour passed ; no boat approached. At length the day broke, and the major, with his party, returned to camp. Washington was much chagrined at the issue, and apprehensive that the sergeant had been detected in his dangerous enterprise.

24. It so happened that on the very day preceding the night fixed for the plot, Arnold had removed his quarters to another part of the town, to superintend the embarkation of some troops. The American legion had been transferred from their barracks to one of the transports, so that Champe, instead of crossing the Hudson that night, was safely deposited on board one of the vessels of the fleet, whence he never departed till the troops under Arnold landed in Virginia.

25. It was some time before he was able to escape from the British ; when he deserted, and, proceeding high up into Virginia, passed into North Carolina, and safely joined the army. His appearance excited great surprise among his former comrades, which was not a

23. What did Lee do on the appointed day ? Result of the enterprise ? 24. What caused the failure of the plan ? What of Champe ? 25. His reception by Lee ?

little increased when they saw the cordial reception he met with from the then Lieutenant Colonel Lee. His whole story soon became known to the corps, and excited universal admiration.

26. Champe was introduced to General Greene, who cheerfully complied with certain promises that had been made to him by the commander in chief. He was provided with a good horse and money for his journey to head quarters. Washington treated him munificently, and presented him with his discharge from further service, lest, in the vicissitudes of war, he should fall into the hands of the enemy, and die upon a gibbet.

CHAPTER XII.

Revolt on the Night of New Year. A second Revolt. Troops sent against the Insurgents. Ringleaders shot. Anecdote. Army marches through Philadelphia. An amusing Letter. Arrival of Count de Grasse. Siege of Yorktown.

1. THE campaign of 1780 ended with no very decided efforts, and the army went into winter quarters. On the first night of the new year, a very serious mutiny broke out among the troops at Morristown. About

26. General Greene ? How was Champe rewarded by Washington ?

1. Campaign of 1780 ? What happened on new year's night ?

thirteen hundred men paraded without their officers, and, marching to the magazines, supplied themselves with provisions and military stores.

2. General Wayne, who commanded them, went out and endeavored to use his influence and authority to check the revolt. On cocking his pistol, they presented their bayonets to his breast. "We respect and love you," they said, "but we warn you to be upon your guard; if you fire your pistols, or attempt to enforce your commands, we shall put you instantly to death." The mutineers determined to march immediately to Philadelphia, and demand of Congress a redress of their grievances. A committee was appointed by this body, and eventually an accommodation was made with the insurgents.

3. Washington was far from being pleased at the issue of this transaction, and determined to adopt more severe and decisive measures in future. A revolt shortly after broke out in another regiment, and he at once ordered a detachment of five hundred men to march and reduce them to duty. This party was placed under the command of Major General Robert Howe.

4. On the twenty-seventh of January, about daylight, this detachment arrived within sight of the huts of the insurgents. Here they were halted, and received orders to load their arms. General Howe then

2. What of General Wayne? What did the mutineers say to him? What was done for them? 3. What of Washington? 4. What was done by Major General Howe?

addressed them, representing the enormity of the crime of the mutineers, and adding that no terms could be made with them till they were brought to entire submission. The troops were then directed to surround the huts on all sides. He then ordered his aid-de-camp to command the mutineers to appear in front of their huts, unarmed, within five minutes. A second messenger was sent, and they immediately formed as they were directed.

5. Being thus overpowered, the mutineers quietly submitted to their fate. General Howe ordered that three of the ringleaders should be selected for immediate punishment. These wretched men were tried on the spot, by a court-martial standing in the snow, and were sentenced to be shot. Twelve of the most guilty mutineers were now chosen to be their executioners. Two of these offenders were shot, and the third pardoned. The terror of this scene produced a very powerful effect upon the guilty soldiers. They asked pardon of their officers, and promised a faithful discharge of duty for the future.

6. The war, during this campaign, was carried, by the British, through every section of the country. Their head quarters continued in New York, but the army were scattered at different times through the Carolinas, Georgia and Virginia. Washington could have no immediate agency in the southern department, but his advice was frequently requested, and as large detach-

5. How were the mutineers punished ? 6. What of the British ? Washington ?

ments of troops were sent as could be spared from the neighborhood of West Point.

7. While the British were in the Potomac, they sent a flag on shore to Mount Vernon, requiring a supply of fresh provisions. To prevent the destruction of property, the person whom Washington left with the care of his estate, went on board with the flag, and carried a quantity of provisions, requesting that the buildings might be spared. For this, the general severely reprimanded him in a letter, observing,—“It would have been a less painful circumstance to me to have heard, that, in consequence of your non-compliance with the request of the British, they had burnt my house, and laid my plantation in ashes.”

8. In the beginning of the campaign, Washington had intended to attack the British posts at New York, and had written a letter which detailed the plan of his operations. This letter was intercepted, and fell into the hands of Sir Henry Clinton. Circumstances afterwards occurred to induce Washington to change his original intention, and transfer the scene of war to Virginia.

9. General Washington having proceeded in advance to Virginia, the American troops were left under the command of General Lincoln, and the French under the Baron de Viomenil. When the army marched through Philadelphia, on the way to the south, a num-

7. How was the request of the British for provisions received? Feelings of Washington? 8. What of his letter? 9. Where did General Washington go? What of the march through Philadelphia?

ber of interesting and amusing occurrences took place. The windows were crowded with spectators. On account of the warm and dry weather, the streets were filled with dust, and the American soldiers were enveloped in clouds of it. The line of march extended nearly two miles. The French troops did not pass through the city till the next day, and the following lively account of their march is taken from letters published by a French clergyman in Count Rochambeau's army.

10. "The arrival of the French army at Philadelphia was more like a triumph than simply a passing through the place. The troops made a halt about a quarter of a league from the city, and in an instant were dressed as elegantly as ever the soldiers of a garrison were on a day of review; they then marched through the town, with the military music playing before them, which is always particularly pleasing to the Americans; the streets were crowded with people, and the ladies appeared at the windows in their most brilliant attire. All Philadelphia was astonished to see people who had endured the fatigues of a long journey, so ruddy and handsome, and even wondered that there could possibly be *Frenchmen* of so genteel an appearance.

11. "We were a good deal amused with a mistake of some of the common people, who took for a general, one of those alert fellows, whom our commanding offi-

The French troops ? 10. Relate the account given by a French clergyman.

cers commonly have in their retinue to run up and down to carry their written orders. His short, tight-bodied coat, his rich waistcoat with a silver fringe, his rose-colored shoes, his cap, adorned with a coat of arms, and his cane, with an enormous head—all appeared to them so many tokens of extraordinary dignity. Though he approached his master, the colonel commandant, merely to receive and publish his orders, they imagined that he gave them of his own accord, and directed the movements of the troops, independently of any superior.”

12. The French minister on this occasion invited all the officers to a splendid dinner. They had just seated themselves at table, when an express arrived. Every one was anxious to learn what intelligence it could have brought; all eyes were fixed upon the minister. “Thirty-six ships of the line,” said he, “commanded by Monsieur le Comte de Grasse, have arrived in Chesapeake Bay, and three thousand men have landed and opened a communication with the Marquis de la Fayette.”

13. This glad news was soon spread through every quarter of the city; and echoes of joy resounded on all sides. Some merry fellows, says our French clergyman, mounted on scaffolds and stages, pronounced funeral orations for Cornwallis, and uttered lamentations on the grief and distress of the tories. The people ran in crowds to the residence of the minister of France,

12. Dinner given by the minister? What of the express? 13. Effects of the news?

and *Long live Louis the Sixteenth* was the general cry.

14. Washington had advanced as far as Chester, when he received the news of the arrival of the fleet commanded by M. de Grasse. He immediately visited the count, attended by several of the general officers of the French and American armies. A plan of operations was then agreed upon, and the combined forces, partly by land and partly by water, proceeded on their way to Yorktown.

15. In this place, Lord Cornwallis, with the royal army, had taken post, and constructed strong fortifications. It is a little village, on the south bank of the river York, about fifteen miles from its entrance into Chesapeake Bay. The British forces amounted to seven thousand men; the allied army to about twelve thousand. The works erected for the security of the town were redoubts and batteries, and every effort was made to strengthen them.

16. On the first of October, the allied armies had made some progress in the siege. They had compelled the British to abandon several of their redoubts, and retire within the town. During a severe cannonade from the enemy, while the Reverend Mr. Evans was standing near the commander in chief, a shot struck the ground so near as to cover his hat with sand. Being much agitated, he took off his hat, and said, "See here, general." "Mr. Evans," replied Washington,

14. What of Washington? 15. Lord Cornwallis? British forces? Allied army? 16. Anecdote of Mr. Evans?

with his usual composure, "you had better carry that home, and show it to your wife and children."

17. The American troops labored for a number of days with incessant activity, in digging trenches, and erecting batteries. Two or three batteries having been prepared to open upon the town, General Washington put the match to the first gun, and a furious discharge of cannon and mortars immediately followed. From the tenth to the fifteenth of the month, a severe and continual firing was kept up by the allied armies. The enemy returned the fire with little effect.

18. During this period, a shell from the French battery set fire to a forty-four gun ship, and two or three smaller vessels in the river. It was in the night time, and presented a splendid spectacle. The fire spread all over the ships, running about the rigging to the tops of the masts, and casting a broad and bright flame over the waters. This dreadful scene, in the darkness of night, amid the roar of cannon and bursting of shells, must have been brilliant and sublime.

19. A description of this siege is given by Dr. Thatcher, a surgeon in the revolutionary army. "Being in the trenches," he observes, "every other night and day, I have a fine opportunity of witnessing the sublime and stupendous scene which is continually exhibiting. The bomb shells from the besiegers and the besieged are incessantly crossing each others' path in the air. They are clearly visible in the form of a black

17. American troops? 18. Ships set on fire? 19. Dr. Thatcher's description of the bomb shells?

ball in the day, but in the night they appear like a fiery meteor with a blazing tail, most beautifully brilliant, ascending majestically from the mortar to a certain altitude, and gradually descending to the spot where they are destined to execute their work of destruction."

20. These shells in falling whirl round, and excavate the earth to a considerable extent, making terrible havoc when they burst. They can be thrown to a given spot by an expert gunner with the greatest accuracy. After carrying on this kind of warfare for a number of days, the American general determined to take, by assault, two redoubts, about three hundred yards in front of the principal works of the enemy.

CHAPTER XIII.

Siege continued. Assault of British Redoubts. Anecdote. Surrender of Yorktown. Anecdotes. Proclamation of Congress. Army returns to the Vicinity of New York. Mutiny. Celebration of the Birth of the Dauphin.

1. THE two British redoubts were assaulted at the same time; one by a brigade of American troops, under the command of the Marquis de la Fayette; and the other by a French detachment under the Baron de Viomenil. The assault commenced at eight o'clock.

20. What did Washington determine to do?

1. Assault upon the British?

in the evening, and was soon successfully concluded ; the Americans losing but a very few men, and the French a considerable number.

2. The reason of this difference in the loss of men was, that the Americans, in coming to the abattis, tore away a part of it, and leapt over the remainder. The French, however, waited till their pioneers had cut away the abattis, according to rule, being exposed, meanwhile, to a severe fire from the enemy. When the marquis entered the works, he sent his aid, Major Barbour, through a terrible fire of the enemy, to inform Baron Viomenil "that he was in his redoubt, and to ask the baron where he was." The messenger found the French troops clearing away the abattis, but the baron sent back this answer—"Tell the marquis I am not in mine, but will be in five minutes." He advanced, and entered the works within his time.

3. During the assault, the British kept up a very severe and incessant fire of musketry and cannon. Washington and the Generals Lincoln and Knox, with their aids, were standing in an exposed situation, waiting the result. One of Washington's aids, solicitous for his safety, said to him, "Sir, you are too much exposed here; had you not better step a little back." "Colonel Cobb," replied the general, "if you are afraid, you have liberty to step back."

4. On the seventeenth of the month, Lord Cornwall-

2. Conduct of the French and American troops ? Relate the anecdote of the baron and marquis. 3. Anecdote of Washington
4. Lord Cornwallis.



Generals Washington, Lincoln and Knox, at the Battle of Yorktown

lis was reduced to the necessity of sending out a flag, to request a cessation of hostilities for twenty-four hours. Two or three flags passed in the course of the day, and Washington at length consented to a suspension of hostilities for two hours, that his lordship might suggest his proposals for a treaty.

5. At an early hour in the forenoon of the 18th, General Washington communicated to the British commander the basis of the terms of capitulation to which he would consent. A sufficient time was allowed for reply. Two officers were then selected from each army to meet, and prepare the particular articles of agreement. These were arranged, and confirmed by the commanders in chief.

6. On the nineteenth of October, preparations were made to receive the British general and his soldiers prisoners of war. The terms of capitulation were similar to those granted to General Lincoln, at Charleston.

7. At about twelve o'clock, the allied armies were arranged, and drawn up in two lines, extending more than a mile in length. The Americans, with General Washington at their head, occupied the right side of the road ; the French, with Count Rochambeau, occupied the left. The French troops were in complete and beautiful uniform, and presented a very military and noble appearance. The Americans were not

5. What of the terms of capitulation ? 6. What preparations were made on the nineteenth of October ? 7. Arrangement of the allied armies ?

dressed so neatly, but their air was martial; their step lightened, and their countenance animated with joy. Great crowds were collected from the neighboring villages to witness the ceremony.

8. At about two o'clock, the captive army advanced through the lines formed to receive them. It was expected that Lord Cornwallis would be at their head, but he pretended indisposition, and made General O'Hara his substitute. This officer was followed by the conquered troops, with shouldered arms, colors cased, and drums beating a slow and solemn march. Having arrived at the head of the line, General O'Hara advanced to Washington, and apologized for the absence of Earl Cornwallis. The commander in chief courteously pointed to General Lincoln for directions.

9. This officer conducted the British army into a large field, where they were to ground their arms. This was a severe trial for the disciplined and haughty soldiers of England. It was a great mortification to yield to raw continentals, and to the Yankee general whom they had ridiculed in their farces. Some of the platoon officers were weak enough to make no secret of their chagrin and ill temper. After having grounded their arms, and taken off their accoutrements, the captives were reconducted to Yorktown, and put under guard.

10. In his general orders on the next day, Wash-

8. What of the British army? 9. Where were they conducted? What then took place? 10. What orders did Washington give the next day?



Surrender of the British Army.

ington expressed his warmest thanks to the soldiers and officers of the combined army for their brave conduct during the siege. Wishing that every heart should share in the general joy, he gave orders that all in confinement or under arrest should be immediately pardoned and set at liberty. On the Sunday following, the army was drawn up in the field, for the performance of divine service.

11. The American troops were immediately employed in embarking the artillery and military stores on board of transports for the North river. Lord Cornwallis and his officers received every civility and attention from the American generals, that it was in their power to bestow. General Washington and Count Rochambeau frequently invited them to entertainments, and they expressed grateful acknowledgments of their hospitality.

12. On one occasion, when Cornwallis, in the presence of the commander in chief, was standing with his head uncovered, Washington politely said to him, "My lord, you had better be covered from the cold." "It matters little, sir," replied Cornwallis, "what becomes of this *head now*."

13. An anecdote has been told of Washington, which reflects as much credit upon his delicacy of feeling, as the event to which it relates does upon his military skill. After the surrender of the town, when the British soldiers were marching forth from the garrison

11. Employment of the American troops ? Cornwallis and his officers ? 12. Conversation between Cornwallis and Washington ?

to deliver up their arms, the commander in chief thus addressed the division of the army to which he was attached: "My brave fellows, let no sensation of satisfaction for the triumphs you have gained, induce you to insult your fallen enemy—let no shouting, no clamorous huzzaing increase their mortification. It is sufficient that we witness their humiliation. Posterity will huzza for us!"

14. When Congress received the letter from Washington, that announced the surrender of the British army, they determined to go in procession, at two o'clock, to the Dutch Lutheran church, and return thanks to Heaven for the success of the allied forces. They also issued a proclamation for observing, throughout the United States, the thirteenth of December as a day of thanksgiving and prayer.

15. They resolved to erect in Yorktown a marble column, adorned with emblems of the alliance between the United States and his most Christian Majesty of France, and inscribed with a brief narrative of the surrender of the British army. Two stands of colors, taken from the enemy at the capitulation, were presented to General Washington by Congress, in the name of the United States. Two pieces of field ordnance, taken at the same time, by a resolve of Congress were presented to Count Rochambeau. On these a few words were engraved, expressing that the

13. Address of Washington to the army? 14. What of Congress?
15. Marble column? What was presented to Washington? To Count Rochambeau?

gift was made in consideration of the part which this officer had borne in effecting the surrender.

16. After the capture of Cornwallis, Washington, with the greater part of his army, returned to the vicinity of New York. Though complete success had been attained in Virginia, and great advantages in the Carolinas, the commander in chief urged immediate preparations for another campaign. He was afraid that Congress would think the work so nearly done, as to relax their efforts in raising the requisite number of troops. "To prevent this error," he observes, in a letter to General Greene, "I shall employ every means in my power ; and if, unhappily, we sink into this fatal mistake, no part of the blame shall be mine."

17. Early in May in 1782, there was, for the first time during the war, a mutiny among the soldiers from Connecticut. It had been conducted with the utmost address and secrecy, till the night before its intended execution. The soldiers had unanimously determined, on the next morning, to leave their encampment and march for Fishkill. Here they were to supply themselves with field-pieces, provision and ammunition, and proceed to Hartford to demand justice of the state assembly.

18. When the officers were retiring to bed, a faithful soldier informed one of them that he could not rest without making known an event which was to take place on the next morning. He immediately divulged

16. Where did Washington go ? What does he say in a letter ?

17. Mutiny in the army ? 18. How was the conspiracy discovered ?

the whole plot. The most guilty soldiers were seized and confined, and the ringleader sentenced to suffer death. Thus the whole design was frustrated.

19. On the first of June, the birth of the dauphin of France was celebrated in the camp by a magnificent festival. The edifice in which the company partook of the entertainment was erected on the plain at West Point. It was six hundred feet in length, and thirty feet wide, supported by one hundred and eighteen columns made of the trunks of trees. The roof and walls were composed of leafy branches skilfully interwoven. On the inside, every pillar was surrounded with weapons of war, and the whole hall ornamented with hanging banners and evergreens, with a variety of emblems and devices.

20. The whole army was paraded on the hills on both sides of the river, forming a circle of several miles, in open view of the edifice. At a given signal the regimental officers left their commands, and repaired to the building, to partake of an entertainment which had been prepared by order of the commander in chief. At five o'clock, General Washington, with his lady and suite, and the principal officers of the army, with their ladies, moved through a line formed by a regiment of artillery from General McDougall's quarters to the arbor.

21. More than five hundred partook of the festival. When the cloth was removed, thirteen toasts were drank, announced by the discharge of thirteen cannon,

and accompanied by music. In the evening, the arbor was illuminated with a vast number of lights, arranged with regularity and taste. When the officers rejoined their regiments, thirteen cannon were again fired.

22. This was succeeded by a discharge from the whole army through the surrounding hills, three times repeated. The flashes of the musketry from a thousand quarters gleamed like the lightning, while the old cliffs and rocks of the mountains pealed with a myriad echoes. This fire was followed by three shouts of benediction for the dauphin by the united voices of the whole army. At half past eleven o'clock, an exhibition of fireworks concluded the celebration.

CHAPTER XIV.

Murder of Captain Huddy. Council of War determine upon Retaliation. Story of Captain Asgill. Parade of the Troops. Compliment from Count Rochambeau. Claims of the Army. Anonymous Addresses. Washington's Interview with the Officers. Letter to Congress. Cessation of Hostilities. Washington's Address to the Army. Mutiny among some Pennsylvania Troops.

1. IN the month of April, a horrid transaction occurred among the refugees. It was the murder of

1. What took place in April ?

Captain Joshua Huddy of New Jersey. He had been taken prisoner by a party of refugees, and carried to New York, where he was hung without the semblance of a trial. They fixed a label on his breast, expressive of their determination to hang man for man while there was a refugee existing, and ending with—*Up goes Huddy for Philip White.*

2. The pretended reason for this cruelty was, that Captain Huddy had made prisoner of a man of their party, and having broken both his legs, had tauntingly bid him to run. This was untrue, as Captain Huddy, at the time White was taken, was a prisoner in New York. This murder so excited the people of New Jersey, that they addressed a letter to General Washington, claiming justice, or retaliation. Washington wrote to Sir Henry Clinton, assuring him that unless the murderers were immediately given up, he should be obliged to take measures to retaliate.

3. A council of war was assembled, to determine what course it was most proper to pursue. Without conversing on the subject, the officers wrote their opinions, and addressed them, sealed, to the commander in chief. It was determined, unanimously, that they ought to have recourse to retaliation, that the officer to suffer should be of the same rank with Captain Huddy, and selected by lot.

4. The names of the British captains among their

2. What was the reason given for this cruelty? Effect upon the people? Washington? 3. What was determined upon by the council of war?

prisoners were accordingly collected, and the lot was drawn. It fell upon Captain Asgill, a young man of nineteen, an only son, and of a noble family. General Washington suffered as much from the painful necessity of executing the laws of war in the present instance, as he did in the case of Andre. He addressed Congress on the subject, presenting them with the memorial from New Jersey; they entirely approved the measures that had been adopted.

5. Information having been received that a court-martial was sitting in the British camp, to investigate the conduct of those concerned in the death of Captain Huddy, General Washington waited to learn the result. They were found not guilty, and Sir Guy Carleton requested a passport for Chief Justice Smith to repair to American head quarters, and exhibit the proceedings of the court-martial. General Washington declined this interview, as the question was purely of a military nature, "whether the perpetrator of the wanton and cruel murder of Huddy was to be given up, or a British officer to suffer in his place."

6. The execution of Captain Asgill was delayed a sufficient time for the intelligence to reach his friend in Europe. His mother immediately wrote to Count de Vergennes, to implore his interference, in the most eloquent language of grief. A letter was at once despatched by the count to Washington, enclosing the

4. Upon whom did the lot fall? What did Washington do?
5. Court-martial in the British camp? 6. What took place in respect to Captain Asgill?

letter of Lady Asgill. Copies of these papers were instantly transmitted to Congress, who resolved that Captain Asgill should be set at liberty.

7. This measure relieved Washington from a load of suffering that had long weighed upon him. He immediately sent the resolve of Congress to Captain Asgill, accompanied with a passport to New York, and a letter, which concluded in the following words:—

“I cannot take leave of you, sir, without assuring you, that, in whatever light my agency in this unpleasant affair may be viewed, I was never influenced, through the whole of it, by sanguinary motives, but by what I conceived to be a sense of my duty, which loudly called on me to take measures, however disagreeable, to prevent a repetition of those enormities, which have been the subject of discussion. And that this important end is likely to be answered without the effusion of the blood of an innocent person, is not a greater relief to you than it is, sir, to

Your most obedient humble servant,

GEORGE WASHINGTON.”

8. In the month of September, the whole army was paraded in honor of Count Rochambeau, who had just arrived from the south. The troops were formed in two lines, through which the count was escorted, by a body of dragoons, to head quarters. He was here received by General Washington. The army then marched before him, sitting on his horse by the

7. What did Washington do? Repeat part of his letter to Captain Asgill. 8. Parade in honor of Count Rochambeau?

side of the commander in chief, and paid the usual salute.

9. The appearance of the troops had been greatly improved. They were in complete uniform, and exhibited every sign of military discipline. The count was very much pleased with their rapid progress in soldierly accomplishments, and said to General Washington—"You must have formed an alliance with the king of Prussia—These troops are Prussians." After deducting somewhat for French over-courtesy, the compliment was undoubtedly well deserved.

10. During the campaign of this year, not a gun was fired between the two armies. The prospect of peace was so favorable, that Congress had determined to discharge a considerable part of the troops on the first of the ensuing January. The commander in chief, though there was no prospect of further military movements, continued with the army after they had retired to winter quarters.

11. Nothing had been decided by Congress in respect to the claims of the soldiers, when news arrived, in March, 1783, that Great Britain had acknowledged the independence of the United States in the preceding November. This intelligence spread around an universal joy. The army exulted with the rest of their fellow citizens, but their gladness was clouded with fears of injustice in their country.

12. They thought their prospect of compensa-

9. Appearance of the troops? Count Rochambeau's remark to the general? 10. Campaign of 1782? 11. News of 1783?

tion diminished with the necessity of their services. Petitions had been presented to Congress in respect to the pay of officers, but the objects which they solicited were not obtained. Under these circumstances, anonymous addresses were circulated in the army, which produced the most violent excitement. Every indication was given of a storm that would destroy the peace of the country, and its new liberties.

13. A paper had been privately handed about, calling a meeting of the officers on the next day. It was an occasion that demanded all the wisdom and influence of Washington. He accordingly noticed the anonymous summons in general orders, and requested a meeting, nominally for the same purpose, four days later. In the mean time, sending for the officers one after another, he enlarged upon the fatal consequences that would result from the adoption of any violent measures. His unwearied efforts were used to quiet the agitation.

14. When the officers assembled, Washington arose to address them. Finding his eyesight fail him, he observed—"My eyes have grown dim in my country's service, but I never doubted of its justice." He then delivered a very interesting and feeling address. After commenting fully upon the anonymous papers that had been circulated in the camp, he entreated the officers to rely on the justice and good faith of Congress.

"And let me conjure you," he continued, "in the

12. Feelings of the army? Anonymous letters? 13. What did Washington do? 14. How did he address the officers?

name of our common country, as you value your own sacred honor, as you respect the rights of humanity, and as you regard the military and national character of America, to express your utmost horror and detestation of the man who wishes, under any specious pretences, to overturn the liberties of our country, and who wickedly attempts to open the floods of civil discord, and deluge our rising empire in blood."

15. Having finished his eloquent and powerful address, his excellency withdrew, and the convention unanimously resolved to present him their thanks, and assure him "that the officers reciprocate his affectionate expressions with the greatest sincerity of which the human heart is capable." General Knox, Colonel Brooks, and Captain Howard, were then appointed a committee, to prepare resolutions expressive of the business of the convention, and to report in half an hour. These resolutions professed an undiminished attachment to the liberties of their country, and an unshaken confidence in the justice of Congress.

16. The result of these proceedings was communicated, by the commander in chief, to Congress, accompanied by an impressive letter. "If the whole army," he observes in the course of it, "have not merited whatever a grateful people can bestow, then have I been beguiled by prejudice, and built opinion on the basis of error. If this country should not in the event perform every thing which has been requested in the

15. Result of this address? 16. Repeat Washington's letter to Congress.

late memorials to Congress, then will my belief become vain, and the hope that has been excited, void of foundation. * * * But I am under no such apprehension ; a country rescued by their arms from impending ruin, will never leave unpaid the debt of gratitude."

17. Congress at length came to resolutions, in which they expressed a desire to gratify the reasonable expectations of the officers of the army, and remove all objections which might exist in any part of the United States to the principles of the half pay, which had been pledged to them. They commuted the half pay for life to full pay for the space of five years, at the option of the parties interested.

18. The commander in chief thus addressed the army, on the cessation of hostilities, in April :

"The commander in chief orders the cessation of hostilities, between the United States of America and the king of Great Britain, to be publicly proclaimed to-morrow at twelve o'clock, at the New Building ; and that the proclamation which will be communicated herewith, be read to-morrow evening, at the head of every regiment and corps of the army ; after which, the chaplains, with the several brigades, will render thanks to Almighty God for all his mercies, particularly for his overruling the wrath of man to his own glory, and causing the rage of war to cease among the nations."

19. The reduction of the army had been resolved by Congress, but it was a difficult measure, and re-

quired deliberation. To avoid the inconvenience of dismissing a great number of soldiers in a body, furloughs were freely granted on the application of individuals, and, after their dispersion, they were not enjoined to return. In this manner, a great part of an unpaid army was dispersed over the states, without tumult or disorder.

20. While the troops under the immediate command of Washington manifested the utmost good conduct, a mutiny broke out among some new levies stationed at Lancaster, in Pennsylvania. About eighty soldiers, in defiance of their officers, marched to Philadelphia, to seek a redress of their alleged grievances from the executive council of the state. They proceeded to the barracks in the city, where some other soldiers were quartered, who joined them. The whole body amounted to about three hundred.

21. On the following day, the insurgents, with drums beating and fixed bayonets, marched to the State-house, the seat of Congress and of the supreme executive council of Pennsylvania. They placed sentinels at every door, sent in a written message to the president and council, and threatened to break in upon them, if their demands were not granted within twenty minutes. No further insult was offered to Congress, but they were confined in this manner for about three hours.

19. How was the army reduced ? 20. Mutiny at Lancaster ?
21. What steps did the insurgents take ?

CHAPTER XV.

Conduct of Washington towards the Mutineers. His Address to Congress. Farewell Orders to the Army. Disbanding of the Troops. British evacuate New York. Splendid Entertainment. Society of Cincinnati. Parting Scene.

1. CONGRESS resolved that the authority of the United States had been grossly insulted by the armed soldiers. It was determined that a committee of their body should confer with the executive council, and if it should appear to the committee, that the state of Pennsylvania ought not to take measures to support the dignity of the federal government, the president should summon the Congress to meet on Thursday the 26th, at Princeton or Trenton. The secretary of war was also directed to communicate to the commander in chief the state and disposition of the mutineers.

2. On receiving information of this disgraceful outrage, Washington immediately despatched Major General Howe, with fifteen hundred men, to quell the mutineers, and punish the most guilty of them. Before his arrival, however, they had dispersed without bloodshed. Several were brought to trial, two were condemned to death, and four others to receive corporal punishment.

3. On this occasion, General Washington addressed the president of Congress in very feeling and eloquent language :

1. What of Congress ? Secretary of war ? 2. Who did Washington send to quell the mutineers ? Punishment of the mutineers ?

“While I suffer the most poignant distress in observing that a handful of men, contemptible in numbers, and equally so in point of service, if the veteran troops from the southward have not been seduced by their example, and who are not worthy to be called soldiers, should disgrace themselves and their country, as the Pennsylvania mutineers have done, by insulting the sovereign authority of the United States and that of their own ; I feel an inexpressible satisfaction, that even this behavior cannot stain the name of the American soldiery.

4. “It cannot be imputable to, or reflect dishonor on, the army at large, but, on the contrary, it will, by the striking contrast it exhibits, hold up to public view the other troops in the most advantageous point of light. On taking all the circumstances into consideration, I cannot sufficiently express my surprise and indignation at the arrogance, the folly, and the wickedness of the mutineers ; nor can I sufficiently admire the fidelity, the bravery and patriotism which must forever signalize the unsullied character of the other corps of our army.

5. “For when we consider that these Pennsylvania levies, who have now mutinied, are recruits, and soldiers of a day, who have not borne the heat and burden of war, and who can have in reality very few hardships to complain of ; and when we at the same time recollect that those soldiers, who have lately been furloughed from this army, are the veterans who have

patiently endured hunger, nakedness and cold ; who have suffered and bled without a murmur, and who, with perfect good order, have retired to their homes. without a settlement of their accounts, or a farthing of money in their pockets,—we shall be as much astonished at the virtues of the latter, as we are struck with horror and detestation at the proceedings of the former.”

6. On the second of November, 1783, General Washington issued his farewell orders to the armies of the United States. After noticing a recent proclamation of Congress, he observed that it only remained to address himself for the last time to the armies of the United States, and to bid them an affectionate farewell. He remarked upon the circumstances under which the war was begun ; the signal interpositions of Providence in their behalf ; and their unparalleled perseverance through eight years of every possible suffering and discouragement.

7. His closing words were—“ Your general being now to conclude these his last public orders, to take his ultimate leave, in a short time, of the military character, and to bid adieu to the armies he has so long had the honor to command, he can only again offer in their behalf his recommendations to their grateful country, and his prayers to the God of armies. May ample justice be done to them here, and may the choicest of Heaven’s favors, both here and hereafter, attend those,

6. What did Washington do in the latter part of the year 1783 ?

7 Repeat the closing words of Washington’s address to the army.

who, under the divine auspices, have secured innumerable blessings for others ! With these wishes, and this benediction, the commander in chief is about to retire from service. The curtain of separation will soon be drawn, and the military scene, to him, will be closed forever."

8. The treaty of peace was signed on the twenty-third of September, and a proclamation was issued by Congress to disband the army. Painful, indeed, was the parting. The old soldiers, who had been sharers for seven years in privation and suffering, were to separate under circumstances of the most distressing character. They were poor, without money or employment, and many with no other prospect than that of painful dependence or miserable penury.

9. Though their whole military life had been a scene of want and wretchedness, it had sometimes been chequered with splendid triumphs, or at any rate had been throughout supported by an anxious excitement. That excitement was now past, for the object of their labors and sacrifices, the liberty of their common country, had been obtained. The glorious hope, that gleamed continually before their eyes in the battles of the revolution, had been changed into a glorious certainty, by the declaration of peace : and now that the wrongs and sufferings of their country had been vindicated, their thoughts were naturally concentrated upon their own personal situation.

8. Peace ? Proclamation ? Feelings of the soldiers ? 9. What of their military life ?

10. There were sorrow and suffering, want and wretchedness, but no tumult, no mutiny, no disorder. They would not end a succession of generous sacrifices by a violation of their faith and their duty; but determined to abandon their rights, rather than resort to force to recover them.

11. The British army evacuated New York in November, and the American troops, under General Knox, took possession of the city. Soon after, General Washington and Governor Clinton, with their suite, made their public entry into the city on horseback, followed by a procession of civil and military officers, and a large number of citizens. The governor made a public dinner, and general festivity reigned throughout the city.

12. This was followed, a day or two afterwards, by an elegant entertainment, given by the governor to the French ambassador, the Chevalier de la Luzerne. General Washington, the principal officers of New York state and of the army, and upwards of a hundred other gentlemen, were present. Splendid fireworks were exhibited at the Bowling Green in Broadway, much superior to any thing of the kind ever before seen in the United States. They commenced by a dove descending with the olive branch and setting fire to a battery.

13. While contemplating a final separation of the

10. Feelings and conduct of the soldiers? 11. What of the British army? American troops? Describe the entry into the city of New York. 12 Describe the entertainment given by the governor.

officers of the army, there was room for the exercise of the tenderest feelings of the heart. It was at the suggestion of General Knox that an expedient was devised to perpetuate their friendly intercourse. This was by means of a society, composed of the officers of the army, and called, after the illustrious Roman, the Society of the Cincinnati. Of this society General Washington officiated as president until his death.

14. On Tuesday noon, the fourth of December, the principal officers of the army assembled at Francis's tavern to take a final leave of their beloved commander in chief. When Washington entered the room, his emotions were too strong to be repressed or concealed. Filling a glass, he turned to the surrounding officers and said—"With a heart full of love and gratitude, I now take leave of you. I most devoutly wish that your latter days may be as prosperous and happy as your former ones have been glorious and honorable."

15. Having drank, he added, "I cannot come to each of you to take my leave, but shall be obliged to you, if each of you will come and take me by the hand." General Knox, being nearest, turned to him. Washington, in tears, grasped his hand, embraced and kissed him. In the same manner he took leave of each succeeding officer, Lincoln, and Greene, and Lafayette, and the other virtuous and valiant men with whom he had been connected in hours of peril and

13. What society was formed? 14. What was done on the 4th of December? What did Washington say to the officers? 15. In what manner did he take leave of them?



Washington taking leave of his Officers.

darkness, to be rewarded with endless gratitude and glory.

16. Every eye was moistened with tears. Not a word was spoken to interrupt the silent solemnity of the parting. Leaving the room, Washington passed through the corps of light infantry, and walked to Whitehall, where a coach was in waiting to receive him. The whole company followed in mute procession, with sad and dejected countenances. On entering the barge, he turned to his companions, and, waving his hat, bade them a silent farewell. They paid him a similar mark of respect and affection, and, when they could no longer distinguish in the barge the person of their beloved commander, returned, in the same solemn manner, to the place where they had first assembled.

CHAPTER XVI.

Anecdote of Baron de Steuben. A Whale or an Eel? The Dwarf of Tatawa Falls. General Gates. Amusing Spleen of General Lee. General Knox. Washington's Opinion of General Greene. General Lincoln. Marquis de la Fayette. Congress express their Respect for him. His Reply.

1. THE estimation in which General Washington held the chief associates of his labors, is well known.

16. Describe the departure of the commander in chief.

He entertained for most of them the highest esteem and affection. With the exception of his difficulties with Gates and Lee, and the officers connected with the attempt to supplant him in command, there were but few circumstances to mar the most perfect harmony in his intercourse with the general officers.

2. We have taken a chapter in this piece to collect a few miscellaneous anecdotes that occurred during this intercourse. No order has been chosen for their arrangement, as they are trifling incidents, which it is difficult to refer to any particular period.

3. Baron de Steuben was a very useful and valiant officer, and possessed the entire confidence of Washington. Though never perfect master of our language, he understood and spoke it with considerable accuracy. He would sometimes, however, for his amusement, purposely mistake and misuse words.

4. He was dining one day at head quarters, when Mrs. Washington asked him what entertainments he had recourse to, now that the peace had relaxed his active employments. "I read, my lady, and write, and play chess, and yesterday, for the first time, I went a fishing. My gentleman told me it was a very fine business to catch fish, and I did not know but this new trade might, by and by, be useful to me—but I fear I never can succeed. I sat in the boat three hours; it was exceedingly warm, and I caught only two fish; they told me it was fine sport "

1. What of the intercourse between Washington and his officers?
3. Relate the anecdote of Baron de Steuben

5. "What kind of fish did you take, baron?" asked Mrs. Washington. "I am not sure, my lady, but I believe one of them was a whale." "A whale, baron, in the North river?" "Yes, I assure you, a very fine whale, my lady;—it was a whale, was it not?" appealing to one of his aids. "An eel, baron." "I beg your pardon, my lady, but that gentleman certainly told me it was a whale." Now that his mind was at ease, General Washington enjoyed this pleasantry highly.

6. At Tatawa falls, the commander in chief had visited a miserable and deformed dwarf, who had lain in his cradle for twenty-seven years. His head was eighteen inches in length, and the rest of his body twenty-seven inches. Among other questions, his excellency asked him whether he was a whig or a tory. He answered, as he had been taught, "that he had never taken an active part on either side."

7. A gentleman and lady, who had been rather too friendly to the British, after the declaration of peace came out from New York, and resided in the neighborhood of Baron de Steuben. They were invited to dine with General Washington and his lady, at this officer's table. "It is proper," said the baron to his excellency, "that you should be apprized that Mr. — and his lady, from New York, are to dine with me; and perhaps, sir, you may not choose to meet Mr. —." "Oh, baron," said the general, laughing, "there is no difficulty on that point. Mr. — is very

6. Anecdote of the dwarf? 7. What application did Washington make of the dwarf's answer?

like the big-headed boy at Tatawa ; *he has never taken an active part.*"

8. There is no question but that a plot was at one period formed, to wrest the chief authority from Washington, and bestow it upon General Gates. After the ill success of this officer in the southern department, he was displaced from his command by the order of Congress, and his conduct submitted to the inquiry of a court-martial. It resulted, however, in his acquittal.

9. Shortly after the receipt of despatches, stating that the command of the southern army had been transferred to General Greene, a gentleman had occasion to call upon General Gates. He found him traversing the apartment, in extreme agitation, with the late despatches open upon the table. His countenance betrayed no anger or resentment, but was glowing with sensibility.

10. A letter in his hand was frequently raised to his lips and kissed with devotion, while he exclaimed with fervor—"Great man! Noble, generous procedure!" When his excitement had been somewhat subdued, he related, with great feeling, the cause of his emotion.

11. "I have received this day a communication from the commander in chief, which has conveyed more consolation to my bosom, more ineffable delight to my heart, than I had believed it possible for it ever to have felt again. With affectionate tenderness he sympathizes with me on the loss I have sustained by the re-

cent death of an only son ; and then, with peculiar delicacy, lamenting my misfortune in battle, assures me that his confidence in my zeal and capacity is so little impaired, that the command of the right wing of the army will be bestowed on me so soon as I can make it convenient to join him."

12. General Charles Lee was a man of brilliant talents and extensive military knowledge. He was, however, very coarse and satirical, and incessant in a base detraction of the commander in chief. In reference to these calumnies, General Washington said, in a letter to a friend—"What cause is there for such a profusion of venom as he is emitting on all occasions ?—A simple narration of facts would defeat all his assertions, notwithstanding they are made with an effrontery which few men do, and, for the honor of human nature, ought to possess."

13. An amusing specimen of his coarse spleen is related by Dr. Thacher. In the year 1776, when the army lay at White Plains, General Lee resided near the road frequently passed by the commander in chief, who, one day, with his aids, called and took dinner. After they had departed, Lee said to his aids, "You must look me out other quarters, or I shall have Washington and his puppies calling till they eat me up." The next day, he ordered his servant to write with chalk on the door, "No victuals cooked here to-day."

12. What did Washington say of General Lee ? Relate the anecdote of General Lee.

The company, seeing the hint on the door, passed on without molesting him by a visit.

14. One of the most intimate and confidential friends of Washington was General Knox. He was in early life a bookseller in Boston, and was one of the first to take up arms against the British. From a very bold and important enterprise which he performed in the early stages of the war he received a most flattering testimony of approbation from the commander in chief and from Congress, and was appointed to the command of the artillery. In this command he continued through the revolution.

15. In every field of battle where Washington fought, Knox was by his side. During the whole war he retained his entire confidence and esteem; and parted, at the close of it, with his matured friendship and affection. To the last moment of his life, his letters contain frequent evidence of his undiminished fondness.

16. Of General Greene, the following testimony is borne in a letter from Washington: "There is no officer in the army more sincerely attached to the interests of his country than General Greene. Could he but promote these interests in the character of a corporal, he would exchange, without a murmur, his epaulette for the knot. For, although he is not without ambition, that ambition has not for its object the highest rank so much as the greatest good."

17. General Lincoln was an early advocate for the

14. What of Knox? 16. Washington's opinion of General Greene?

rights of his country, and was appointed to his highest military command at the recommendation of Washington. He was a man of quick and active mind, with a large fund of knowledge, obtained both from books and observation. As a military commander, he was brave, judicious and indefatigable. He was of middle height, erect, broad-chested, and muscular. His manners were courteous but unaffected.

18. The name of Lafayette occupies a most distinguished place in our revolutionary history. At the early age of nineteen, he appeared in the cause of liberty, and soon acquired the confidence of the American people and the well deserved friendship of Washington. He was so distinguished by the regard of the commander in chief, that it became usual to call him his adopted son. The language in which Washington spoke of him was,—“ This nobleman unites to all the military fire of youth an uncommon maturity of judgment.”

19. When the marquis, in 1784, was about to take his departure from America, Congress appointed a committee of their body to take leave of him in a manner that would express their respect for his character, and gratitude for his services. They resolved, also, that a letter should be written to the king of France, indicating their high opinion of his zeal, talents and meritorious services, and recommending him to the favor and patronage of his majesty.

17. General Lincoln ? 18. Lafayette ? Washington's opinion of him ? 19. What did Congress do ?

20. The marquis made a very respectful and affectionate reply. He expressed the feelings of a heart devoted to the interests of our rising country, and acknowledged with gratitude that, when an inexperienced youth, he had been favored with the paternal adoption of his respected friend. In conclusion he observed :

21. "May this immense temple of freedom ever stand as a lesson to oppressors, an example to the oppressed, a sanctuary for the rights of mankind ; and may these happy United States attain that complete splendor and prosperity, which will illustrate the blessings of their government, and for ages to come rejoice the departed souls of its founders. Never can Congress oblige me so much as when they put it in my power, in every part of the world, to the latest day of my life, to gratify the attachment which will ever rank me among the most zealous and respectful servants of the United States"

M. Reply of Lafayette ?

CHAPTER XVII.

Washington's Resignation. Address to Congress. Mount Vernon. Calling of a Convention. Washington elected President. Passage to New York. Decoration of Gray's Bridge. Triumphal Arch at Trenton. Landing at New York. Ceremonies of Inauguration.

1. ON the disbanding of the army, Washington proceeded to Annapolis, then the seat of Congress, to resign his commission. On his way thither, he delivered to the comptroller of accounts at Philadelphia, an account of his receipts and expenditures of public money. The whole amount that had passed through his hands was only £14,479 18s. 9d. sterling. Nothing was charged or retained for his own services.

2. The resignation of his command was done in a public audience. Congress received him as the guardian of his country and her liberties. He appeared there under the most affecting circumstances. The battles of a glorious war had been fought, since he first appeared before them to accept, with a becoming modesty, the command of their armies. Now the eyes of a whole nation were upon him, and the voices of a liberated people proclaimed him their preserver.

3. His resignation was then communicated, in the following address, to the president of Congress :

“MR. PRESIDENT,

“The great events on which my resignation de-

1. What account did Washington give to the comptroller at Philadelphia ? 2. What of Congress ? Washington ?

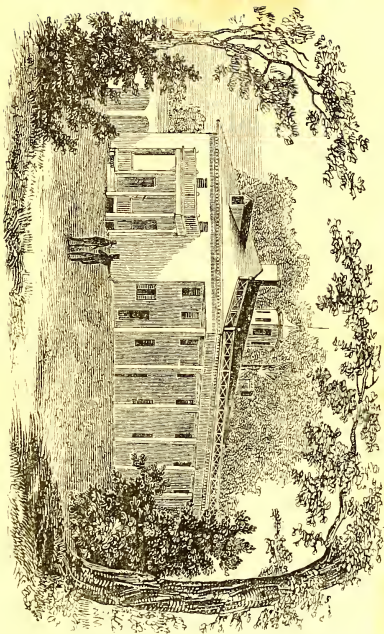
pended having at length taken place, I have now the honor of offering my sincere congratulations to Congress, and of presenting myself before them to surrender into their hands the trust committed to me, and to claim the indulgence of retiring from the service of my country.

4. "Happy in the confirmation of our independence and sovereignty, and pleased with the opportunity afforded the United States of becoming a respectable nation, I resign with satisfaction the appointment I accepted with diffidence ; a diffidence in my abilities to accomplish so arduous a task, which, however, was superseded by a confidence in the rectitude of our cause, the support of the supreme power of the Union, and the patronage of Heaven.

5. "While I repeat my obligations to the army in general, I should do injustice to my own feelings, not to acknowledge, in this place, the peculiar services and distinguished merits of the persons who have been attached to my person during the war. It was impossible the choice of confidential officers to compose my family should have been more fortunate. Permit me, sir, to recommend, in particular, those who have continued in the service to the present moment, as worthy of the favorable notice and patronage of Congress.

6. "I consider it as an indispensable duty to close this last solemn act of my official life, by commending the interests of our dearest country to the protection

3. Repeat Washington's address to the president of Congress.



RESIDENCE AT MOUNT VERNON.

of Almighty God, and those who have the superintendence of them to his holy keeping.

7. "Having now finished the work assigned me, I retire from the great theatre of action; and, bidding an affectionate farewell to this august body, under whose orders I have long acted, I here offer my commission, and take leave of all the employments of public life."

8. This address being ended, General Washington advanced, and delivered his commission into the hands of the president of Congress, who received it and made an appropriate reply. Having thus, of his own accord, become one of the people, the American chief hastened to his delightful residence at Mount Vernon. He here devoted himself to those quiet enjoyments, which the soldier and statesman must in vain look for among the cares of crowded life. His time was diligently given to the pursuits of agriculture, and the improvement of inland navigation.

9. His time, however, was not long to be his own. The situation of his country, even in a victorious peace, was such as to demand the continued services of every patriot. The state of public credit, the depreciation of property, the want of gold and silver, the weakness of the general government, for the first five or six years after the termination of war, continually darkened the prospects of our nation.

10. A proposition was finally made by Virginia, for

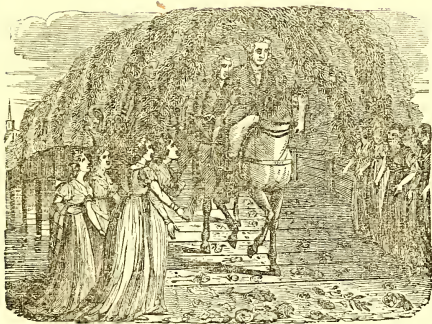
8. What followed the address? Where did Washington then retire? His occupation? 9. Situation of the country? 10. What of Virginia?

electing deputies from each state to a general convention, solely for the purpose of revising the federal system of government. In this body Washington represented his native state, and when the convention met at Philadelphia, he was unanimously elected their president. On the seventeenth of September, 1787, they closed their labors, and submitted the result to Congress.

11. The constitution which they framed having been accepted by eleven states, and preparatory measures having been taken to carry it into operation, all eyes were turned to Washington, as the man to fill the first presidency of the United States. It was not his desire to leave the retirement which he loved, for the tumult and cares of public office ; his acceptance of the power offered to him was from a sense of duty, and a real sacrifice of his inclination.

12. The election of General Washington to the presidency was announced to him at Mount Vernon, on the fourteenth of April, 1789. On the second day after receiving this notice, he set out for New York. On his way there, the road was thronged with crowds to look upon and bless him. Escorts of militia and private gentlemen of the first character, attended him from state to state. Addresses of congratulation were presented to him from every side, and his whole journey was like an ancient triumph.

To what office was Washington chosen ? 11. What of the constitution ? Feelings of Washington ? 12. Where was his election made known to him ?



Washington entering Treaton.

12. Gray's bridge over the Schuylkill was beautifully decorated for his passage with laurels and evergreens. At each end of it splendid arches were erected, composed of laurels, and on each side was a laurel shrubbery. As Washington passed the bridge, a boy from above dropped a crown of laurel upon his brows. An immense throng of citizens lined the road from the Schuylkill to Philadelphia. Through these he was conducted to the city. An elegant entertainment was there provided, and was succeeded in the evening by a display of fireworks.

14. When Washington crossed the Delaware, and landed on the Jersey shore, he was saluted with three cheers by the assembled inhabitants. When he came to the brow of the hill on his way to Trenton, he again passed through a triumphal arch ornamented with laurels and flowers. On the crown of it was displayed, in large characters, "December 26th, 1776." On the sweep of the arch beneath was inscribed, "The Defender of the Mothers will also protect the Daughters."

15. On the north side, he was met by a number of female children, dressed in white, with baskets of flowers on their arms, and garlands on their heads. In the second row stood the young women, and behind them the married ladies, of the vicinity. As he passed the arch, the children began to sing the following ode.

16. "Welcome, mighty Chief! once more
Welcome to this grateful shore.

What account is given of Washington's journey into New York?
16. Repeat the ode to Washington sung by the children.

Now no mercenary foe
Aims again the fatal blow,
Aims at thee the fatal blow.
Virgins fair, and matrons grave—
These thy conquering arm did save,—
Build for thee triumphal bowers :
Strew, ye fair, his way with flowers ;
Strew your hero's way with flowers.”

17. While singing the last lines, they strewed the flowers in the path of their great deliverer. How different his feelings from those experienced a few years before upon the same spot ! Then all was depression and sadness, now all joy and triumph.

18. He was rowed across the bay to New York by thirteen pilots in an elegant barge. All the vessels in the harbor hoisted their flags. On his landing, he was received and congratulated by the governor of the state and officers of the corporation. He was conducted to the house which had been prepared for his reception, followed by a procession of militia in their uniforms, and a large number of citizens. In the evening the houses of the inhabitants were brilliantly illuminated.

19. A day was fixed, soon after his arrival, for his taking the oath of office. It was in the following words : “ I do solemnly swear, that I will faithfully execute the office of president of the United States ; and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect and de-

18. How did Washington cross New York Bay ? How was he received at New York ? 19. Repeat the oath of office.

send the constitution of the United States." On this occasion he was wholly clothed in garments of American manufacture.

20. In the morning, the different congregations assembled in their respective places of worship, and offered up prayers for the president and people of the United States. About noon, a procession moved from the president's house to Federal Hall. When they came within a short distance of the hall, the troops formed a line on both sides of the way, through which, accompanied by the vice-president, Mr. John Adams, Washington passed into the senate chamber.

21. Immediately after, with the two houses of Congress, he went into a gallery fronting on Broad street, and, before an immense throng of citizens, took the oath prescribed by the constitution. It was administered by Mr. Livingston, the chancellor of the state of New York. A solemn silence prevailed during the ceremony. The chancellor then proclaimed him president of the United States. This was answered by the discharge of cannon, and the joyful shouts of assembled thousands. The president bowed most respectfully to the people, and retired to the senate chamber in the midst of their acclamations.

22. After delivering an address to Congress and receiving their reply, the president attended divine service in their company. In the evening there was a

How was Washington clothed on this occasion ? 20. What followed in the morning ? 21. By whom was the oath of office administered to Washington ? What followed the proclamation ? 22. What took place in the evening ?

ery ingenious and brilliant exhibition of fireworks. A transparent painting was displayed, in the centre of which was the portrait of the president, represented under the image of Fortitude. On his right hand was Justice and on his left Wisdom; emblematic of the senate and house of representatives. Thus concluded the ceremonies of the first presidential inauguration.

CHAPTER XVIII.

State of Foreign Affairs. Peace made with the Creek Indians. War between France and Great Britain. Washington retires from Office. Denies the Authorship of certain Letters. Mr. Adams inaugurated. Difficulties with France. Commander in Chief. His Letter to Congress. Peaceful Arrangements. Death of Washington.

1. WHEN Washington commenced his administration, the situation of the United States was highly critical. There were no funds in the treasury, and large debts were due upon every side. The party in opposition to the new constitution was numerous, and several members of this party had been elected to seats in the new Congress. Two of the states for a while refused to accept the constitution, and were, consequently, beyond the reach of its power.

How did the ceremonies conclude ?

1. Situation of the United States when Washington was chosen president ?

2. The relations of the general government with foreign nations were very unsettled. Animosities broke out, with considerable violence, between the United States and Great Britain. Each charged the other with a violation of the late treaty of peace. Difficulties occurred with Spain, in respect to the navigation of the Mississippi. Fifteen hundred of the northern Indians were at open war with the United States; and the Creeks, who could bring six thousand fighting men into the field, were at war with Georgia.

3. It was one of the first cares of Washington to make peace with the Indians. Commissioners were sent, immediately after his inauguration, to treat with the Creek Indians. They met with several chiefs of the nation, and about two thousand men, at the Rock Landing, on the borders of Georgia. Their efforts at negotiation failed. It was not till the seventh of August, 1790, that the chiefs of this tribe were induced to come to New York, where they concluded treaties of peace.

4. The arrangement of our European relations was the chief source of anxiety and trouble during the presidency of Washington. War broke out between France and Great Britain, and it required all prudence and vigilance to preserve our neutrality.— Many citizens, through gratitude to France, or an overflowing zeal in the cause of liberty, were in fa-

2. What difficulties existed? 3. What did Washington endeavor to do? When was peace concluded with the Indians? 4. What was the cause of great anxiety and trouble?

vor of our taking part in these hostilities. Washington adhered to the maxim "that the United States would hold all mankind enemies in war, in peace friends;" and exerted all his influence and authority to preserve the equality of the balance.

5. After eight years' service in the high office of president, Washington announced his intention to decline a re-election. It was the boast of a Roman emperor that he had found Rome a city of brick, and that he left it a city of marble. How much more glorious might be the boast of Washington—that he had found his country in depression and distress, and left it in prosperity and glory!

6. His address upon the occasion of declining a re-election concluded in the following words:

"The situation in which I now stand, for the last time, in the midst of the representatives of the people of the United States, naturally recalls the period when the administration of the present form of government commenced; and I cannot omit the occasion to congratulate you and my country on the success of the experiment, nor to repeat my fervent supplications to the Supreme Ruler of the universe, and Sovereign Arbiter of nations, that his providential care may still be extended to the United States; that the virtue and happiness of the people may be preserved; and that the

Efforts of Washington? 5. How long was he president? Of what might he boast? 6. Repeat part of his address upon declining a re-election.

government which they have instituted for the protection of their liberties may be perpetual."

7. On the day preceding the termination of his office, in a letter to General Knox, he compared himself to a weary traveller who sees a resting place and is bending his body thereon. "Although the prospect of retirement is most grateful to my soul, and I have not a wish to mix again in the great world, or to partake in its politics, yet I am not without regret at parting with (perhaps never more to meet) the few intimates whom I love. Among these, be assured, you are one."

8. The numerous calumnies which assailed him never but once drew forth his public notice. A volume had been published by the British, in the year 1776, consisting of letters which they attributed to General Washington. It was the object of this publication to produce impressions unfavorable to the integrity and character of the commander in chief. When the first edition of this forgery had been forgotten, it was republished, during his presidency, by some citizens who differed from him in politics.

9. On the morning of the last day of his office, Washington addressed a letter to the secretary of state, in which he enumerated the facts and dates connected with the forgery, and declared that he had hitherto

7. Letter to General Knox ? 8. What book had been published in 1776 ? Who republished it ? 9. Washington's letter to the secretary of state ?

thought it unnecessary to take a formal notice of the imposition. In this letter he solemnly declared that the correspondence was entirely a base forgery, and that he never saw or heard of it till it appeared in print. He requested that his letter upon the subject should be deposited in the office of the department of state, to be a testimony of the truth to the present generation and to posterity.

10. The time had now come when his own official power was to cease, and that of his successor, John Adams, was to commence. The old and new presidents walked together to the house of representatives, where the oath of office was administered. Mr. Adams concluded his address upon the occasion, by an impressive allusion to his predecessor, in observing, that though about to retire, "his name may still be a rampart, and the knowledge that he lives a bulwark, against all open or secret enemies of his country."

11. Washington rejoiced that the way was open for his return to the happiness of domestic and private life. After paying his respects to the new president, he immediately set out for Mount Vernon. He was desirous of travelling privately, but it was impossible. Wherever he passed, crowds came out to meet him and testify their respect for him.

12. In his retirement, Washington resumed his agricultural pursuits; and, in the society of his private

10. Who was chosen president? Conclusion of Mr. Adams's address? 11. How was Washington treated on his way to Mount Vernon? 12. His pursuits?

friends, looked for a quiet ending to an active and anxious life. He still, however, continued interested in public affairs, and heard, with regret, the insults offered to the United States by the French directory. These injuries at length obliged our government to adopt vigorous measures. Congress authorized the formation of a regular army, and all eyes were turned upon Washington as its commander.

13. President Adams nominated Washington to the chief command of the armies of the United States, with the rank of lieutenant-general. To the letter, sent with the commission to Mount Vernon, Washington replied in a letter which concluded as follows :

14. "Feeling how incumbent it is upon every person of every description to contribute at all times to his country's welfare, and especially in a moment like the present, when every thing we hold dear and sacred is so seriously threatened, I have finally determined to accept the commission of commander in chief of the armies of the United States ; with the reserve only, that I shall not be called into the field until the army is in a situation to require my presence, or it becomes indispensable by the urgency of circumstances. —

15. "In making this reservation, I beg it to be understood, that I do not mean to withhold any assistance to arrange and organize the army, which you may think I can afford. I take the liberty, also, to mention, that I must decline having my acceptance

Feelings ? 13. To what office was Washington nominated ?
14. Repeat Washington's letter

considered as drawing after it any immediate charge upon the public ; or that I can receive any emoluments annexed to the appointment, before entering into a situation to incur expense."

16. After the receipt of this appointment, Washington divided his time between agricultural pursuits and the organization of the army. He always thought an actual invasion of the country very improbable, but he made arrangements to repel it at the water's edge. No sooner had these warlike preparations been made, than France signified her desire for a peaceful accommodation.

17. Mr. Adams immediately sent three envoys extraordinary to negotiate with the French republic. On repairing to France, they found the directory overthrown, and the government in the hands of Bonaparte. With him negotiations were immediately commenced, and terminated in a peaceful arrangement of all difficulties. Washington, however, did not live to participate in the general joy which this event occasioned.

18. On the twelfth of December, 1799, Washington rode out in the morning to his farms. The weather soon became very cold, and there was an alternate fall of rain, hail and snow. He did not return till past three, when he went to dinner without changing his dress. In the evening he appeared as well as usual.

19. On the next day, there was a heavy fall of snow,

16. What did Washington do ? 17. For what were envoys sent to France ? 18. When did Washington's last sickness commence ?

which prevented him from riding out as usual. He had taken cold from his exposure the day before, and complained of having a sore throat. He had a hoarseness, which increased towards evening, but took no remedy for it, observing, as he would never take any thing to carry off a cold, "Let it go as it came."

20. On Saturday morning he was very seriously unwell, and a physician was sent for to bleed him. Finding that no relief was obtained from bleeding, and that he was entirely unable to swallow any thing, his attendants bathed his throat externally with sal volatile. A piece of flannel was then put round his neck, and his feet were soaked in warm water. It was impossible to procure any relief.

21. Several physicians were immediately sent for, and various remedies resorted to without effect. Between five and six o'clock in the afternoon, his physicians came to his bedside, and Dr. Craik asked him if he would sit up in the bed. He held out his hands, and was raised up, when he said—"I feel myself going; you had better not take any more trouble about me, but let me go off quietly; I cannot last long."

22. They found what had been done was without effect; he laid down again, and all except Dr. Craik retired. He then said to him, "Doctor, I die hard, but I am not afraid to go; I believed, from my first attack, I should not survive it; my breath cannot last long." The doctor pressed his hand, but could not

utter a word : he retired from the bed-side, and sat by the fire, absorbed in grief.

23. About ten o'clock he made several attempts to speak before he could effect it. He at length said, "I am just going. Have me decently buried ; and do not let my body be put in the vault in less than two days after I am dead." His attending physician bowed assent. He looked at him again and said, "Do you understand me ?" The reply was, "Yes, sir." Washington answered, "'Tis well."

24. About ten minutes before he expired, his breathing became much easier, he lay quietly, and he withdrew his hand from the physician to feel his own pulse. His hand fell from the wrist. Dr. Craik placed his hands over his eyes, and he expired without a struggle or a sigh. While the physicians and attendants were standing fixed in silent grief, Mrs. Washington asked, in a firm and collected voice, "Is he gone ?"

24. His death ?

CHAPTER XIX.

Proceedings of Congress. Extract of a Letter from Mrs Washington. Tributes of Respect from the People. Anecdotes of Washington. Travelling on Sunday. His Punctuality. Captain Pease and the Horses. His Liberality. Old Lydick.

1. WHEN intelligence of the death of Washington reached Congress, they immediately adjourned until the next day. Mr. John Marshall, since chief justice of the United States, then delivered a short and impressive speech to the house of representatives ; and the senate addressed a letter to the president. To this letter Mr. Adams returned an answer, which concluded in the following words :

2. " The life of our Washington cannot suffer by a comparison with those of other countries who have been most celebrated and exalted by fame. The attributes and decorations of royalty could only have served to eclipse the majesty of those virtues which made him, from being a modest citizen, a more resplendent luminary. Misfortune, had he lived, could hereafter have sullied his glory only with those superficial minds who, believing that character and actions are marked by success alone, rarely deserve to enjoy it.

3. " Malice could never blast his honor, and envy made him a singular exception to her universal rule.

1. How did Congress receive the news of the death of Washington ?

2. Repeat Mr. Adams's letter

For himself, he had lived long enough to life and to glory ; for his fellow citizens, if their prayers could have been answered, he would have been immortal ; for me, his departure is at a most unfortunate moment. Trusting, however, in the wise and righteous dominion of Providence over the passions of men and the results of their actions, as well as over their lives, nothing remains for me but humble resignation.

4. " His example is now complete ; and it will teach wisdom and virtue to magistrates, citizens and men, not only in the present age, but in future generations, as long as our history shall be read. If a Trajan found a Pliny, a Marcus Aurelius can never want biographers, eulogists, or historians."

5. Congress voted a series of resolutions, in which it was determined that a marble monument should be erected by the United States, at the capitol of the city of Washington, to commemorate the great events of the military and political life of the late president. It was also determined that there should be a funeral oration and procession, and that it should be recommended to the people of the United States to wear crape on their left arm, as mourning, for thirty days.

6. When the resolution of Congress, that she should be requested to permit the remains of her husband to be deposited under a marble monument, to be erected at the capitol, was communicated to Mrs. Washington, she replied in the following language : " Taught by

5. What resolutions were passed by Congress ? 6. Reply of Mrs. Washington to the request of Congress ?

the great example which I have so long had before me, never to oppose my private wishes to the public will, I must consent to the request made by Congress, which you have had the goodness to transmit to me; and in doing this, I need not, I cannot say, what a sacrifice of individual feeling I make to a sense of public duty."

7. The people in every part of the states, with one will and impulse, immediately assembled to express their gratitude to the deceased, and their sorrow for his loss. Funeral orations and sermons were preached from every pulpit throughout the land. Villages, towns, cities and public institutions were called Washington, and thousands of children in all ranks of life. Mariners, who discovered new islands, gave them the name of the American chief, thus carrying it to the remotest corners of the globe.

8. The history of Washington is so much the history of his country, during the times in which he lived, that it has been difficult to interrupt the relation of public events by the introduction of trifling anecdotes, which, more than any thing else, exhibit the private character. A few of these, collected from various sources, we have reserved for this, and the following chapter.

9. Washington was at one time travelling through Connecticut, where the roads were somewhat rough, and the manners of the inhabitants very rigid; and he

-
7. What was done by the people to express their feelings?
8. What of the history of Washington? 9. Relate the anecdote of Washington in Connecticut.

was overtaken by night on Saturday, without being able to reach the village where he intended to pass the sabbath. Next morning, about sunrise, his coach was harnessed, and he was proceeding to an inn, near the place of worship which he proposed to attend. A plain man, who was an informing officer, came from a cottage, and inquired of the coachman if there was any reason for his travelling on the Lord's day. Instead of resenting this interruption as impertinent, the general ordered the coachman to stop, and, with great civility, explained the circumstances to the officer, commending him for his fidelity; and assured him that nothing was further from his intention, than to treat with disrespect the laws and usages of Connecticut.

10. Washington performed all his great works with apparent ease, by a strict observance of punctuality. Whenever he assigned to meet Congress at a certain hour, he never failed to be passing the door of the hall when the clock was striking. His dining hour was four, when he always sat down to his table, allowing only five minutes for the variation of timepieces, whether his guests were present or not. It was frequently the case with new members of Congress, that they did not arrive until dinner was nearly half over, and he would remark—"Gentlemen, we are punctual here; my cook never asks whether the company has arrived, but whether the hour has."

11. When visiting Boston in 1789, he appointed eight o'clock in the morning as the hour when he

should set out for Salem ; and while the Old South clock was striking eight, he was crossing his saddle. The company of cavalry which volunteered to escort him, not anticipating this strict punctuality, were parading in Tremont street after his departure ; and it was not until the president had reached Charles river bridge, where he stopped a few minutes, that the troop of horse overtook him. On passing the corps, the president, with perfect good nature, said—" Major ——, I thought you had been too long in my family not to know when it was eight o'clock."

12. The following anecdote was related by Captain Pease, the head of the stage establishment in the United States. He had purchased a pair of beautiful horses, which he wished to dispose of to the president. Five o'clock was the hour appointed to examine them. The captain thought the hour was too early for so great a man to be stirring, and did not arrive with the horses until a quarter after five ; when he was told by the groom, that the president had been there at five, and was then fulfilling other engagements. Pease was much mortified, and called on Major Jackson, the secretary, to apologize for his delay, and to request the president to appoint some new time. He found that the president's time was wholly pre-occupied for several days, and he was put to the trouble and expense of remaining a week in Philadelphia before the examination took place.

13 While the American army lay encamped at Morristown, it occurred that the service of the commu

nion was to be administered in the Presbyterian church in that village. In a morning of the previous week, Washington, after his accustomed inspection of the camp, visited the house of the Rev. Doctor Jones, then pastor of the church, and, after a little conversation, observed to him—

14. “Doctor, I understand that the Lord’s supper is to be celebrated with you next Sunday ; I would learn if it accords with the canons of your church to admit communicants of another denomination.” The doctor rejoined—“Most certainly ; ours is not the Presbyterian table, general, but the Lord’s table, and we hence give the Lord’s invitation to all his followers of whatever name.” The general replied—“I am glad of it : that is as it ought to be ; but as I was not quite sure of the fact, I thought I would ascertain it from yourself, as I propose to join with you on that occasion. Though a member of the church of England, I have no exclusive partialities.” The doctor reassured him of a cordial welcome, and the general was found seated with the communicants the next sabbath.

15. Shortly after his election to the presidency of the United States, General Washington, his lady, and secretary, Major Jackson, on their way from the seat of government to Mount Vernon, stopped for the night at Chester. The president had scarcely arrived, and expressed a wish not to be disturbed, when a message was brought that an old gentleman, once honored with

14. What of the communion ? 15. Anecdote of Washington at Chester ?

his favor and protection, requested permission to pay his respects, adding, that his name was *Lydick*.

16. 'Let him enter, by all means," said the president; "he is the man, Major Jackson, who, at the hazard of his life, entered New York, while in possession of the enemy, for the purpose of distributing among the German troops, proclamations, inviting them to our standard; and who, afterwards, superintended for many years, our baking establishment with zeal and diligence."

17. As the old man entered, the general, taking him kindly by the hand, said—"My worthy friend, I am rejoiced to see you, and truly happy to express my thanks to a man to whom I feel myself under great obligation. You ever served your country with exemplary fidelity, and her warmest gratitude is richly your due."

18. "Such praise from my beloved commander," replied Lydick, "is high reward. I shall now go to my grave in peace, since it has been my happiness, once again, to meet and pay my duty to your excellency."

CHAPTER XX.

Personal Appearance of Washington. Description by Dr. Thacher. Remarks upon his Character.

1. THE personal appearance of Washington was remarkable. It was that of the gentleman and soldier. He was six feet in height, erect and well proportioned. His muscular strength was very great. With his countenance it was impossible to connect any other qualities than those of wisdom, benevolence and magnanimity.

2. His deportment was in strict accordance with his character and situation. He was dignified without being haughty, and serious without being sullen. His gravity was such as became his station, and was never dull or disagreeable. His features were of a beautiful symmetry ; his nose was straight, and his eyes were nearly blue.

3. "It is natural," says Dr. Thacher, "to view with keen attention the countenance of an illustrious man, with a secret hope of discovering in his features some peculiar traces of excellence which distinguishes him from and elevates him above his fellow mortals. These expectations are realized, in a peculiar manner, in viewing the person of General Washington. His tall and noble stature and just proportions, his fine, cheerful, open countenance, simple and modest deportment, are

1. Personal appearance of Washington ? Deportment ? 3. Repeat Dr. Thacher's description of Washington.

all calculated to interest every beholder in his favor, and to command veneration and respect. He is feared even when silent, and beloved even while we are unconscious of the motive. *

4. You have now read a simple account of the life, manners and personal appearance of George Washington. It does little good to read unless we think upon the men and things about which we read. Let us now think together a moment of the character and fame of the preserver of his country, and the father of her liberties.

5. You have heard, perhaps, about Cæsar, Alexander, and Buonaparte. They were all great warriors, and introduced into the world a great deal of misery. Their object was personal glory; their motive was a selfish desire of power, and wealth, and fame. They did not live for mankind or their country, but for themselves. It was for themselves that they toiled, and fought, and filled the world with wretchedness and slaughter. It was for themselves that they labored, and they all reaped the reward of their selfish ambition.

6. The military fame of Washington was not of his own seeking. He had no delight in scenes of carnage and bloodshed. When appointed by Congress to the command of the American armies, he modestly shrunk from an appointment to which he did not consider himself adapted. But the call of his countrymen was ever the rule of his life. He accepted the chief command, held it through a perilous and discouraging war,

5. Comparison between Washington and other military heroes ?

and only resigned his sword when, like the weapon of an ancient warrior, it was wreathed with the laurels of victory, and the myrtle of peace.

7. Washington was not ambitious of military distinction. He had no thirst for affluence, power, or fame. His only desire was to render the highest service to his country. If this could have been best obtained by his remaining in silence and obscurity, the world would never have heard his name. He would have lived and died contented with the consciousness that he had done all that became him as a patriot and as a man.

8. But we must not think upon him only as a soldier. As a wise statesman, he stands among the first that have ever ornamented or elevated the period and country in which they lived. He was prudent, far-sighted, indefatigable ; not to be turned out of his way, nor alarmed, nor at all shaken in his purpose, by difficulties that to meaner men would have appeared insurmountable. Never adopting a measure without patient investigation, he was unremitting in his exertions to effect what he had once adopted. Cautious in forming his plans, he was persevering in their execution.

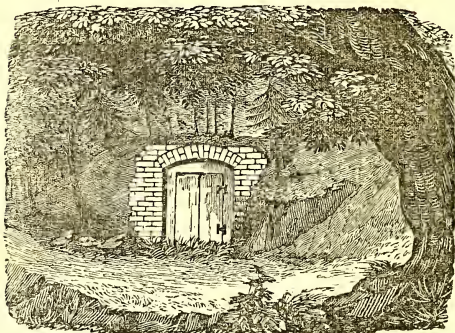
9. Washington was a fine speaker and an excellent writer. When we look upon his military orders, his numerous letters, his public speeches and addresses, and his presidential messages to Congress, we cannot but be astonished at the ease, the freedom and the sim-

7. What was Washington's desire ? 8. His character as a statesman ? 9. What of his writing ?

plicity with which they are all composed. He always wrote briefly and to the point, expressing what he had to say in words that would convey his meaning with the most directness and clearness.

10. In considering the character of Washington, we not only find every thing to respect, but every thing to esteem and love. His dignified wisdom commands our admiration, but we cannot regard, without sincere and warm affection, his earnest patriotism, his diffusive benevolence, his unsullied integrity, his child-like simplicity and purity of life. Well may we say, as it often has been said, that the world has never seen but a single Washington !

10. What do we find in the character of Washington ? What has often been said of him ?

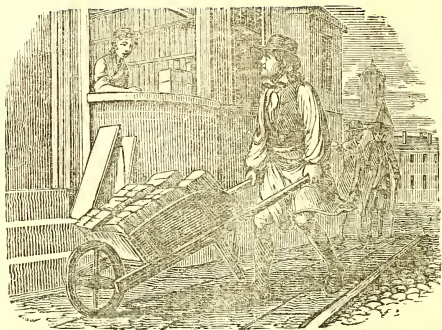




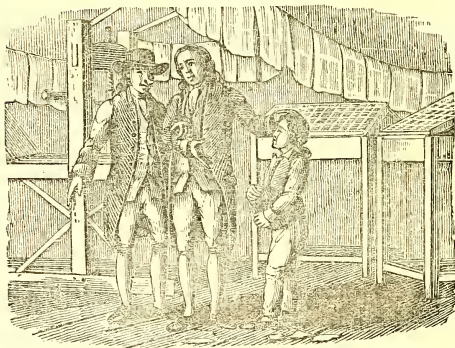




FRANKLIN.

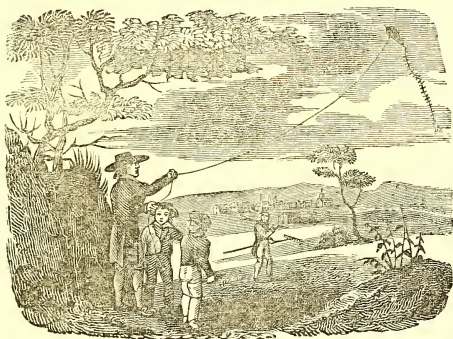


Franklin taking home his paper.



Reconciliation of Franklin with his Brother

THE
L I F E
OF
BENJAMIN FRANKLIN.



ILLUSTRATED BY
TALES, SKETCHES, AND ANECDOTES.

ADAPTED TO THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

WITH ENGRAVINGS.

PHILADELPHIA:
CHARLES DESILVER,
251 MARKET STREET.
1857.

Entered according to act of Congress, in the year 1836, by
S. G. GOODRICH,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Massachusetts.

PREFACE.

THE following Preface to the Life of Columbus will explain the plan of the series, of which this is the third volume :—

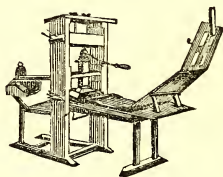
“ There is no kind of reading more attractive than biography, and, if properly treated, there is none more instructive. It appears, therefore, to be peculiarly fitted to the purposes of education ; it readily excites the curiosity and awakens the interest of the pupil, and, while it stores his mind with facts, dates and events, displays to his view the workings of the human heart, and makes him better acquainted with himself and mankind.

“ In the selection of subjects for a biographical series of works for youth, the editor has been led, by two considerations, to prefer those which belong to our own country. In the first place, it is more particularly necessary that our youth should be made acquainted with the lives of those men who were associated with the history of their native land ; and, in the second place, no country can afford hap-

pier subjects for biography than this. There are few such lives as those of Columbus, Washington, and Franklin, in the annals of any nation.

“ In the preparation of the work, the author has sought to adapt it to youth, by the use of a simple style, and by the introduction of many illustrative tales, sketches, anecdotes and adventures. Questions for examining the pupils are printed in the pages, which may be used, or not, at the choice of the Teacher.”

The Life of Columbus and the Life of Washington, on a plan similar to this, have been already published ; and other volumes, containing the lives of celebrated Indian Chiefs, celebrated American Statesmen, &c., will appear hereafter, if those already in progress should meet with success.



CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.

	Page
Birth of Franklin. Early Education. Anecdote. Choice of a Trade. He is placed with a Cutler. His Fondness for Reading. Bound Apprentice to his Brother. Makes a Couple of Ballads. His Friend Collins. Reads the Spectator.	11

CHAPTER II.

Franklin gives up eating Meat. His Economy of Time. Studies Arithmetic. James Franklin estab- lishes a Newspaper. Benjamin writes for it. His Brother is imprisoned. Benjamin manages the Paper. Leaves his Brother. Goes to New York Sails thence for Philadelphia. Anecdote of the Dutchman.	19
---	----

CHAPTER III.

His Journey. His Dinner with the old Ginger- bread Woman. Arrives in Philadelphia. Anec- dote of the Rolls. Attends the Meeting House of the Quakers. Suspected of being a Runaway. Employed by Keimer. Noticed by Governor Keith. Visit to Boston. Return.	27
---	----

CHAPTER IV.

Finds his Friend Collins in New York. Visit to the Governor. Promises from Governor Keith. Pro- ject of a new religious Sect. Anecdote of Keimer and the roast Pig. His principal Acquaintance. A literary Trick. Prepares to go to London. The Governor's Deception. Arrival in London.	35
--	----

CHAPTER V.

- Troubled by his Friend Ralph. Obtains Employment. Ralph turns Schoolmaster, and begins an Epic Poem. Franklin teaches some of his Friends to swim. Anecdote of Mr. Denham. Return to Philadelphia. Story of George Webb. Franklin quarrels with Keimer. Returns to work for him. Employed at Burlington. Leaves Keimer..... 43

CHAPTER VI.

- The Junto. A new Paper started by Keimer. Franklin purchases it. Difficulties in their Business. A Dissolution of the Partnership. Franklin assisted by his Friends. David Harry. Match-making. Marriage with Miss Read..... 50

CHAPTER VII.

- Library of the Junto. A public Library established. Franklin studies. His Frugality. Anecdote of the Bowl and Spoon. His Scheme of arriving at Moral Perfection. Table of Precepts. Franklin's Remarks upon it. Poor Richard's Almanac. 57

CHAPTER VIII.

- Management of his Newspaper. Study of the Languages. Chess-playing. The Preacher Hemphill. Stealing Sermons. Visit to Boston Visits his Brother James at Newport. Usefulness of the Junto. Formation of new Clubs. Franklin chosen Clerk of the General Assembly. Anecdote..... 65

CHAPTER IX.

- Reform of the City Watch. Fire Companies. Rev. Mr. Whitefield. Effects of his Preaching. His Project of building an Orphan House in Georgia. Anecdotes. Franklin's Opinion of him. Franklin's Prosperity. Military Defence of the Province. Formation of Companies..... 72

CHAPTER X.

Anecdote. William Penn. Education of Youth. Subscription for an Academy. Franklin overloaded with public Offices. Member of the Assembly. Treaty with the Indians at Carlisle. Public Hospital. Anecdote.....	8½
---	----

CHAPTER XI.

Spence's Experiments in Electricity. Franklin repeats them. Makes important Discoveries. Letters to Collinson. Experiment with the Kite. Publication of his Letters. Anecdote of the Abbé Nollet. Fame of Franklin. Elected a Member of the Royal Society.	90
---	----

CHAPTER XII.

Appointed Postmaster-General. Journey to New England. Receives Degrees from two Colleges. Story of the Visit to his Mother.....	97
---	----

CHAPTER XIII.

Congress at Albany. Plan for a Union of the Colonies. Arrival of General Braddock. Franklin sent to him by the Assembly. Want of Wagons. Franklin undertakes to procure them. His Advertisement. Anecdote of Braddock. Battle with the Indians. Retreat.	105
---	-----

CHAPTER XIV.

Settlement for the Loss of Wagons. Anecdote. Preparations for Defence. Franklin appointed to a military Command. Assembles the Troops at Bethlehem. Farmers killed by Indians. Building Forts. Extracts from Franklin's Journal. Indian Cunning. Anecdotes of the Moravians.....	113
--	-----

CHAPTER XV.

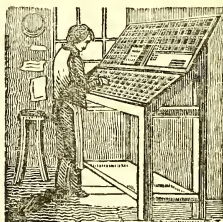
Disputes with the Proprietaries. Franklin sent by the Assembly to London. Appointed general Agent for the Colonies. University Honors. The Armonica. Murder of the friendly Indians.....	124
--	-----

CHAPTER XVI.

Franklin reappointed Agent at the Court of Great Britain. Visits Germany and France. Returns to Philadelphia. Appointed Delegate to Congress. Interview with Lord Howe. Sent as Ambassador to France. Asks to be recalled. Chosen President of the Supreme Council of Philadelphia. Death. Character..... 130

ESSAYS OF DR. FRANKLIN.

The Whistle.....	136
Handsome and Deformed Leg.....	138
Advice to a young Tradesman.....	142
Necessary Hints to those that would be rich.....	145
Paper, a Poem.....	146
On the art of Swimming.....	149
Preliminary Address to the Pennsylvania Almanac, entitled, "Poor Richard's Almanac, for the year 1758."	153
Observations on War.....	167
The Way to make Money plenty in every Man's Pocket.....	169
Morals of Chess.....	171
Conversation of a Company of Ephemeræ.....	177



LIFE OF FRANKLIN.

CHAPTER I.

Birth of Franklin. Early Education. Anecdote. Choice of a Trade. He is placed with a Culler. His Fondness for Reading. Bound Apprentice to his Brother. Makes a couple of Ballads. His Friend Collins. Reads the Spectator.

1. BENJAMIN FRANKLIN was born in Boston, New England, on the seventeenth of January, 1706. He was the youngest son in a family of seventeen children. His elder brothers were, at an early age, put apprentices to different trades; for their father was a man of honest industry, but with little or no property, and unable to support the expense of keeping them long at school.

2. Benjamin, however, was intended for the church, and at eight years of age was put to a gram-

1. Where was Franklin born? When? 2. For what profession did his parents intend to educate him?

mar school. His readiness in learning, and his attention to study, confirmed the first intention of his parents. The plan also met with the approbation of his uncle Benjamin, who promised to give him some volumes of sermons that he had taken down in short hand, from the lips of the most eminent preachers of the day.

3. He continued at the grammar school, however, only about a year, though he had risen to the head of his class, and promised to be a very fine scholar. His father was burthened with a numerous family, and could not carry him through a course of college education. He accordingly changed his first purpose, and sent Benjamin to a school for writing and arithmetic, kept by Mr. George Brownwell.

4. This master was quite skilful in his profession, being mild and kind to his scholars, but very successful in teaching them. Benjamin learned to write a good hand in a short time, but he could not manage arithmetic so easily. At ten years of age he was taken from school to help his father in the business of a tallow-chandler; and was employed in cutting the wick for the candles, going errands, and tending the shop.

5. Benjamin disliked the trade, and had a strong inclination to go to sea; but his father opposed his wishes in this respect, and determined to keep him at home. The house in which he lived happened

3. What induced his father to change his intention? 4. To what trade was Benjamin put, and when?

to be near the water, and Benjamin was always playing with boats, and swimming. When sailing with other boys, he was usually the leader, and he confesses that he sometimes led them into difficulties.

6. There was a salt marsh which bounded part of the mill-pond, on the edge of which the boys used to stand to fish for minnows. They had trampled it so much, however, as to make it a mere quagmire. Franklin proposed to his friends to build a wharf there, for them to stand upon ; and showed them a large heap of stones, which were intended for a new house near the marsh, and would answer their purpose exactly.

7. Accordingly, that evening, when the workmen were gone home, he assembled a number of his playfellows, and they worked diligently, like so many emmets, sometimes two or three to a stone, till they had brought them all to make their little wharf. On the next morning, the workmen were surprised on missing the stones. The authors of the removal were detected, complained of, and punished by their parents. Franklin attempted to show the usefulness of their work ; but his father took that occasion to convince him, that *that which was not truly honest could not be truly useful*.

8. Benjamin continued employed in the business

6. Relate the anecdote about Franklin and his companions. 7. What maxim did his father teach him in consequence of this adventure ?

of his father about two years, that is, till he was twelve years old. His brother John, who had also been brought up to the trade, had left his father, married, and set up for himself in Rhode Island. There was now every appearance that Benjamin was destined to become a tallow-chandler. As his dislike to the trade continued, his father was afraid that, if he did not put Benjamin to one that was more agreeable, he would run away, and go to sea, as an elder brother of his had done. In consequence of this apprehension, he used to take him to walk, to see joiners, bricklayers, turners and braziers at their work, that he might observe his inclination, and fix it on some trade or profession that would keep him on land.

9. His father at length determined on the cutler's trade, and placed him for some days on trial with his cousin Samuel, who was bred to that trade in London, and had just established himself in Boston. It was then usual to ask a sum of money for receiving an apprentice, and the cutler charged so much for taking Benjamin, that his father was displeased, and put him to his old business again.

10. From his infancy Benjamin had been passionately fond of reading; and all the money that he could get was laid out in purchasing books. He was very fond of voyages and travels. The dangers

8. What were his father's fears in relation to his new occupation ?
9. On what trade did his father finally determine ? 10. Describe his early fondness for reading, and the books of which he was most fond

and adventures of sailors in the different parts of the world, and stories of the strange people and customs they met with, he would always read with delight.

11. The first books that he was able to buy were the works of a famous old English writer, named John Bunyan. These he afterwards sold, in order to purchase some volumes of Historical Collections. His father's library consisted principally of works on divinity, most of which he read at an early age. Beside these, there was a book by De Foe, the author of Robinson Crusoe; and another called *An Essay to do Good*, by Dr. Mather, an old New England divine.

12. This fondness for books at length determined his father to bring him up as a printer, though he had already one son in that employment. In 1717, this son returned from England with a press and letters to set up his business in Boston. Benjamin liked this trade much better than that of his father, but still had a desire to go to sea. To prevent this step, his father was impatient to have him bound apprentice to his brother, and at length persuaded him to consent to it.

13. He was to serve as apprentice till he was twenty-one years of age, and during the last year was to be allowed the wages of a journeyman. In a little time, he made great progress in the business,

11. What books did he first buy? 12. What induced his father to bring up Benjamin as a printer? To whom was he bound apprentice? 13. How did he succeed in his new trade?



Franklin reading at night.

and became quite useful. He was now able to obtain better books. An acquaintance with the apprentices of the booksellers sometimes enabled him to borrow a small one, which he was careful to return clean and in good season. He often sat up in his chamber the greater part of the night, to read a book that he was obliged to return in the morning.

14. After some time, an ingenious and sensible merchant, Mr. Matthew Adams, who had a pretty collection of books, took notice of Franklin at the printing office, and invited him to see his library. He very kindly offered to lend him any work that he might like to read.

15. He now took a strong inclination for poetry, and wrote some little pieces. His brother supposed that he might use this talent to advantage, and encouraged him to cultivate it. About this time, he produced two ballads. One was called the Lighthouse Tragedy, and contained an account of the shipwreck of Captain Worthilake, with his two daughters; the other was a sailor's song, on the taking of the famous Blackbeard, the pirate.

16. They were written in the doggerel street-ballad style, and when they were printed, his brother sent Benjamin about the town to sell them. The first sold very rapidly, as the event on which it was founded had recently occurred, and made a great

What advantages did it afford him for pursuing his studies? 15. Relate the account of his first attempts in poetry. 16. How did his ballads succeed?

deal of noise. This success flattered his vanity very much, but his father discouraged him by criticising **his** ballads, and telling him that verse-makers were generally beggars.

17. This prevented him from giving any further attention to poetry, and led him to devote more time and care to prose compositions. He was at this time intimately acquainted with another lad very fond of books, named John Collins. They sometimes discussed different questions together, and had become very apt to indulge in arguments and disputes.

18. A question was once started between them on the propriety of educating the female sex in learned studies, and their abilities for these studies. As they parted without settling the point, and were not to see one another again for a long time, Franklin sat down to put his arguments in writing. He then made a fair copy of them, and sent it to Collins.

19. Three or four letters passed between them on the subject, when the father of Franklin happened to find the papers, and read them. Without entering into the subject in dispute, he took occasion to talk to him about his manner of writing. He marked the defects in his expressions, and in the arrangement of his sentences, but gave him the credit of spelling and pointing with great correct-

How did his father discourage his new taste ? 18. What was the subject of his discussion with his friend Collins ? 19. What praise and advice did his father give him on this occasion ?

ness. This he had learned in the printing office, but he had never before been taught any thing about manner and style.

20. About this time, he met with an odd volume of the *Spectator*, a very famous work, published by several English wits in the year 1711. He bought it, read it over and over, and was much delighted with it. This book was now his continual study, and he himself tried to write as much as possible in its very pleasant and popular style. The improvement which he made was encouraging, and led him to hope he might some day become a good English writer; a distinction of which he was very ambitious.

CHAPTER II.

Franklin gives up eating Meat. His Economy of Time. Studies Arithmetic. James Franklin establishes a Newspaper. Benjamin writes for it. His Brother is imprisoned. Benjamin manages the Paper. Leaves his Brother. Goes to New York. Sails thence for Philadelphia. Aneedote of the Dutchman.

1. WHEN about sixteen years of age, Franklin happened to meet with a book that recommended a vegetable diet. He determined to adopt it. His

20. With what book was Franklin at this time so much pleased ? Did he attempt to imitate it ?

1. What induced Franklin to adopt a vegetable diet ?

brother, being unmarried, did not keep house, but boarded himself and his apprentices in another family. By refusing to eat meat, Franklin occasioned a good deal of inconvenience; and he was frequently chid for his singularity. He accordingly learned the manner of boiling potatoes and rice, and of making hasty-pudding, and then proposed to his brother, if he would give him, weekly, half the money he paid for his board, to board himself. His brother instantly agreed to it, and Franklin soon found that he could save half of what he received.

2. This was a new fund for buying books. But this was not the only advantage. When his brother and the apprentices had gone to their meals, he was left in the printing office alone. He immediately despatched his slight repast, which was often no more than a biscuit, or a slice of bread and a handful of raisins, or a tart from the pastry cook's, and a glass of water, and had the rest of the time till their return for study. By being thus economical of his time, he was able to make considerable progress in his books.

3. He now began to feel the want of a knowledge of figures, and was once very much mortified by his ignorance of them. As he had entirely failed of learning them at school, he took Cocker's Arithmetic, and went through the whole of it by himself

What arrangement did he make with his brother on this account? 2. What advantage resulted from this? Describe Benjamin's economy of time. 3. How did he learn arithmetic?

with the greatest ease. The mortification he had met with induced him to make great exertions; and we can succeed in any thing to which we give our earnest attention.

4. While he was intent on improving his language and style, Franklin met with an English grammar, at the end of which were two little sketches on the arts of rhetoric and logic. The latter of these finished with a dispute in the manner of Socrates, a very famous philosopher of Greece. Franklin was charmed with this modest and artful manner, and cured himself of the tricks of contradiction and too much positiveness. These habits are very disagreeable, and no one should allow himself to fall into them.

5. "In fact, if you wish to instruct others," says Franklin, "a positive and dogmatical manner in advancing your sentiments may occasion opposition, and prevent a candid attention. If you desire improvement from others, you should not at the same time express yourself fixed in your present opinions. Modest and sensible men, who do not love disputation, will leave you undisturbed in the possession of your errors. In adopting such a manner, you can seldom expect to please your hearers, or obtain the concurrence you desire."

6. In the year 1720, or '21, James Franklin be

4. With what treatise was Franklin so much pleased? Of what disagreeable habits did it cure him? 5. What advice does he give on the manner of conversation?

gan to print a newspaper. It was the second that appeared in America, and was called the *New England Courant*. The only one before it was the *Boston News Letter*. Some of his friends endeavored to dissuade him from the undertaking. They thought it would not succeed, as, in their opinion, one newspaper was sufficient for all America. There are now in the United States alone, over eight hundred newspapers.

7. The undertaking, however, went on. Benjamin assisted in setting the types, helped to print off the sheets, and was then employed in carrying the papers to the subscribers. Several men of information and talents wrote little pieces for the paper, which were amusing, and gained considerable credit. These gentlemen often visited the printing office.

8. Hearing their conversations, and their accounts of the praise their pieces received from the public, Benjamin was excited to try his fortune among them. He was afraid, however, as he was still a boy, his brother would object to print any thing of his composition in the paper. It was necessary, therefore, to disguise his hand-writing, and to send his piece to the office in such a way that it should not be known from whom it came.

9. When his friends came in, James showed them the communication from an unknown writer. They

6. Who printed the second newspaper in New England? What was it called? 7. How was Benjamin connected with it? 8. What first induced him to write for it? Describe his first attempt.

read it, praised it, and made several guesses as to the author. In these guesses none were named but men of some character for talents and learning. They never once suspected it was written by the little printer's boy who stood at their elbows, chuckling in silence over the secret.

10. Encouraged by the success of this attempt, he continued to write, and send other pieces in the same way to the press. He kept his secret as long as he saw fit, and then confessed himself the author of the writings they had been so long guessing about. Benjamin now began to be more noticed by his brother's acquaintance, which made him a little vain, and led to some serious difficulties.

11. His brother, notwithstanding the relationship between them, considered himself as master, and Benjamin as his apprentice, and accordingly expected the same services from him that he would from another. In some of these services the young printer felt himself degraded, and thought that he should receive greater indulgence. His brother was passionate, and frequently beat him; and, finding the apprenticeship exceedingly tedious, Benjamin was looking forward for an opportunity to shorten it. This at length happened in a very unexpected manner.

12. One of the pieces in the paper, on some po-

9. How was his communication received? 10. What was the consequence of his success? 11. What were the difficulties between the brothers?

litical subject, gave offence to the Assembly, one of the most important branches of the government of Massachusetts. James Franklin was taken up, censured, and imprisoned for a month, because he would not discover the author. Benjamin was also called up and examined before the council ; but, considering him as an apprentice, who was bound to keep his master's secret, they dismissed him without punishment.

13. During his brother's confinement, Benjamin had the management of the paper, and indulged in very smart remarks upon the government. This pleased his brother, though it made others look upon him in an unfavorable light, as a youth who had a turn for satire and libeling. The discharge of the imprisoned printer was accompanied with an order that "James Franklin should no longer print the newspaper called the New England Courant."

14. On a consultation held at the printing office, it was proposed to change the name of the paper, and in this manner elude the order of the council. As there were many difficulties in the way of this project, it was determined to let the paper for the future be printed in the name of BENJAMIN FRANKLIN.

15. When apprentices are bound out, it is usual to have certain agreements drawn up between them

12. What happened at this time to James Franklin ? 13. How did Benjamin conduct the paper ? What was the order of the council ? 14. How was it evaded ? 15. What is the custom in binding out apprentices ?

and their masters, sealed and signed according to certain forms required by law. These papers are called indentures. James was afraid that the censure of the Assembly would fall on him, as still printing the paper by his apprentice, and contrived that his old indenture should be returned to Benjamin, with a discharge on the back of it.

16. This was to be shown only in case of necessity ; and in order to secure his services for the remainder of the time, it was agreed that Benjamin should sign new indentures. These were to be kept private. This was a very flimsy scheme, but the paper continued to be printed in this manner for several months. At length fresh difficulties arose, and Benjamin determined to take advantage of his discharge ; thinking that his brother would be afraid to produce the new indentures. It was unfair to take this advantage, but he was urged to it by very unkind and even cruel treatment.

17. When his brother found out his intentions, he went round to every master printer in town to prevent his getting employment. In consequence of this, he concluded to remove to New York ; that being the nearest place where there was another printer. His father opposed his removal, and took side with his brother in the dispute. Benjamin sold his books to furnish the means of paying his passage,

How was Benjamin discharged from his indentures ? 16. What unfair advantage did he take of this discharge ? 17. What course did his brother pursue on this occasion ? His father ? Benjamin ?

went privately on board of a sloop, had a fair wind, and in three days found himself in New York, three hundred miles from home, at the age of seventeen. There was no one in the place whom he knew; he was without any recommendations, and had very little money in his pocket.

18. By this time he had entirely lost all his love for the sea, or he might have been induced to gratify it. Having another profession, and considering himself a good workman, he offered his services to a printer of the place, old Mr. W. Bradford. This man had been the first printer in Pennsylvania, and had removed from there in consequence of a quarrel with the governor, General Keith.

19. He had a sufficient number of workmen, and little to do, and could give Franklin no employment. But he said, "My son, at Philadelphia, has lately lost his principal hand, Aquila Rose, by death, and if you go thither, I believe he may employ you."

20. Philadelphia was one hundred miles farther, but Franklin concluded to go there. In crossing the bay, a squall struck the little vessel he was in, and tore her rotten sails to pieces. She was driven upon Long Island.

21. On the way, a drunken Dutchman, who was a passenger in the boat, tumbled overboard. As he was sinking, Franklin reached out and caught him

18. To whom did he apply for employment? 19. With what success? 20. Where did he determine to go? 21. What is the anecdote of the Dutchman?

by a very bushy head of hair, and drew him up again. This sobered him a little, and he went to sleep, having first taken a book out of his pocket, which he desired Franklin to dry for him. It proved to be a Dutch copy of his old favorite book, *Bunyan's Pilgrim's Progress*, and he carefully complied with the wish of the sleepy owner.

CHAPTER III.

His Journey. His Dinner with the old Gingerbread Woman. Arrives in Philadelphia. Anecdote of the Rolls. Attends the Meeting House of the Quakers. Suspected of being a Runaway. Employed by Keimer. Noticed by Governor Keith. Visit to Boston. Return.

1. ON approaching the island, the crew found themselves in a place where there could be no landing, as it was a stony beach, and a violent surf was rolling. They cast anchor, and remained in that situation through the night. As the spray dashed over the boat, they were all, in a very short time, as wet as the unfortunate Dutchman. The wind went down on the next morning, and they were able to reach Amboy before night; having been thirty hours on the water, without victuals, or any drink but a bottle of dirty rum.

2. In the evening, Franklin found himself fever-

1. What was the situation of the crew on the water?

ish, and went to bed. As he drank plentifully of cold water, his fever left him, and in the morning he proceeded on his journey. After crossing the ferry, he travelled on foot, notwithstanding a violent rain, till noon. Being now thoroughly soaked and tired, he stopped at a poor inn, where he spent the remainder of the day, and all night. —

3. He now began to wish that he had never left home. His prospect of procuring employment, even when he should arrive at Philadelphia, was uncertain. He thought of the distress his sudden disappearance must have occasioned to his parents. Besides all this, he made such a sorry figure that he was suspected of being a runaway servant, and in danger of being taken up on that suspicion.

4. On the next day, however, he continued his journey, and arrived that night at an inn, within eight or ten miles of Burlington. The next morning he reached Burlington, where he expected to find boats to sail immediately for Philadelphia. It was Saturday, and he had the mortification to find that the regular boats had just gone, and that no others were expected to sail before Tuesday.

5. Franklin returned to the shop of an old woman, of whom he had bought some gingerbread to eat on his passage, and asked her where he had better go to find lodgings. She proposed to lodge him in her

2. How did Franklin pursue his journey? 3. What were his fears? 5. Describe the treatment Franklin received from the old woman.

own house, till a passage, by some other boat, offered itself. He accepted the invitation, and dined with the old woman that day on ox-cheek. All that she would take in return was a pot of ale.

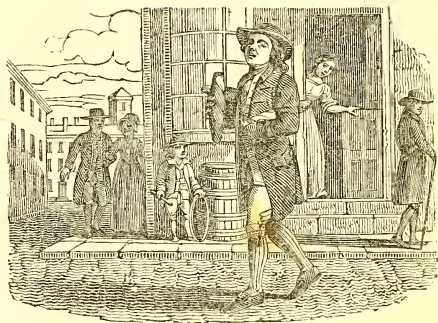
6. Franklin had supposed himself fixed till the next Tuesday, but as he was walking, in the evening, by the side of the river, a boat passed by, with several people, going to Philadelphia. They took him in, and proceeded on their voyage. The weather was very calm, without a breath of wind stirring. They were obliged to row all the way. Reaching Philadelphia about eight or nine o'clock on Sunday morning, they landed at Market street wharf.

7. Our young traveller had sent his best clothes by another conveyance from New York, and he was in his old working dress. His pockets were stuffed out with shirts and stockings, and he knew not where to look for lodgings. He was tired with walking, rowing, and want of sleep, and was, besides, very hungry. His whole stock of cash was a single silver dollar and about a shilling in copper coin. The copper he gave to the boatmen for his passage.

8. As he walked along the street, gazing at the new things he saw, and wondering what would be the end of his trouble, he met a boy with some bread. Inquiring where he had bought it, Franklin went immediately to the place where he was directed,

6. How did he get to Philadelphia? 7. Describe his appearance on his first arrival there.

LIFE OF FRANKLIN



Franklin walking in the streets of Philadelphia

and asked for three-pence worth of bread. He received three large puffy rolls, and, having no room in his pockets, walked off, with a roll under each arm, and eating the third.

9. In this manner he walked up Market street, as far as Fourth street, passing by the house of Mr. Read, whose daughter he afterwards married. This young lady was standing at the door as he went by, and probably thought he made rather an awkward appearance. After walking about the streets some time, eating his roll, he found himself again in the neighborhood of the wharf where he had landed. He went on board of the boat, and gave his two remaining rolls to a woman and child that had been his fellow-passengers down the river.

10. He again walked up the street, which was, by that time, filled with a large number of neat, well-dressed people, who were all walking the same way. He joined them, and was led into the great meeting house of the Quakers, near the market. Sitting down among them, he looked round awhile, and, as nothing was said, fell fast asleep from drowsiness. His nap continued till the meeting broke up, when some one was kind enough to awake him.

11. He then walked down towards the river, and meeting a young Quaker, whose countenance pleased him, he asked where a stranger could get lodgings. They were then near a house with the sign of the Three Mariners. "Here," said the

Quaker, "is a house where they receive strangers, but it is not a reputable one; if thou wilt walk with me, I'll show thee a better." He conducted Franklin to the Crooked Billet, in Water street.

12. There he dined, and during the dinner several questions were put to him, by persons who supposed him to be a runaway. On the next morning, he dressed himself as neatly as he could, and went to see Andrew Bradford, the printer. Here he found the old gentleman, whom he had met in New York, and who, travelling on horseback, had got to Philadelphia before him.

13. Mr. Bradford received him very kindly, but, as he was not at that time in want of a hand, could only recommend him to a printer, who had lately set up in town, by the name of Keimer. This man had then nothing for him to do, but promised him employment soon. Meanwhile, he was invited to lodge with Mr. Bradford, and to assist when there was any extra work in the printing office.

14. Franklin soon found that neither of the printers knew any thing about their business. Keimer was, before long, able to give him constant employment. He did not like, however, that any one should live with his rival, Bradford, while he worked for him. Lodgings were, therefore, procured for Franklin, with Mr. Read, whose house he had passed on his first arrival, while eating his roll.

11. Where did he first lodge in Philadelphia? 13. Where did he obtain employment?

15. He had now made some acquaintances about town, and passed his time very pleasantly. By industry and frugality he gained money, and gave up all thoughts of returning to Boston. The governor of the province, Sir William Keith, had accidentally become acquainted with him, and was desirous that he should set up in business for himself, in Philadelphia. He promised to procure for him the public printing of the government, and to assist him, as much as possible, by his influence and patronage.

16. It was concluded that Franklin should return to Boston, with a letter from the governor, to prevail upon his father to assist him in the establishment. Towards the end of April, in 1724, he left Philadelphia for this purpose.

17. He sailed in a little vessel that was bound for Boston, and, in about a fortnight, was safe in his father's house. His sudden appearance surprised the family very much, but they were all delighted to see him, and treated him with great kindness.

18. Soon after his arrival, he paid a visit to his brother, at the printing office. He had on a new suit of clothes, wore a watch, and had about five pounds, in silver, in his pockets. Feeling rather elated by the success he had met with, he made quite a display of all his good fortune before his brother's apprentices and journeymen, and ended

15. How did Franklin succeed, and how did he pass his time ? What was the promise of Sir William Keith ? 16. Why did Franklin go to Boston ? 18. Describe his visit to his brother.

by giving them a dollar to drink his health with. This visit offended his brother very much, for he thought it was intended to mortify him.

19. The letter of the governor was without any effect. His father was very glad that Benjamin had been able to gain the confidence of so eminent a man, but would not consent to his request. He wrote a civil letter, thanking Sir William for his promise of patronage, but saying, that his son was altogether too young to be intrusted with the management of so important and expensive an undertaking.

20. Franklin gave so pleasant an account of Philadelphia, that his old friend Collins determined to go on and try his fortune there. Seeing no prospect of restoring harmony between the two brothers, his father consented that Benjamin should return to Philadelphia. He advised him to steady industry and frugality, and promised to assist in setting him up in business, when he should reach the age of twenty-one. With the approbation and blessing of his parents to follow him, he embarked for New York, on the way to his future home.

19. How did his father receive the governor's letter? 20. What were his advice and promise to Benjamin?

CHAPTER IV.

Finds his Friend Collins in New York. Visit to the Governor. Promises from Governor Keith. Project of a new religious Sect. Anecdote of Keimer and the roast Pig. His principal Acquaintance. A literary Trick. Prepares to go to London. The Governor's Deception. Arrival in London.

1. AT New York Franklin found his friend Collins, who had arrived there some time before him. They had been intimate from childhood, and he had been sober and industrious. But during Franklin's absence in Philadelphia, Collins had fallen into bad habits, and become a drunkard. He gamed, and lost his money, and borrowed of his friend, to pay his expenses on the road.

2. The governor of New York, hearing from the captain that one of his passengers had a great many books on board, requested that he might be brought to see him. Franklin, accordingly, waited upon him. He was received with great civility. The governor showed him his library, which was a considerable one, and they had a good deal of conversation about books and authors. This attention was very pleasing to Franklin.

3. When they arrived at Philadelphia, Collins

1. What happened to his friend Collins? 2. What attention did Franklin receive from the governor of New York?

continued to drink, and was, consequently, unable to procure any business. He continued to borrow money of Franklin, and finally quarrelled with him, and went to the West Indies. Franklin never heard of him afterwards.

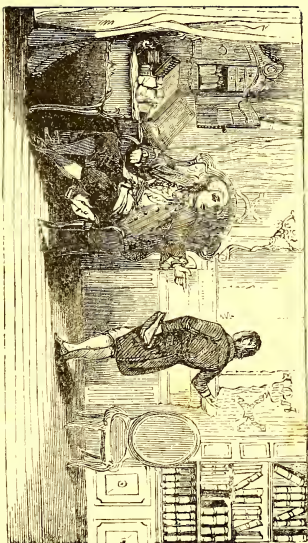
4. Sir William Keith received the young printer, on his return, with a great show of kindness, and large promises. "Since your father will not set you up," he said to him, "I will do it myself. Give me a list of the things necessary to be had from England, and I will send for them. You shall repay me when you are able. I am resolved to have a good printer here, and I am sure you must succeed." This was spoken with an air of perfect sincerity, and Franklin had not the least doubt but that he meant what he said.

5. He accordingly made a list of all the articles that would be wanted for a printing house, the cost of which was about one hundred pounds. The governor liked it, and asked whether it would not be well for him to go to England himself, in order to select the types, and see that every thing was of the best kind. "When there," he added, "you may make acquaintance, and establish correspondence in the bookselling and stationery way."

6. Franklin thought that it might be advantageous. "Then," said he, "get yourself ready 'o go in the *Annis*," which was the annual ship, and

4. What was Sir William Keith's conduct? 5. What was the proposed visit to England?

FRANKLIN VISITING THE GOVERNOR.



at that time the only one passing between London and Philadelphia. But, as it would be some months before the Annis sailed, Franklin continued to work with Keimer.

7. They agreed together very well, and lived on quite a familiar footing. Franklin used sometimes to argue with his master, and would most frequently beat him. This gave him so great an idea of Franklin's ability in disputation, that he proposed to him to become his assistant in a new religious sect which he proposed to establish. One was to preach the doctrines, and the other to confound all opponents.

8. When they came to explain with each other upon their doctrines, Keimer was desirous of introducing certain customs, which did not entirely meet the wishes of his colleague. Among other things, he wore his beard at full length; because, somewhere in the Mosaic law, it is said, "Thou shalt not mar the corners of thy beard." He likewise kept the seventh day sabbath, instead of the first; and both of these points he considered essential.

9. Franklin disliked both, but agreed to them on condition of his adopting the doctrine not to use animal food. Keimer was a great eater, and was not much pleased with the idea of being starved; but he consented to try the practice a few weeks and see how it agreed with his constitution.

7. What started the scheme of a new sect? 8. Why did it fail?

10. They held to this plan for three months. Their provisions were purchased, cooked, and brought to them regularly by a woman in the neighborhood, who prepared, at different times, forty dishes, in which there were neither fish, flesh, nor fowl. Franklin went on well enough, but poor Keimer suffered grievously, grew tired of the project, and ordered a roast pig. He invited some friends to dine with him upon the occasion, but the pig being brought too soon upon the table, he could not resist the temptation, but ate the whole before his company came.

11. During this time, Franklin had contracted an affection for Miss Read, and believed that she was not altogether indifferent in her feelings towards him. As he was about to take a long voyage, however, and as they were both very young, her mother thought it most prudent to defer the matter till his return from England.

12. His chief acquaintance, at this period, were Charles Osborne, Joseph Watson, and James Ralph, all lovers of reading. In one of their meetings, it was proposed that at a certain time each of them should produce a piece of his own composition, in order to improve, by mutual observations and corrections. They agreed that this task should be to turn the eighteenth psalm into verse.

10. Relate the anecdote of Keimer and the roast pig. 12. Who were his chief acquaintance at this period? What was the task proposed among them?

13. When the time of the meeting drew nigh, Ralph called upon Franklin, and told him that his piece was ready. "Now," said he, "Osborne never will allow the least merit in any thing of mine, but makes a thousand criticisms, out of mere envy. I wish, therefore, you would take this piece and produce it as yours; we shall then hear what he will say to it."

14. It was agreed. At the meeting, Watson's performance was read first; there were some beauties in it and many defects. Osborne's piece was then read, and was much better. Ralph had nothing to produce. It was now Franklin's turn. He was backward, wished to be excused, but no excuse would be received. The piece he brought with him was read, and repeated. Osborne was delighted with it, and praised it in the highest terms.

15. As he was returning home with Ralph, he expressed himself still more strongly. "Who would have imagined," said he, "that Franklin was capable of such a performance! such painting, such force, such fire! He has even improved on the original. In common conversation he seems to have no choice of words; he hesitates and blunders; and yet how he writes!" When they next met, the trick was discovered, and Osborne was laughed at for praising Ralph, by mistake.

16. The governor sent for Franklin frequently to his house, and always spoke of setting him up in

14. What was the trick played upon Osborne?

business, as a settled thing. He was to be furnished with letters to the governor's friends in England, and with an order for the money to purchase a press, types, and paper. For these letters he was to call at a certain time, when they would be ready. They were delayed, however, again and again, till the ship was on the point of sailing.

17. When Franklin went to take leave, and receive the letters, the secretary came out and said, that the governor was very busy on business of importance, but that he would send the letters on board, wishing him a good voyage and a speedy return.

18. Understanding that despatches had been brought on board, from the governor, Franklin asked the captain for the letters that were to be under his care. The captain told him that they had all been put into the bag together, and he could not then come at them; but that before they landed in England, he should have an opportunity of picking them out. This satisfied him for the present, and he thought nothing more of it during the voyage.

19. When they arrived in the Channel, the captain kept his word, and permitted him to examine the bag, for the governor's letters. He found some upon which his name was put, and picked out six or seven, which he thought might be the promise letters. One of these was addressed to Basket, the king's printer, and another to some stationer.

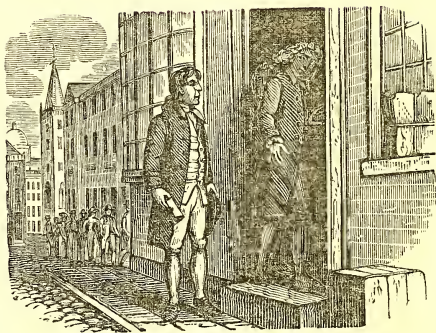
17. What was the conduct of the governor? 18. Did Franklin receive the letters promised by the governor?

20. They reached London on the twenty-fourth of December, 1724. Franklin waited upon the stationer, who came first in his way, and delivered the letter as from Governor Keith. "I don't know such a person," said he; but opening the letter—"O! this is from Riddlesden; I have lately found him to be a complete rascal, and I will have nothing to do with him, nor receive any letters from him." Returning the letter, he turned upon his heel and went to wait upon some customer.

21. It turned out that the governor had sent no letters by Franklin, but had completely deceived him. With no intention of giving him any assistance, he had blinded him with brilliant promises and false hopes. But Franklin was able to assist himself. He determined to procure employment among the printers in London, and acquire a thorough knowledge of his profession before he returned to America.

20. What was the fate of Franklin's first letter of introduction?

21. What course did Franklin determine to pursue?



Franklin delivering his letter to the Stationer in London.

CHAPTER V.

Troubled by his Friend Ralph. Obtains Employment. Ralph turns Schoolmaster, and begins an Epic Poem. Franklin teaches some of his Friends to swim. Anecdote of Mr. Denham. Return to Philadelphia. Story of George Webb. Franklin quarrels with Keimer. Returns to work for him. Employed at Burlington. Leaves Keimer.

1. His friend Ralph had accompanied Franklin to London, and they were now inseparable companions. They took lodgings together, at three shillings and sixpence a week. Ralph appears to have been a conceited and helpless character, and made several attempts to get in the way of procuring a livelihood. But all his plans were unsuccessful.

2. Franklin immediately procured employment at an extensive printing house, where he remained nearly a year. He was diligent in work, but his shiftless companion consumed a good share of his earnings. His engagements with Miss Read he was thoughtless and heartless enough to forget, and never wrote to her but once during his absence. This conduct he afterwards considered among the greatest faults of his life.

3. Ralph finally determined to leave London, and

2. Where did Franklin procure employment? 3. What was the course of his friend Ralph?

take a school in the country. As he was very vain, and confident of rising to literary eminence, he was rather ashamed of what he was silly enough to consider a mean occupation. He accordingly changed his name, and took that of his companion; desiring him to address his letters to "Mr. Franklin, school-master."

4. Ralph continued to write, and, from time to time, troubled his friend with long extracts from an epic poem, which he was then composing, requesting his remarks and corrections. Franklin endeavored to discourage him from this undertaking, but in vain. Sheet after sheet continued to come by every post. Some difficulties at length broke out between the two friends, and Franklin was fortunately relieved of a burdensome dependent.

5. He now began to think of laying up a little money; and, in expectation of better employment, entered a still larger printing house, near Lincoln's Inn Fields. His new employer was named Watts. At this place he became acquainted with a man by the name of Wygate, who had been well educated, read French and Latin, and loved reading.

6. This man and a friend of his were desirous of learning to swim. Franklin had been an expert swimmer from his childhood, and was very fond of displaying his feats of activity in the water. He taught them to swim, after twice going into the river, and they soon became quite skilful. Wygate

soon became attached to Franklin, and, at length, proposed that they should travel all over Europe together, supporting themselves on the way by working at their trade. Franklin was inclined to this plan, but was dissuaded from it by his friend, Mr. Denham, who advised him to think of returning to Philadelphia.

7. Mr. Denham was an excellent man, and very kindly disposed towards Franklin. He had formerly been in business in Bristol, a city of England, but failing, and making a settlement with his creditors, he went to America. He had obtained a discharge from all his debts, by giving up all his property. By great industry and economy, he was able to acquire a large fortune, in a few years.

8. He had returned to England, in the same ship with Franklin, and immediately visited his old place of business. While here, he invited all his old creditors to an entertainment. He then thanked them for the easy settlement they had favored him with; and, when they expected nothing but the dinner, every man found, under his plate, an order on the banker, for the full amount of the unpaid remainder, with interest.

9. Mr. Denham was now about to return to Philadelphia, and proposed to take Franklin over as his clerk. He promised him, as soon as he became

6. What proposition did he make to Franklin? Why was not the plan carried into execution? 7. Who was Mr. Denham? & Describe his honorable conduct towards his old creditors. 9. What proposal did he make to Franklin?

acquainted with mercantile business, to promote him, and finally establish him in some profitable situation. The plan pleased Franklin, for he had become heartily tired of London, and was anxious to return home. A satisfactory arrangement was made, and Franklin took leave of printing, as he thought, forever.

10. He had thus spent about eighteen months in London, and, during this time, had increased his knowledge, though he had not improved his fortune. They sailed from Gravesend, near the mouth of the river Thames, on the 23d of July, and arrived in Philadelphia early in October. Franklin here found several alterations. Keith was no longer governor, and his place had been supplied by Major Gordon. Miss Read, despairing of his return, had been persuaded by her friends to marry a man by the name of Rogers, a worthless fellow, who left her, and ran away to the West Indies.

11. Mr. Denham took a store, and Franklin attended diligently to the business. Affairs were going on prosperously, when they were both taken violently ill, in the beginning of the year 1727. Mr. Denham died, after a long sickness, and Franklin was again thrown upon the world. He tried for some time to obtain a situation as a merchant's clerk, but, failing in this attempt, he again made an engagement with his old master, Keimer.

10. How long was Franklin in London? What changes had taken place during his absence? 11. How was Franklin again thrown upon the world? What employment did he obtain?

12. Keimer was anxious to obtain Franklin's services, as most of his hands were ignorant and needed his instruction. Among these workmen was George Webb, who had been an Oxford scholar, and whose story was an uncommon instance of opportunities neglected and thrown away.

13. He was about eighteen years of age. His birthplace was Gloucester, in England, where he was educated at a grammar school, and had been distinguished when they exhibited plays. From here, he was sent to Oxford, where he continued about a year, but not contentedly ; wishing, of all things, to see London, and become a player.

14. At length, receiving his quarterly allowance of fifteen guineas, instead of discharging his debts, he went out of town, hid his gown in a bush, and walked to London. When here, having no friend to advise him, he fell into bad company, soon spent his guineas, found no means of being introduced among the players, grew poor, pawned his clothes, and wanted bread.

15. Walking about the streets, very hungry, and not knowing what to do, a bill was put into his hands, offering immediate entertainment and encouragement to such as would bind themselves to serve in America. He went directly to sign the indentures, was put into the ship, and sailed without writing a line to his friends, to tell them what had become of him. As a companion, he was lively, witty, and

good-natured ; but idle, thoughtless, and imprudent to the last degree.

16. After continuing a while with Keimer, Franklin found that his services became every day of less importance. At length a trifle snapped their connection. A great noise happening near the printing office, Franklin put his head out of the window to see what was the matter. Keimer, being in the street, looked up, and called out to him, in a loud and angry tone, to mind his business. A number of neighbors, who were standing by, saw the insolent manner in which he was treated, and it vexed him exceedingly. An open quarrel ensued, and Franklin left the printing house.

17. Keimer was very desirous of persuading him to return ; and, as it was for the interest of both that harmony should be restored, the quarrel was soon forgotten. A job was now obtained in New Jersey, to print some paper money. Franklin contrived a copperplate press for the purpose, the first that had been seen in the country ; he also cut several ornaments and checks for the bills.

18. To execute this job, Franklin and his employer went to Burlington. They performed it to the satisfaction of the government, and received a large compensation. During his short residence here, Franklin made many acquaintance and

16. How did Franklin quarrel with Keimer ? 17. Who contrived the first copperplate press ever seen in this country ? 18. For what was he employed during his absence ? 19. How was Franklin thrown upon the world ? What employment did he obtain ?

friends. One of them was Isaac Decon, the surveyor-general, a shrewd, sagacious old man, who began, when young, by wheeling clay for the brick-makers. He learned to write after he was twenty-one years of age, afterwards learned surveying, and had now acquired, by his industry, a considerable property.

19. What had chiefly induced Franklin to return to Keimer, after his quarrel, was the persuasion of a fellow-workman, by the name of Meredith. The father of this young man had promised to advance money to establish him in business, in the ensuing spring, and he was desirous to set Franklin's skill against his own capital, and form a copartnership. The proposal was a fair one, and acceptable upon both sides.

20. A short time after their return from Burlington, the types that Meredith had ordered arrived from London. They settled with Keimer, and left him, by his consent, before he knew any thing about their project.

19. What induced Franklin to return to Keimer, after the separation? What was the proposal of Meredith? 20. When did they leave Keimer?

CHAPTER VI.

The Junto. A new Paper started by Keimer. Franklin purchases it. Difficulties in their Business. A Dissolution of the Partnership. Franklin assisted by his Friends. David Harry. Match-making. Marriage with Miss Read.

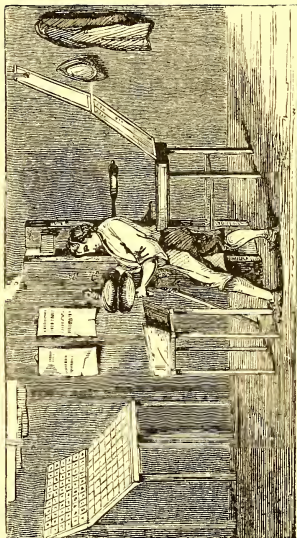
1. IN the autumn of the preceding year, Franklin had formed, among his acquaintance, a small club for mutual improvement, which they termed the Junto. They met on Friday evenings. The rules required that each member, in his turn, should produce one or more questions on any point of politics, morals or natural philosophy, to be discussed by the company, and once in three months produce and read an essay of his own writing on any subject he pleased.

2. This club answered many good purposes for a great length of time. It introduced better habits of conversation, and drew attention to the most interesting subjects of general inquiry. The members of the club now assisted in bringing business to the young printers. Their industry was unwearied, and soon began to be noticed by their neighbors. This gave them character and credit.

3. George Webb now came to offer them his services, as a journeyman. They were not then

1. What was the Junto? What did the rules of this club require? 2 What good purposes did it answer?





FRANKLIN IN HIS PRINTING OFFICE.

able to give him employment, but Franklin let him know, as a secret, that he soon intended to begin a newspaper, and would then probably have work for him. He told him his plan and expectations. His hopes of success were founded on this; that the only newspaper at that time printed there, by Bradford, was a miserable affair, badly managed, not entertaining, and yet profitable.

4. Franklin requested Webb not to mention the project; but he told it to Keimer, who immediately issued proposals for publishing one himself. This vexed Franklin, and, as he was at that time unable to commence his paper, he wrote several amusing pieces for Bradford, under the title of the *BUSY BODY*, which were continued by one of his friends for several months. By this means the attention of the public was fixed on that paper, and Keimer's proposals were neglected. He began his paper, however, and carried it on about nine months, with only ninety subscribers. At this time, he offered it, at a very low price, to Franklin, who purchased it, and in a few years made it very profitable.

5. The partnership still continued, though the whole management of the business was confided to Franklin. Meredith knew very little about setting types, or working at the press, and was seldom sober. The connection between them was to be

3. What project did Franklin communicate to George Webb?

4. What was the consequence of this communication? What course did Franklin pursue?

regretted, on many accounts, but Meredith had established the business, and it was now necessary to make the best of it.

6. Their first papers made a better appearance than any that had been before printed in the province. The number of subscribers continually increased, and the leading men found it convenient to oblige and encourage the printers. Bradford still printed the votes, and laws, and public documents; but this business soon fell into the hands of Franklin.

7. A difficulty now occurred, which had been little expected. Mr. Meredith's father, who was to have paid for the printing house, was able to advance only one hundred pounds; and one hundred more were due to the merchant, who became impatient, and sued them all. They gave bail, but unless the money could have been raised in season, they must have sold their press and types, for payment.

8. In this distress, two friends came forward to Franklin, and offered to advance the money, if he would discontinue the partnership with Meredith. Each made the proposition separately, and without the knowledge of the other. These friends were William Coleman and Robert Grace. Franklin told them that he considered himself under obligations to the Merediths, and if they should be able to

6. How did the paper succeed under Franklin's management? 7. What difficulty arose at this time? 8. Who offered Franklin their assistance?

fulfil their part of the agreement, he could not think of proposing a separation. If they should finally fail in their performance, and the partnership should be dissolved, he would then think himself at liberty to accept the assistance of his friends.

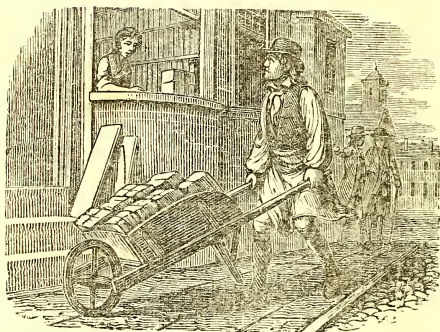
9. Meredith finally proposed a dissolution of the partnership. Franklin consented, and the whole business was left in his hands. He then recurred to his friends, and took half of what he wanted from one, and half from the other. The separation was then publicly advertised, the old debts were paid off, and the business went on in the name of Franklin. This was in or about the year 1729.

10. He now obtained several jobs from the government, and was employed in printing the paper money. A stationer's shop was soon added to his establishment, and he began to pay off gradually the debt he was under for the printing house. In order to secure his character and credit as a tradesman, he was not only industrious and frugal in reality, but avoided any appearance to the contrary. He dressed plainly, and was seen at no places of amusement. To show that he was not above his business, he himself sometimes brought home, on a wheel-barrow, the paper he purchased at the stores.

11. Being thus considered an industrious and thriving young man, the merchants who imported

9 What did Meredith propose? How was Franklin relieved?

10 Describe the increase of his business, and his character and conduct as a tradesman



Franklin taking home his paper.

stationery were desirous of his custom. Others proposed supplying him with books, and he went on prosperously. In the mean time, Keimer's business and credit declined daily, and he was at last obliged to sell his printing house, to satisfy his creditors. He went to Barbadoes, and there lived, some years, in great poverty.

12. An apprentice of Keimer's, David Harry, bought his materials, and set up, in his place, in Philadelphia. His friends were rich, and possessed considerable influence, and Franklin was afraid that he would find Harry a powerful rival. He, therefore, proposed a partnership, which was fortunately rejected. Harry was proud, dressed and lived expensively, neglected his business, and ran in debt. Losing credit, and finding nothing to do, he followed Keimer to Barbadoes, taking his printing materials with him. Here he employed his old master as a journeyman, and was at last obliged to sell his types and return to work in Philadelphia.

13. There now remained no other printer in the place but Bradford. He, however, was rich and easy, and was not anxious about doing much business. His situation as post-master, at that time, was supposed to give him some advantages in obtaining news, and distributing the papers; and he was, on that account, able to procure a great many more

11. What became of Keimer? 12. Who was David Harry? What became of him? 13. Who was now the only rival of Franklin?

advertisements than Franklin. This was of great service to Bradford, and prevented his rival from gaining upon him so rapidly as he otherwise would have done.

14. Franklin had hitherto boarded with Mr. Godfrey, a glazier, who was very much distinguished for his knowledge of mathematics. The wife of Mr. Godfrey was desirous of making a match for the young printer, and fixed upon the daughter of a neighbor, as a suitable person. She contrived, in several ways, to bring them together, and at length Franklin made proposals of marriage.

15. Franklin appears to have been equally prudent and cautious in this affair, as in every thing else. He gave Mrs. Godfrey to understand, and carry to the parents, that he expected one hundred pounds with their daughter. She brought him word that they had no such sum to spare. Franklin sent back, in reply, that they might mortgage their house.

16. The answer to this, after a few days, was, that they did not approve the match; that, on inquiry of Mr. Bradford, they had been informed the printing business was not a profitable one; that Keimer and Harry had failed, and that he would probably soon follow them. The daughter was, accordingly, shut up, and Franklin was forbidden the house.

17. He suspected that this was merely a trick of

14. Describe Mrs. Godfrey's desire of match-making. 15. Did Franklin show his usual prudence? 16. What was the result?

the parents, to induce him to run away with the young lady, and leave them at liberty to make what terms they pleased. He immediately broke off the connection. The Godfreys were angry, quarrelled with him, and he left the house.

18. He had always continued on friendly terms with the family of the young lady to whom he had been engaged before his visit to London. Her unfortunate marriage made her very dejected and miserable. Franklin saw her, and could not help attributing her unhappiness, in a great measure, to his own misconduct.

19. Their mutual affection was revived, but there were now great objections to the union. Her former husband had not been heard of, and was supposed to be dead. All difficulties were finally surmounted, and he married Miss Read on the first of September, 1730

CHAPTER VII.

Library of the Junto. A public Library established Franklin studies. His Frugality. Anecdote of the Bowl and Spoon. His Scheme of arriving at Moral Perfection. Table of Precepts. Franklin's Remarks upon it. Poor Richard's Almanac.

1. AT the time Franklin first established himself in Pennsylvania, there was not a good bookseller's

19. Whom did Franklin marry? When?

shop any where to the south of Boston. In New York and Philadelphia, the printers were stationers, but they kept only paper, almanacs, ballads, and a few common school books. Those who loved reading were obliged to send for their books from England.

2. The members of the Junto had, each of them, a few volumes. They had hired a room, in which to hold their meetings, and Franklin proposed that they should all bring their books to that room. In this manner they would not only be ready for them to consult and refer to, but would become a common benefit, by allowing each one to borrow such as he wished to read at home.

3. This was accordingly done, and for a while answered their purpose very well. Finding the advantage and convenience of this little collection, Franklin proposed to render the benefit more general, by commencing a public subscription library. He drew a sketch of the plan and rules that would be necessary, and had them put into the form of articles to be subscribed. By these articles, each subscriber agreed to pay a certain sum for the first purchase of the books, and a yearly contribution for increasing them.

4. The number of readers, at that time, in Philadelphia, was so small, that it was with great diffi-

2. What plan did Franklin propose for the formation of a library? 3. How did it succeed? How did Franklin propose to extend its advantages?

culty Franklin was able to procure fifty subscribers, willing to pay forty shillings to begin with, and ten shillings a year for a contribution. With this number the library was commenced. The books were imported, and lent out to subscribers. Great advantages were derived from the institution, and it was soon imitated in other places.

5. In this library, Franklin found means of continual improvement. He set apart an hour or two in each day for study, and in this way, in some degree, made up for the loss of a learned education. Reading was his only amusement. His attention to business was as strict as it was necessary. He was in debt for his printing house, and had an increasing family; with two rivals in his business, who had been established before him. Notwithstanding all this, however, he grew more easy in his circumstances every day.

6. His early habits of frugality continued. He often thought of the proverb of Solomon, which his father had impressed on him while a boy—"Seest thou a man diligent in his calling? he shall stand before kings, he shall not stand before mean men." Industry appeared a means of obtaining wealth and distinction, and the thought encouraged him to new exertions. We shall see, by and by, that little as

4. How many subscribers were obtained? *5. Did Franklin still pursue his studies, and how? Did his early habits continue? What was the proverb so often repeated by his father?*

his father expected it, the son really came to stand, with honor, in the presence of monarchs.

7. His wife was, fortunately, as well inclined to industry and frugality as he was himself. She assisted him in his business, folding and stitching pamphlets, tending shop, and purchasing old linen rags for the paper-makers. They kept no idle servants, their table was simply furnished, and their furniture was plain and cheap.

8. "My breakfast," says Franklin, "was for a long time bread and milk (no tea), and I ate it out of a twopenny earthen porringer, with a pewter spoon: but mark how luxury will enter families, and make a progress in spite of principle; being called one morning to breakfast, I found it in a china bowl, with a spoon of silver. They had been bought for me, without my knowledge, by my wife, and had cost her the enormous sum of three and twenty shillings; for which she had no other excuse or apology to make, but that she thought her husband deserved a silver spoon and china bowl as well as any of his neighbors. This was the first appearance of plate and china in our house, which afterwards, in a course of years, as our wealth increased, augmented gradually to several hundred pounds in value."

9. It was about this time that Franklin formed

7. What was the conduct of his wife? 8. Describe Franklin's breakfast, and give his humorous account of the first appearance of luxury in his house.

the bold and difficult project of arriving at moral perfection. As he knew, or thought he knew, what was right and wrong, he did not see why he might not always do the one and avoid the other. For this purpose, he made a table of the different virtues, with certain rules and precepts annexed to them. Some of these were as follows :

1. *Temperance*.—Eat not to dulness : drink not to elevation.
2. *Silence*.—Speak not but what may benefit others or yourself : avoid trifling conversation.
3. *Order*.—Let all your things have their places : let each part of your business have its time.
4. *Resolution*.—Resolve to perform what you ought : perform, without fail, what you resolve.
5. *Frugality*.—Make no expense but to do good to others or yourself ; that is, waste nothing.
6. *Industry*.—Lose no time : be always employed in something useful : cut off all unnecessary actions.
7. *Sincerity*.—Use no hurtful deceit : think innocently and justly : and if you speak, speak accordingly.
8. *Justice*.—Wrong none by doing injuries, or omitting the benefits that are your duty.
9. *Moderation*.—Avoid extremes : forbear resenting injuries so much as you think they deserve.
10. *Cleanliness*.—Tolerate no uncleanness in body, clothes, or habitation.
11. *Tranquillity*.—Be not disturbed at trifles, nor at accidents common or unavoidable.

9. What was Franklin's favorite project at this time ? Repeat the table of virtues, and the precepts annexed to them

10. To acquire a habit of practising these virtues, he determined to give a week's strict attention to each of them in succession. Thus, in the first week, he took care to avoid even the slightest offence against temperance, and strictly marked every fault in a little book he kept for that purpose. This book he continued to keep for a great number of years; till, in the pressure of public business, he was obliged to give it up entirely.

11. "It is well," he wrote in his old age, "my posterity should be informed that to this little artifice their ancestor owed the constant felicity of his life, down to his seventy-ninth year, in which this is written. What reverses may attend the remainder is in the hand of Providence: but if they arrive, the reflection on past happiness enjoyed ought to help his bearing them with more resignation."

12. "To *Temperance* he ascribes his long continued health, and what is still left to him of a good constitution. To *Industry* and *Frugality*, the early easiness of his circumstances, and acquisition of his fortune, with all that knowledge that enabled him to be an useful citizen, and obtained for him some degree of reputation among the learned. To *Sincerity* and *Justice*, the confidence of his country and the honorable employs it conferred upon him:

10. How did he attempt to acquire a habit of these virtues
12. To what does Franklin ascribe his long continued health?
the ease of his circumstances? the confidence and honor he
received from his country?

and to the joint influence of the whole mass of the virtues, even in the imperfect state he was able to acquire them, all that evenness of temper and that cheerfulness in conversation, which makes his company still sought for, and agreeable even to his young acquaintance: I hope, therefore, that some of my descendants may follow the example, and reap the benefit."

13. In 1732, Franklin first published his almanac, under the name of Richard Saunders. It was continued by him about twenty-five years, and was commonly called *Poor Richard's Almanac*. He endeavored to make it both entertaining and useful, and it accordingly came to be in great demand. As it was generally read, and as the poor people bought hardly any other books, Franklin thought it would be a good means to circulate instruction among them. He, therefore, filled all the odd spaces with proverbs and wise sayings.

14. These proverbs contained the experience and wisdom of many nations and ages. In 1757, Franklin collected them into a discourse prefixed to the almanac for that year. In this discourse, he represented an old man talking to a number of people who were attending a sale at auction. The hour for the sale not having come, the company were conversing on the badness of the times.

13. When did he first publish his almanac? How long was it continued? How did he endeavor to make it useful? 14. What was prefixed to the almanac for 1757?

15. One of them called out to a plain, clean old man, with white locks, "Pray, father Abraham, what think ye of the times? Won't these heavy taxes quite ruin the country? How shall we be ever able to pay them? What would you advise us to do?" Father Abraham stood up, and replied, "If you'd have my advice, I'll give it to you in short; 'for a word to the wise is enough; and many words won't fill a bushel,' as Poor Richard says."

16. The old man then went on to advise them to be industrious and economical; and, in the course of his advice, repeated all of the wise sayings of Poor Richard. In this manner they were all collected into a single paper, called *The Way to Wealth*. This piece was very much approved, copied into all the American newspapers, reprinted in Great Britain, and translated into the French language. Large numbers of it were, in this manner, distributed, and undoubtedly did a good deal of service.

16. How was *The Way to Wealth* approved?

CHAPTER VIII.

Management of his Newspaper. Study of the Languages. Chess-playing. The Preacher Hemphill. Stealing Sermons. Visit to Boston. Visits his Brother James at Newport. Usefulness of the Junto. Formation of new Clubs. Franklin chosen Clerk of the General Assembly. Anecdote.

1. BESIDES his almanac, Franklin considered his newspaper as a very valuable means of circulating instruction and good advice among the people. For this purpose he frequently reprinted in it extracts from the Spectator, a work written a good many years ago, by several distinguished English authors. It is a collection of pieces on moral and popular subjects, in a very pleasant style, and first published in single numbers of a few pages each.

2. In conducting his paper, Franklin was very careful to avoid all abuse of particular persons. Whenever he was requested to publish any thing of the kind, his answer was, that he would print the piece by itself, and give the author as many copies for his own use as he desired. He very wisely considered that his subscribers expected him to furnish them with useful and entertaining pieces, and not

1. How did he make his newspaper serviceable in circulating instruction? 2. What was he very careful to avoid?

with abuse and violent discussions about things with which they had nothing to do.

3. In 1733, Franklin sent one of his apprentices to Charleston, South Carolina, where a printer was wanted. He furnished him with a press and types, and was to receive one third of the profits of the business. After the death of this man, who was very irregular in settling his affairs with Franklin, the business was continued by his widow. This woman had been born and educated in Holland, where females were taught a knowledge of accounts. She managed the establishment with a great deal of prudence and success, and was in time able to purchase the printing office, and establish her son in it.

4. In 1733, Franklin began the study of foreign languages. He soon obtained such a knowledge of the French, as to read books in that language with perfect ease. After this he undertook the Italian. An acquaintance, who was also learning it, often tempted him to play chess. Finding this took up too much time, Franklin refused to play any more, except upon one condition. This was, that whichever of them should beat, should have a right to impose a task upon the other; either of part of the grammar to be got by heart, or in translations.

3. Describe the conduct of the woman whose husband Franklin had established in business. 4. When did Franklin begin the study of foreign languages? What languages did he study? Relate the anecdote about chess-playing.

5. These tasks they were bound in honor to perform before the next meeting. The two friends played with about equal skill and success, and in this way soon beat each other into a pretty good knowledge of the Italian. Franklin next undertook Spanish, and learned enough to read books in that language with considerable ease.

6. About the year 1734, a young preacher arrived in Philadelphia, by the name of Hemphill. He had a good voice, and delivered very excellent sermons. Large numbers were attracted by his eloquence, of different doctrines and belief. Among the rest, Franklin became a very constant hearer. He was pleased with his sermons, because they impressed the love and the practice of virtue and goodness, without quarrelling about hard questions of doctrinal religion.

7. Some of the congregation, however, disapproved of his preaching, and united with the old ministers to attempt to put him down. Franklin took sides with him very warmly, and did all he could to raise a party in his favor. He wrote two or three pamphlets in his defence.

8. During this contest the unlucky preacher hurt his own cause by a very unpardonable meanness. One of his enemies heard him preach a very eloquent sermon, and thought he had somewhere heard or read parts of it before. On looking into the mat-

6. Who was Hemphill? 7. What did Franklin do in his own behalf? 8. How did the preacher ruin his own cause?

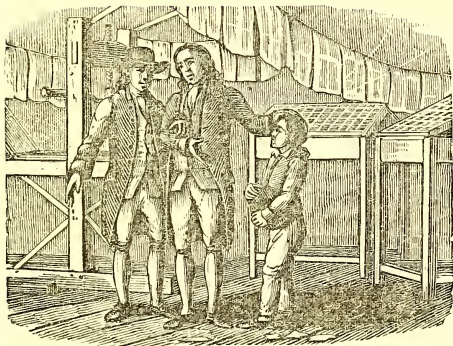
ter, he found the preacher had stolen several passages from a discourse delivered by a celebrated English divine. This discovery induced many of his friends to desert him, and he was obliged to go in search of a congregation less inquisitive.

9. After ten years' absence from Boston, Franklin determined to make a journey there to visit his relations. He was now doing very good business, and was in quite easy circumstances. He had seen a good many changes in his fortunes, since he first ran away from his native place; and his industry and good sense were to bring about still greater changes.

10. In returning to Philadelphia, he stopped at Newport, to see his brother James, who was, at that time, settled there with his printing office. Their former differences were at once forgotten, and the meeting was very cordial and affectionate. James was at that time in very ill health, and in expectation of a speedy death. He, accordingly, requested Benjamin, when that event should happen, to take home his son, then but ten years of age, and bring him up to the printing business.

11. This he accordingly performed, sending him a few years to school before he took him into the office. When James died, his widow carried on

9. How long had Franklin been absent from Boston when he determined to revisit it? 10. How was the interview between the brothers at Newport? What request did James make respecting his son? 11. How did Franklin comply with this request?



Reconciliation of Franklin with his Brother.

the business till her son was grown up. At that time, Benjamin assisted them with an assortment of new types, and they were, in this manner, enabled to continue the establishment.

12. The club which Franklin had founded proved to be so useful, and afforded so much satisfaction to the members, that they proposed to introduce their friends, and increase their number. They had, from the beginning, determined to keep the *Junto* a secret, and the secret was kept better than such things usually are. Franklin was of opinion that twelve members formed a club sufficiently large, and that it would be inconvenient to increase it.

13. Instead of adding to their number, he proposed that every member, separately, should endeavor to form another club, with the same rules and on the same plan, without informing them of the existence of the *Junto*. The project was approved, and every member undertook to form his club; but they did not all succeed. Five or six only were completed, which were called by different names, as the *Vine*, the *Union*, the *Band*. These clubs were useful, and afforded their members a good deal of amusement and information.

14. In 1736, Franklin was chosen clerk of the General Assembly. The choice was made that

12. How did the *Junto* flourish? 13. What new clubs were formed? How? 14. To what office was Franklin elected in 1736?

year without any opposition, but, on the next, a new member of that body made a long speech against him. This, however, did not prevent his second election. The place was one of some credit, and, by giving Franklin an opportunity to make friends among the members, enabled him to secure the business of printing the public laws, votes, and paper money.

15. The new member, who had opposed Franklin, was a man of education and talents, and it was desirable to gain his good opinion. Franklin was too proud to pay any servile respect to him, but was too prudent not to wish for his favor. After some time, with his usual shrewdness and knowledge of human nature, he hit upon the following expedient.

16. Having heard that this gentleman had in his library a very scarce and curious book, he wrote a note, requesting that he would do him the favor of lending it for a few days. The book was immediately sent, and in about a week was returned by the borrower, with a short note, expressive of his sincere thanks for the favor.

17. The next time they met in the house, the gentleman spoke to Franklin with a great deal of civility. He ever after manifested a readiness to serve him, and they became great friends. "This is another instance," observes Franklin, "of the truth of an old maxim I had learned, which says—

16. How did Franklin conciliate a member who was opposed to him?

‘He that has done you a kindness will be more ready to do you another, than he whom you yourself have obliged.’ And it shows how much more profitable it is prudently to remove than to resent, return, and continue inimical proceedings.”

18. In 1737, Colonel Spotswood, at that time postmaster-general, being dissatisfied with his deputy at Philadelphia, took away his commission, and offered it to Franklin. He accepted it with readiness, and found it of great advantage. Though the salary was small, the office gave him the means of increasing the subscribers to his paper, and in this way increased his advertisements. His paper now began to afford him a very considerable income.

CHAPTER IX.

Reform of the City Watch. Fire Companies. Rev. Mr. Whitefield. Effects of his Preaching. His Project of building an Orphan House in Georgia. Anecdotes. Franklin's Opinion of him. Franklin's Prosperity. Military Defence of the Province. Formation of Companies.

1. FRANKLIN now began to turn his attention to public affairs. One of his first efforts in this way was to reform the city watch. This was managed

17. What is the old maxim quoted by Franklin? 18. To what office was Franklin appointed in 1737?

in the different wards by the constables, who assembled a certain number of housekeepers to attend them for the night. Those who did not choose to attend paid six shillings a year to be excused. This made the constableness an office of profit: for, instead of spending the money thus received in hiring other watchmen, it was spent in liquors, by which the constables were able to get a parcel of ragamuffins about them, instead of decent and orderly men.

2. These fellows seldom went the rounds of the watch, but spent most of the night in tippling. In the course of a few years, by the exertions of Franklin and his friends, an entire alteration was produced in the laws upon this subject. About the same time that he began to converse at the *Junto* on the abuses of the watch, he wrote a paper on the different accidents by which houses were set on fire, and means proposed of avoiding them.

3. This gave rise to a project, which soon followed, of forming a company to assist, with readiness, at fires. Thirty persons were immediately found, willing to join in the scheme. Their articles of agreement obliged every member to keep, always in order and fit for use, a certain number of leather buckets, with strong bags and baskets for packing

1. What reform did Franklin introduce, when he first turned his attention to public affairs? 2. On what subject did he write a paper for the *Junto*? 3. To what project did this give rise? How did it succeed?

and carrying goods, which were to be brought at every fire. They also held a monthly meeting, to converse upon the subject of fires, and communicate such ideas as might be useful in their conduct on such occasions.

4. This company proved so useful, that another was soon formed; and thus went on, one new company after another, till they included most of the inhabitants who were men of property. The club first formed was called the UNION FIRE COMPANY, and, we believe, still exists. These institutions have been exceedingly useful in extinguishing fires and preserving property.

5. In 1739, the Reverend Mr. Whitefield arrived in Philadelphia, from Ireland. This man had made himself very remarkable as a preacher, going about the country and discoursing, sometimes in churches, sometimes in the fields, to crowds of people, with great effect. He was, at first, permitted to preach in some of the churches in Philadelphia, but the clergy soon took a dislike to him, and refused him their pulpits. This obliged him again to discourse in the streets and open fields.

6. Large multitudes collected to hear his sermons. "It was wonderful," says Franklin, "to see the change soon made in the manners of our inhabitants. From being thoughtless or indifferent about religion,

4. Was it useful? What was it called? 5. What is stated of the Reverend Mr. Whitefield? 6. What does Franklin say of the change in the manners of the inhabitants?

it seemed as if all the world were growing religious, so that one could not walk through the town in an evening, without hearing psalms sung in different families of every street. And it being found inconvenient to assemble in the open air, subject to its inclemencies, the building of a house to meet in was no sooner proposed, and persons appointed to receive contributions, but sufficient sums were soon received to procure the ground and erect the building, which was one hundred feet long and seventy broad; and the work was carried on with such spirit, as to be finished in a much shorter time than could be expected."

7. On leaving Philadelphia, Mr. Whitefield went preaching all the way through the colonies to Georgia. The settlement of that province had then been recently commenced, and was made with people entirely unfit for such a service. They were unable to endure hardships, and perished in great numbers, leaving many helpless children, with nothing to feed or shelter them.

8. "The sight of their miserable situation," says Franklin, "inspired the benevolent heart of Mr. Whitefield with the idea of building an orphan house there, in which they might be supported and educated. Returning northward, he preached up this charity, and made large collections; for his eloquence had a wonderful power over the hearts and

7. Where did Mr. Whitefield go on leaving Philadelphia? 8
What charitable design did he form at this period?

purses of his hearers, of which I myself was an instance.

9. "I did not disapprove of the design, but as Georgia was then destitute of materials and workmen, and it was proposed to send them from Philadelphia, at a great expense, I thought it would have been better to have built the house at Philadelphia, and brought the children to it. This I advised, but he was resolute in his first project, rejected my counsel, and I, therefore, refused to contribute.

10. "I happened, soon after, to attend one of his sermons, in the course of which, I perceived he intended to finish with a collection, and I silently resolved he should get nothing from me. I had in my pocket a handful of copper money, three or four silver dollars, and five pistoles in gold; as he proceeded, I began to soften, and concluded to give the copper. Another stroke of his oratory made me ashamed of that, and determined me to give the silver; and he finished so admirably, that I emptied my pocket wholly into the collector's dish, gold and all!

11. "At this sermon there was also one of our club, who, being of my sentiments respecting the building in Georgia, and suspecting a collection might be intended, had, by precaution, emptied his pockets before he came from home; towards the

9. What was Franklin's opinion upon the subject? 10. What anecdote does Franklin relate of the collection? 11. What anecdote of a member of the club?

conclusion of the discourse, however, he felt a strong inclination to give, and applied to a neighbor who stood near him, to lend him some money for the purpose. The request was fortunately made to perhaps the only man in the company who had the firmness not to be affected by the preacher. His answer was, 'At any other time, friend Hopkinson, I would lend to thee freely; but not now, for thee seems to me to be out of thy right senses.'

12. "Some of Mr. Whitefield's enemies affected to suppose that he would apply these collections to his own private emolument; but I, who was intimately acquainted with him (being employed in printing his sermons, journals, &c.), never had the least suspicion of his integrity, but am to this day decidedly of opinion, that he was, in all his conduct, a perfectly honest man; and methinks my testimony in his favor ought to have the more weight, as we had no religious connection. Ours was a mere civil friendship, sincere on both sides, and lasted to his death.

13. "The last time I saw Mr. Whitefield was in London, when he consulted me about his orphan house concern, and his purpose of appropriating it to the establishment of a college.

14. "He had a loud and clear voice, and articulated his words so perfectly that he might be heard

12. What does Franklin say of Mr. Whitefield's character? 13. Where did Franklin see him for the last time? 14. What does he say of his eloquence?

and understood at a great distance; especially as his auditories observed the most perfect silence. He preached one evening from the top of the court house steps, which are in the middle of Market street, and on the west side of Second street, which crosses it at right angles. Both streets were filled with hearers to a considerable distance; being among the hindmost in Market street, I had the curiosity to learn how far he could be heard, by retiring backwards down the street towards the river, and I found his voice distinct till I came near Front street, when some noise in that street obscured it. I computed that he might well be heard by more than thirty thousand. This reconciled me to the newspaper accounts of his having preached to 25,000 people in the fields, and to the history of generals haranguing whole armies, of which I had sometimes doubted."

15. Franklin's business was now constantly increasing, and his newspaper had become very profitable. He began to feel the truth of the old proverb, "that after getting the first hundred pounds, it is more easy to get the second." Those of his workmen who behaved well, he established in printing houses in different colonies, on easy terms. Most of them did well, and were able to repay him what he had advanced, and go on working for themselves.

16. At this period, there were no preparations

By how many did he compute that he might be heard at a time?
15. How were Franklin's affairs succeeding at this time?

for military defence in Pennsylvania. The inhabitants were mostly Quakers, and had neglected to take any suitable measures against the enemies to whom they might be exposed. There was also no college in the state, nor any proper provision for the complete education of youth. Franklin accordingly turned his attention to these very important subjects.

17. Spain had been several years at war with Great Britain, and had now been recently joined by France. From the French possessions in Canada, Pennsylvania was exposed to continual danger. The governor of the province had been some time trying to prevail upon the Quaker assembly to pass a militia law, and take other necessary steps for their security. He tried, however, in vain.

18. Franklin thought something might be done by a subscription among the people. To promote this plan, he wrote and published a pamphlet called *PLAIN TRUTH*. In this he stated their exposed and helpless situation, and represented the necessity of union for their defence. The pamphlet had a sudden and surprising effect. A meeting of the citizens was appointed, and attended by a considerable number. Proposals of the intended union had been

16. To what very important subjects did Franklin now turn his attention? 17. How was Pennsylvania exposed to danger? What obstacle was there to the passage of a militia law? 18. What did Franklin write on the subject? What did he propose for their defence?

printed, and distributed about the room, to be signed by those who approved them. When the company separated, the papers were collected and found to contain above twelve hundred signatures.

19. Other copies were scattered about the country, and the subscribers at length amounted to upwards of ten thousand. All these furnished themselves, as soon as they could, with arms, formed themselves into companies and regiments, chose their own officers, and met every week to be instructed in military exercises. The women made subscriptions among themselves, and provided silk colors, which they presented to the companies, painted with different ornaments and mottoes, supplied by Franklin.

20. The officers of the companies that formed the Philadelphia regiment chose Franklin for their colonel. Not considering himself fit for the office, he declined ; and recommended that Mr. Lawrence, a man of influence and of a fine person, should be chosen in his place. This gentleman was accordingly elected.

21. Franklin now proposed a lottery, to pay the expenses of building a battery below the town, and of furnishing it with cannon. The lottery was rapidly filled, and the battery soon erected. They brought some old cannon from Boston, and these

19. How many subscribers were obtained to these proposals ? What measures did they take ? 20. To what office was Franklin now chosen, and why did he decline ? 21. By what means was the battery erected and furnished ?

not proving sufficient, they sent to London for more. The associates kept a nightly guard at the battery, and Franklin regularly took his turn of duty, as a common soldier.

22. His activity in these measures was agreeable to the governor and council, and secured their favor. They took him into their confidence, and consulted him on all operations in respect to the military. Franklin took the opportunity to propose a public fast, to promote reformation, and implore the blessing of Heaven on their undertaking. They embraced the motion, but as this was the first fast ever thought of in the province, there was no form for the proclamation. Franklin drew it up in the style of the New England proclamation; it was translated into German, printed in both languages, and circulated through the province. This gave the clergy of the different sects an opportunity of influencing their hearers to join the association; and it would, probably, have been general among all but the Quakers, if it had not been for the news of peace.

22. What did Franklin propose? How was the proclamation for fast drawn up and circulated? What news was brought at this time?

CHAPTER X.

Anecdote. William Penn. Education of Youth. Subscription for an Academy. Franklin overloaded with public Offices. Member of the Assembly. Treaty with the Indians at Carlisle. Public Hospital. Anecdote.

1. It was thought by some of the friends of Franklin, that he would offend the peace-loving sect of Quakers, by his activity in these warlike preparations. A young man, who had some friends in the assembly, and wished to succeed him as their clerk, told him, in a quiet way, that it was intended to displace him at the next election, and that, as a friend, he should advise him to resign.

2. The answer which Franklin made to this obliging young man was in the following words:—
“I have heard or read of some public man, who made it a rule never to ask for an office, and never to refuse one when offered to him. I approve of this rule, and shall practise it with a small addition: I shall never *ask*, never *refuse*, nor ever *RESIGN* an office. If they will have my office of clerk to dispose of it to another, they shall take it from me. I will not give it up.” At the next election, Franklin was unanimously elected clerk.

1. What advice did Franklin receive at this time? 2. What answer did he return? What was the result of the election?

3. Notwithstanding the general sentiments of the Quakers, Franklin thought the military defence of the country not disagreeable to any of them. One of their number, the learned and honorable Mr. Logan, wrote an address to them, declaring his approbation of defensive war, and supporting his opinion by very strong arguments. This gentleman related an anecdote of his old master, William Penn, in respect to the subject of defence, which is quite amusing.

4. "He came over from England, when a young man, as secretary to this distinguished Quaker. It was war time, and their ship was chased by an armed vessel, supposed to be an enemy. Their captain prepared for defence, but told William Penn and his company of Quakers, that he did not expect their assistance, and they might retire into the cabin. They all retired except James Logan, who chose to stay upon deck, and was quartered to a gun.

5. "The supposed enemy proved a friend, so there was no fighting. When the secretary went to carry the information to his friends in the cabin, William Penn spoke to him in severe language for staying upon deck, and undertaking to assist in the defence of the vessel, contrary to the principles of the Friends. This reproof, being before all the

3 What did Franklin consider the opinion of Quakers on the subject of defence? 4. What anecdote is related of William Penn?

company, vexed the secretary, who replied—‘ I being thy servant, why did thee not order me to come down; but thee was willing enough that I should stay and help to fight the ship, when thee thought there was danger.’ ”

6. Peace being concluded, and the business of defence at an end, Franklin next turned his thoughts to the affair of establishing an academy. The first step he took was to associate in the design a number of his active friends; the next was to write and publish a pamphlet, entitled “ Proposals relating to the Education of Youth in Philadelphia.” This he distributed among the principal inhabitants, and in a short time opened a subscription for supporting an academy. The subscribers were desirous of carrying the plan into immediate execution. The constitutions for the government of the academy were soon drawn up and signed, a house was hired, masters engaged, and the school opened. This was in the year 1749.

7. The scholars increased rapidly, the house was soon found too small, when accident threw in their way a large house, ready built, which, with a few alterations, would exactly answer their purpose. This was the building erected by the hearers of Mr. Whitefield. Some difficulty had been found by the trustees in paying the expenses of this church, and

6. To what did Franklin turn his attention on the declaration of peace? In what year was the academy founded? 7. What building was taken for the school house?

they were prevailed upon to give it up for the academy. It was soon made fit for that purpose, and the scholars were removed into the building. The whole care and trouble of superintending this work fell upon Franklin, who found sufficient leisure to attend to it, from having taken a very able and industrious partner in his printing business.

8. Franklin now thought that he should find leisure, during the rest of his life, to pursue his philosophical studies and amusements. He purchased all the instruments and apparatus of Dr. Spence, who had come from England to lecture on philosophy in Philadelphia. His intention was to proceed with diligence in his experiments in electricity. But the public now considered him a man of leisure, and laid hold of him for their purposes.

9. He seems to have been quite overloaded with offices. The governor made him a justice of the peace. The city corporation chose him a member of the common council, and shortly after alderman. The citizens elected him to represent them in the assembly, of which he had so long been clerk. All these offices were signs of the esteem and respect in which he was held among his fellow citizens.

10. Franklin tried the office of justice of the peace a little while, by attending a few courts, and sitting on the bench to hear causes. Finding, how-

8. To what pursuits did he now intend to devote himself? What did the public consider him? 9. What offices did he receive at this time?

ever, that it required more knowledge of the law than he possessed, he gradually withdrew from it; excusing himself by being obliged to attend his duties as member of the assembly. To this office he was chosen for ten years in succession, without ever asking any elector for his vote, or signifying, directly or indirectly, any desire of the honor. On taking his seat in the house, his son was appointed their clerk.

11. During the next year, a treaty was to be held with the Indians at Carlisle. The governor sent a message to the house, requesting that they should nominate some of their members, to be joined with some members of council, for that purpose. The house named the speaker, Mr. Norris, and Dr. Franklin; and being commissioned, they went to Carlisle to treat with the Indians.

12. As the Indians were very apt to drink to excess, and when drunk were very quarrelsome and disorderly, the commissioners strictly forbade the sale of any liquor to them. When they complained of this, they were told that, on condition of their remaining perfectly sober during the treaty, they should have plenty of rum when the business was over. They accordingly promised this, and kept their promise for the very best reason in the world—because they were unable to break it. The treaty

10. Why did he retire from the office of justice of the peace?
11. Who were appointed to treat with the Indians? 12. What is related of the Indians?

was conducted with perfect order, and concluded to the satisfaction of both parties.

13. They then claimed and received the rum. This was in the afternoon. The Indians were about one hundred in number, men, women and children, and were lodged in cabins, built in the form of a square, just without the town. In the evening there was a great noise among them, and the commissioners walked out to see what was the matter. They found a great bonfire built in the middle of the square, and the men and women, in a state of intoxication, fighting and quarrelling around it. The tumult could not be stilled, and the commissioners retired to their lodgings.

14. At midnight, a number of the Indians came thundering at their door, demanding more rum; but the commissioners took no notice of them. The next day they were sensible of their misbehavior, and sent three of their old counsellors to make an excuse. The orator acknowledged the fault, but laid it upon the rum; and then endeavored to excuse the rum, by saying—"The Great Spirit, who made all things, made every thing for some use, and whatever use he designed any thing for, that use it should always be put to: now, when he made rum, he said, 'Let this be for the Indians to get drunk with,' and it must be so." It is a sad truth that

How was the treaty concluded? 13. What happened in the evening? 14. What course did they pursue the next day? How did the commissioners excuse themselves?

among all savage nations, the introduction of spirituous liquor has been the most severe curse that ever fell upon them.

15. In 1751, Dr. Thomas Bond formed a plan to establish an hospital in Philadelphia, for the reception and cure of poor sick persons, whether inhabitants of the province or strangers. He was very active in endeavoring to procure subscriptions for it, but the proposal being new in America, and at first not well understood, he met with but little success. At length he came to Franklin with the compliment that there was no such a thing as carrying a public-spirited thing through, without his being concerned in it. "For," said he, "I am often asked by those to whom I propose subscribing, *Have you consulted Franklin on this business? And what does he think of it?* And when I tell them I have not, they do not subscribe, but say, *they will consider it.*"

16. Franklin inquired into the nature and probable usefulness of the scheme, and being satisfied in respect to it, not only subscribed himself, but was active in procuring subscriptions from others. Some aid was obtained from the assembly of the province. A convenient and handsome building was soon erected, the institution was found useful, and flourishes to the present day.

17. It was about this time that another projector,

15. Who proposed the plan for the Philadelphia hospital? What compliment did he pay to Franklin? 16. Did Franklin approve of the scheme and assist in it?

the Rev. Gilbert Tennent, came to Franklin with a request that he would assist him in procuring subscriptions to erect a new meeting-house. It was to be devoted to the use of a congregation he had gathered among the original disciples of Mr. Whitefield. Franklin was too wise to make himself disagreeable to his fellow citizens, by such frequent calls upon their generosity, and absolutely refused. The gentleman then desired he would furnish him with a list of the names of persons he knew by experience to be generous and public-spirited. This, also, was refused; for it was hard that their kind compliance with a request of charity should mark them out to be worried by all who chose to call upon them.

18. Franklin was then asked to give his advice. "That I will do," he replied; "and in the first place, I advise you to apply to all those who you know will give something; next, to those of whom you are uncertain whether they will give any thing or not, and show them the list of those who have given; and lastly, do not neglect those who you are sure will give nothing; for in some of them you may be mistaken." The clergyman laughed, and promised to take his advice. He did so, for he asked of *every body*, and soon obtained money enough to erect a spacious and elegant meeting-house.

19. Franklin now exerted himself in several matters that, however small they may seem, affected the

17. What did Mr. Gilbert Tennent request of Franklin? How was his request treated? 18. What advice did Franklin give?

convenience and comfort of his fellow citizens in a great degree. This was in respect to cleaning, paving, and lighting the streets. By talking, and writing in the papers, he was able to introduce great changes in these matters, which were very important to the cleanliness and good appearance of the

CHAPTER XI.

Spence's Experiments in Electricity. Franklin repeats them. Makes important Discoveries. Letters to Collinson. Experiment with the Kite. Publication of his Letters. Anecdote of the Abbé Nollet. Fame of Franklin. Elected a Member of the Royal Society.

1. It was in the year 1746, that Franklin first attended to the branch of philosophy in which he afterwards became so distinguished. During that year he was in Boston, and there met with a Dr. Spence, who showed him some experiments in electricity. It was a subject altogether new to him, and, though the experiments were not very well performed, they surprised and pleased him.

2. If you take a stick of sealing-wax, or a glass tube, or a piece of amber which has been a long

19. To what smaller matters of public interest did Franklin now attend ?

1. When did Franklin first attend to electricity ? 2. Relate the substance of the second paragraph.

time untouched, and bring it near some small pieces of paper, chaff, or other light substance, it produces no impression upon them. But if you first rub lightly and briskly the wax, the tube, or the amber, with a piece of dry woollen cloth, or cat skin, and then bring it near any of these light substances, you will find that they fly to it, and remain upon it. The power which attracts these substances, and which is excited by the rubbing, is called *electricity*.

3. It is so called from a Greek word which signifies amber, the substance in which this power was first observed. Amber is a brittle mineral substance, of a yellow, and sometimes a reddish brown color. It is found in several countries in Europe, and has recently been found in the United States, at Cape Sable, in Maryland. This is the substance with which the first electrical experiment was performed, ages ago, by a Greek philosopher of the name of Thales.

4. Several centuries passed without any thing being known upon this subject, beyond the fact that these substances possessed this power. At length it began to attract the attention of modern philosophers. In 1742, several ingenious Germans engaged in the subject, and the results of their researches astonished all Europe. They obtained large apparatus, by means of which they were en-

3. From what is the word *electricity* derived? What is amber? Where is it found? 4. When was the subject first examined by modern philosophers?

abled to collect large quantities of the electric fluid, and produce several wonders which had been before unobserved.

5. These experiments excited the curiosity of other philosophers. Mr. Peter Collinson, fellow of the Royal Society of London, about the year 1745, sent to the library company of Philadelphia a glass tube, with some account of its use in making such experiments. Franklin eagerly seized the opportunity of repeating those which he had seen at Boston, and, by much practice, acquired great readiness in performing those of which they had an account from England.

6. He was soon enabled to make a number of important discoveries, and his house was, for some time, continually full of people who came to see the new wonders. His observations upon the subject were, from time to time, communicated to his friend Collinson, in a series of letters, the first of which is dated March 28, 1747. These were read before the Royal Society, where they were not at first thought worthy of much attention.

7. In the year 1749, Franklin first suggested the idea of explaining the sameness of electricity with lightning. A paper upon this subject, which he wrote for Mr. Kinnersly, was read before the members of the Royal Society, and excited a hearty

5. What did Mr. Collinson send to Philadelphia? 7. When did Franklin first suggest that electricity and lightning were the same?

laugh. But it was the lot of this neglected theory to be generally adopted by philosophers, and to bid fair to endure for ages.

8. It was in the same year, that Franklin started the plan of proving the truth of his doctrine, by actually drawing down the lightning, by means of sharp-pointed iron rods raised high into the clouds. It was not until the summer of 1752, that he was enabled to complete his grand discovery by actual experiment.

9. The plan which he had first proposed was, to erect a box on some high tower, or other elevated place, from which should rise a pointed iron rod. He thought that electrified clouds, passing over it, would impart a portion of their electricity, which would be made evident by presenting a key or the knuckle to it. There was at this time, in Philadelphia, no opportunity of trying an experiment of the kind. But while Franklin was waiting for the erection of a spire, it occurred to him that he might have a more ready access to the clouds by means of a common kite.

10. He prepared a kite by fastening two cross sticks to a silk handkerchief, which would not suffer from the rain so much as paper. To the upright stick he affixed an iron point. The string was, as

8. How did he propose to prove the truth of his doctrine? When did he prove it by actual experiment? 9. What plans had he at first proposed? What occurred to him afterwards? 10. How did he prepare the kite?

usual, of hemp, excepting the lower end, which was made of silk, because this substance does not give a free passage to the electricity.

11. With this kite, on the appearance of a thunder storm, he went out into the commons with his son, to whom alone he had communicated his intentions. He placed himself under a shed to avoid the rain; his kite was raised—a thunder cloud passed over it, but no sign of electricity appeared. The experiment had almost been given up in despair, when he perceived, in the loose fibres of the string, evident appearances of electricity. By continued observation the fact was most clearly proved; and the honor of establishing the sameness of electricity and lightning was won by Franklin.

12. The letters which Franklin had sent to Mr. Collinson were published by that gentleman in a separate volume, under the title of “New Experiments and Observations on Electricity, made at Philadelphia, in America.” They were read with great eagerness, and soon translated into different languages. A very incorrect French translation fell into the hands of the celebrated Buffon, who was much pleased with it, and performed the experiments with success. A more correct translation was undertaken at his request, and contributed much towards spreading a knowledge of Franklin’s prin-

11. Relate the progress of the experiment. 12. Under what title were Franklin’s letters on the subject printed? How were they received? By whose request was a correct French translation made?

ciples in France. His experiments were repeated by most of the distinguished philosophers throughout Europe.

13. By these experiments, the truth of Franklin's doctrine was established in the firmest manner. When it could no longer be doubted, some men were anxious to take away from its merit. It was considered at that time rather mortifying to the European philosophers, to admit that an American could make important discoveries which had escaped their notice.

14. The Abbé Nollet, preceptor in natural philosophy to the royal family of France, was exceedingly offended at the publication of Franklin's letters. He had himself written about electricity, and could not at first believe that such a work had really come from America. He said it must have been composed by his enemies in Paris, to oppose his system. Afterwards, having been assured that there really existed such a person as Franklin at Philadelphia, he published a volume of letters, in defence of his own ideas upon the subject, and denying the propositions of the American philosopher.

15. Franklin thought at one time of writing a letter in reply to the abbé, and actually began one. But on considering that any one might repeat his experiments, and ascertain for himself whether or

13. What was the result of the establishment of Franklin's doctrine? 14. What was the conduct of the Abbé Nollet? 15. What course did Franklin pursue on the subject?

not they were true, he concluded to let his papers shift for themselves ; believing it was better to spend what time he could spare in making new experiments than in disputing about those already made.

16. The event gave him no cause to repent of his silence. His friend, Monsieur Le Roy, of the Royal Academy of Sciences, took up his cause, and refuted the abbé. Franklin's volume was translated into the Italian, German and Latin languages ; and the doctrine it contained was, by degrees, generally adopted by the philosophers of Europe, in preference to that of Nollet.

17. What gave his book the more sudden and general celebrity was the success of one of its proposed experiments, made at Marly, for drawing lightning from the clouds. This engaged the public attention every where. The "Philadelphia experiments," as they were called, were performed before the king and court, and all the curious of Paris flocked to see them.

18. Dr. Wright, an English physician, was at Paris when they were the talk and wonder of the day. He wrote to a member of the Royal Society an account of the high esteem in which the experiments of Franklin were held by learned men abroad and of their surprise that his writings had been so

16. Did he regret his silence ? State the substance of this paragraph. 17. What gave the book the more general celebrity ? 18. Who was Dr. Wright ? What communication did he make to the Royal Society ?

little noticed in England. The society, on this, resumed the consideration of the letters that had been read to them, and a summary account of their doctrines was drawn up and published among their philosophical essays and transactions.

19. To make Franklin some amends for the slight with which they had before treated him, the society chose him a member, without his having made the usual application. They also presented him with the gold medal of Sir Godfrey Copley for the year 1753, the delivery of which was accompanied by a very complimentary speech from the president, Lord Macclesfield.

CHAPTER XII.

Appointed Postmaster-General. Journey to New England. Receives Degrees from two Colleges. Story of the Visit to his Mother.

1. HAVING been some time employed by the postmaster-general of America in regulating the several offices, and bringing the officers to account, upon his death, in 1753, Franklin was appointed, jointly with another gentleman, to succeed him. The American office had before this time never paid any thing to that of Great Britain; and the new post

19. What honors did the society confer upon him?

1. What appointment did Franklin receive at this time.

masters were to have six hundred pounds between them, if they could make that sum out of the profits of the office.

2. To do this, a variety of improvements were necessary, some of which were at first very expensive; so that, for the first four years, the office became more than nine hundred pounds in debt to them. Afterwards they began to be repaid, and before Franklin was displaced, they had brought it to yield three times as much clear profit to the crown, as the post-office of Ireland. After Franklin's dismissal, they never received a farthing from it.

3. The business of the post-office occasioned his taking a journey to New England, where the College of Cambridge presented him with the degree of Master of Arts. Yale College, in Connecticut, had before paid him a similar compliment. Thus, without studying in any college, he came to partake of their honors. They were conferred in consideration of his discoveries and improvements in natural philosophy.

4. It was either during this or his former journey that the story of the visit to his mother originated. He had been some years absent from his native city and was at that period of life when the greatest and most rapid alteration is made in the human appearance. Franklin was sensible that his person had

2. Was the post-office, under Franklin, a source of revenue to the crown? 3. What honors did Franklin receive from the colleges?

been so much changed that his mother would not know him, unless there were some instinct to point out, at a single glance, the child to its parent.

5. To discover the existence of this instinct by actual experiment, Franklin determined to introduce himself to his mother as a stranger, and to watch narrowly for the moment in which she should discover her son. On the afternoon of a sullen cold day, in the month of January, he knocked at his mother's door, and asked to speak with Mrs. Franklin. He found the old lady knitting before the parlor fire, introduced himself, by observing that he had been informed she entertained travellers, and requested a night's lodging.

6. She eyed him with coldness, and assured him that he had been misinformed—that she did not keep a tavern; though, to oblige some members of the legislature, she took a number of them into her family during the session; and at that time had four members of the council and six of the house of representatives who boarded with her. She added that all her beds were full, and went on knitting with a great deal of vehemence.

7. Franklin wrapped his coat around him, pretending to shiver with the cold, and observing that it was very chilly weather. It was, of course, nothing more than civil for the old lady to ask him to

5. Why did Franklin introduce himself to his mother as a stranger? In what situation did he find her? 6. How did she receive him?

stop and warm himself. She pointed to a chair, and he drew himself up to the fire.

8. The entrance of her boarders prevented any further conversation. Coffee was soon served, and the stranger partook with the rest of the family. To the coffee, according to the custom of the times, succeeded a plate of apples, pipes, and a paper of tobacco. A pleasant circle of smokers was then formed about the fire. Agreeable conversation followed. Jokes were cracked, stories told, and Franklin was so sensible and entertaining as to attract the attention of the whole company.

9. In this manner the moments passed pleasantly and swiftly along, and it was eight o'clock before any of them expected it. This was the hour of supper, and Mrs. Franklin was always as punctual as the clock. Busied with family affairs, she supposed the stranger had quitted the house immediately after coffee. Imagine her surprise, when she saw him, with the utmost coolness and impudence, taking his seat with the family at the supper table!

10. Immediately after supper, she called an elderly gentleman, a member of the council, with whom she was in the habit of consulting, into another room; complained of the rudeness of the stranger, told the manner of his coming into the house, observed that he appeared like a foreigner, and she thought had something about him very sus-

picious. The old gentleman assured her that she need not be under any alarm, that the stranger was a man of education and agreeable manners, and was, probably, unaware of the lateness of the hour. He added, that it would be well to call him aside, and repeat to him that she was unable to give him lodgings.

11. She accordingly sent her maid to him, and then repeated the account of their situation, observed that it grew late, and gently hinted that he would do well to seek out other accommodations. The stranger replied that he should be very sorry to put her to any inconvenience, and would retire after smoking one more pipe with her boarders. He returned to the company, filled his pipe, and began talking as pleasantly and forcibly as ever. He recounted the hardships, and praised the piety and wisdom of their ancestors.

12. A gentleman present mentioned the subject of the day's debate in the house of representatives. A bill had been introduced to extend the powers of the royal governor. The stranger immediately entered upon the subject, supported the rights of the colonies with many arguments and much eloquence, and showed a great familiarity with the names of influential members of the house in the time of Governor Dudley.

13. The conversation was so animated and interesting that the clock struck eleven, unnoticed by the delighted circle. The patience of Mrs. Frank-

lin was by this time completely exhausted. She now entered the room, and, before the whole company, addressed the stranger with much anger; told him plainly that she thought herself imposed upon; that she was a lone woman, but had friends who would protect her; and concluded by telling him to leave the house. Franklin made a slight apology, put on his great coat and hat, took a polite leave of the company, and approached the street door, lighted by the maid, and attended by the mistress.

14. While the company had been enjoying themselves within, a most tremendous snow storm had filled the streets, knee-deep; and no sooner had the maid lifted the latch, than a roaring wind forced open the door, put out the light, and almost filled the entry with drifted snow and hail. As soon as the candle was relighted, the stranger cast a mournful look on the lady of the mansion, and said—"My dear madam, if you turn me out of your house in this dreadful storm, I am a stranger in the town, and shall certainly perish in the streets. You look like a charitable lady; I should not think you could refuse shelter to a dog on such a night."

15. "Don't tell me of charity," said the offended matron; "charity begins at home. It is your own fault that you staid so long. In short, sir, I do not like your looks, or your conduct in thus forcing yourself upon my family, and I fear you have some bad designs."

16. The good lady had grown so angry as to raise

her voice much above its ordinary pitch, and the noise drew all the company into the entry. They did not agree with Mrs. Franklin in respect to the stranger at all. He seemed to them to be a very honest, clever-looking fellow, and so far from wishing to turn him out of the house, there was not one of them but would have been glad to have him for a fellow-boarder. They thought him very sensible and pleasant, and could not account for their landlady's aversion.

17. At length, by their united interference, the stranger was permitted to remain in the house. There was no bed or part of a bed unoccupied, and he was obliged to sleep all night in an easy chair, before the parlor fire. Although her boarders appeared to have perfect confidence in his honesty, it was not so with Mrs. Franklin. She very carefully collected her silver spoons, pepper box and porringer from her closet, and, after securing the parlor door, by sticking a fork over the latch, carried them to her chamber. She charged the negro man to sleep with his clothes on—to take the great cleaver to bed with him, and to wake up and seize the vagrant at the first noise he made in plundering the house. The good lady then retired to bed with her maid, whom she compelled to sleep in the same room.

18. After a very restless night, Mrs. Franklin rose before the sun. She called her domestics, proceeded with them in a body to unfasten the par-

lor door. To her great astonishment, she found her guest quietly sleeping in his chair. She now began to feel sorry for her suspicions. Awaking him with a cheerful good morning, she inquired how he had rested, and invited him to partake of her breakfast, which was always served before that of the boarders.

19. "Pray, sir," said the old lady, as they were sipping their chocolate at the breakfast table, "as you appear to be a stranger here, to what distant country do you belong?"

20. Franklin put a little more sugar into his chocolate, and, helping himself to a slice of toast, replied, that he belonged to the city of Philadelphia. At the mention of this word, the old lady, for the first time, exhibited emotion. "Philadelphia?" said she—"if you live in Philadelphia, perhaps you know our Ben?"

21. "Who, madam?" replied Franklin, in the same cool and undisturbed manner that he had put on ever since he entered the house. "Why, Ben Franklin," said the mother; "my Ben—oh! he is the dearest child that ever blessed a mother!"

22. "What," said the stranger, "is Ben Franklin, the printer, your son? Why, he is my most intimate friend: he and I lodge in the same room." "O! Heaven forgive me!" exclaimed the old lady; "and have I suffered an acquaintance of my Benny to sleep on this hard chair, while I myself rested on a good bed!"

23. We can well imagine that the mother was

very much astonished when she found that it was not an acquaintance of her son, but her son himself, whose countenance and person had been so much changed, that she had even been on the point of turning him out of doors! She was delighted to embrace him once more before she died, and was quite pleased that the members of the council had found him so agreeable a fellow as to insist that he should remain all night in the house.

CHAPTER XIII.

Congress at Albany. Plan for a Union of the Colonies. Arrival of General Braddock. Franklin sent to him by the Assembly. Want of Wagons. Franklin undertakes to procure them. His Advertisement. Anecdote of Braddock. Battle with the Indians. Retreat.

1. IN 1754, there was again a prospect of war with France. A congress of commissioners from the different colonies was ordered to be assembled at Albany, to confer with the chiefs of the Six Nations of Indians, in respect to the defence of the country. The governor of Pennsylvania communicated this order to the assembly, and nominated Franklin, with Mr. Norris, Mr. Penn, and Mr. Peters, to act as commissioners. Presents were pro-

1. Why were commissioners from the colonies ordered to assemble at Albany? Who were sent from Pennsylvania?

vided for the Indians, and they all met at Albany about the middle of June.

2. On his way thither, Franklin projected and drew up a plan for the union of all the colonies under one government, so far as might be necessary for defence and other important services. This plan was shown to two or three of his friends, and, having met with their approbation, was submitted to congress. It then appeared that several of the commissioners had formed projects of the same kind. A committee was appointed to consider the several plans, and report. That proposed by Franklin was finally adopted with a few alterations: copies of it were sent to the British government and to the assemblies of the several provinces.

3. The British government were unwilling to permit the union proposed at Albany, from a fear that the colonies would become too military and feel their own strength. They accordingly sent over General Braddock, with two regiments of regular English troops, for the purpose of protecting them. This officer, with his forces, landed at Alexandria, and marched thence to Fredericktown in Maryland, where he halted for carriages. Franklin was sent by the assembly to wait upon him at this place in order to arrange some matters which had occurred to excite serious misunderstanding.

2. What plan did Franklin draw up? 3. Why did the British government disapprove of the proposed union? What course did they pursue? Why was Franklin sent to Fredericktown?

4. His son accompanied him upon this journey. They found the general at Fredericktown, waiting, impatiently, for the return of those whom he had sent through the back parts of Maryland and Virginia to collect wagons. Franklin staid with him several days, dined with him daily, and had full opportunity of removing his prejudices. When he was about to depart, it had been ascertained that only twenty-five wagons could be procured, and not all of them fit for use.

5. The general and all the officers were very much surprised, and declared that the expedition was entirely at an end. They exclaimed bitterly against their government for sending them into a country destitute of the means of carrying their stores and baggage, for which no less than one hundred and fifty wagons were necessary. Franklin remarked that it was a pity they had not been landed in Pennsylvania, as in that country almost every farmer had his wagon. The general caught at his words, and eagerly said—"Then you, sir, who are a man of interest there, can possibly procure them for us; and I beg you will undertake it."

6. Franklin asked what terms were to be offered to the owners of the wagons; and he was desired to put on paper the terms that appeared to him necessary. This he did; and they were accepted. He

5. What impeded the progress of the expedition? How did General Braddock obviate this difficulty? 6. What step did Franklin take to procure the wagons?

soon after published an advertisement, offering to contract for certain wagons and horses, on specified terms ; and to this added an address to the inhabitants of the counties of York, Lancaster and Cumberland. The address was in the following words:

7. “ *Friends and Countrymen*,—Being occasionally at the camp at Frederick, a few days since, I found the general and officers exceedingly exasperated on account of their not being supplied with horses and carriages, which had been expected from this province, as most able to furnish them ; but, through the dissensions between our governor and assembly, money had not been provided, nor any steps taken for that purpose.

8. “ It was proposed to send an armed force immediately into these counties, to seize as many of the best carriages and horses as should be wanted, and compel as many persons into the service, as would be necessary to drive and take care of them.

* * * * *

9. “ If you are really, as I believe you are, good and loyal subjects to his majesty, you may now do a most acceptable service, and make it easy to yourselves ; for three or four of such as cannot separately spare, from the business of their plantations, a wagon and four horses and a driver, may do it together ; one furnishing the wagon, another one or two horses, and another the driver, and divide the pay proportionably between you.

10. “ But if you do not this service to your king

and country voluntarily, when such good pay and reasonable terms are offered to you, your loyalty will be strongly suspected. The king's business must be done. So many brave troops, come so far for your defence, must not stand idle through your backwardness to do what may be reasonably expected from you. Wagons and horses must be had; violent measures will probably be used; and you will be left to seek for recompense where you can find it, and your case, perhaps, be little pitied or regarded.

11. "I have no particular interest in this affair, as (except the satisfaction of endeavoring to do good) I shall have only my labor for my pains. If this method of obtaining the wagons and horses is not likely to succeed, I am obliged to send word to the general in fourteen days; and I suppose Sir John St. Clair, the hussar, with a body of soldiers, will immediately enter the province for the purpose; which I shall be very sorry to hear, because I am, very sincerely and truly,

"Your friend and well-wisher,

"B. FRANKLIN."

12. Eight hundred pounds were furnished by the general, to be paid out as advance money to the owners of the wagons and horses. This sum not being large enough, Franklin advanced upwards of two

12. How much was furnished by the British general to be paid in advance to the owners of the wagons and horses? How much did Franklin furnish?

hundred pounds more. In two weeks, the one hundred and fifty wagons, with two hundred and fifty-nine carrying horses, were on their way to the camp. The advertisement promised payment in case any wagons or horses should be lost; and as the owners knew nothing about the dependence to be placed on General Braddock, they insisted on Franklin's bond for the performance. This he accordingly gave them.

13. General Braddock was a brave man, but had too much self-confidence, too high an opinion of the power of regular troops, and too mean an idea of both Americans and Indians. About one hundred Indians joined him on his march, who might have been of great use to him as guides and scouts, if he had treated them kindly. He neglected and slighted them, however, and they gradually left him.

14. In conversation one day with Franklin, he gave an account of his intended progress. "After taking Fort Duquesne," said he, "I am to proceed to Niagara; and, having taken that, to Frontenac, if the season will allow time, and I suppose it will; for Duquesne can hardly detain me above three or four days; and then I see nothing that can obstruct my march to Niagara."

15. Franklin knew something about marches through the woods, and the tricks of the Indians,

13. What was the character of General Braddock? How did he treat the Indians who joined him on his march? 14. What were the general's plans?

and entertained serious doubts in respect to the success of the campaign. He only ventured, however, to say—"To be sure, sir, if you arrive well before Duquesne with the fine troops, so well provided with artillery, the fort, though completely fortified, and assisted with a very strong garrison, can probably make but a short resistance. The only danger I apprehend of obstruction to your march, is from the ambuscades of the Indians, who, by constant practice, are dexterous in laying and executing them; and the slender line, near four miles long, which your army must make, may expose it to be attacked by surprise in its flanks, and to be cut like a thread into several pieces, which, from their distance, cannot come up in time to support each other."

16. Braddock smiled at his ignorance, and replied—"These savages may, indeed, be a formidable enemy to your raw American militia; but upon the king's regular and disciplined troops, sir, it is impossible they should make any impression."

17. The enemy did not take that advantage of the army under Braddock which Franklin anticipated. They suffered it to approach without interruption till within nine miles of Fort Duquesne. The troops had just crossed a river, were in a more open part of the woods than any they passed, and moving forward in a compact form. Their ad-

15. What did Franklin tell him? 16. What was Braddock's reply? 17. Where were the British troops first attacked?

vanced guard was suddenly attacked by a heavy fire from behind trees and bushes. This was the first intelligence which the general had of the approach of an enemy.

18. The guard being disordered, the general hurried the troops up to their assistance. This was done in great confusion, through wagons, baggage and cattle. They were now attacked also from behind. The officers were on horseback, and easily distinguished and picked out as marks by the enemy. The soldiers were thrown together in great disorder, having or hearing no orders, and standing to be shot at, till two thirds of them were killed; then, being seized with a panic, the remainder fled in precipitation.

19. The wagoners took each a horse out of his team, and scampered. Their example was immediately followed by others, so that all the wagons, provisions, artillery and stores were left to the enemy. The general, being wounded, was brought off with difficulty; out of eighty-six officers, sixty-three were killed or wounded; and seven hundred and fourteen men killed, of eleven hundred.

20. These men had been picked from the whole army; the rest had been left behind with Colonel Dunbar, who was to follow with the heavier parts of the baggage. The fugitives arrived at Dunbar's camp, and communicated their own panic to him

18. What was the progress of the battle? 19. What became of the wagons and artillery? 20. Where did the fugitives resort?

and all his people. Though he had now above a thousand men, he determined not to meddle with the enemy, but to make the best of his way to the settlements. Notwithstanding requests from the governor of Virginia, Maryland and Pennsylvania, that he would post his troops on the frontiers to protect the inhabitants, he continued his hasty and disgraceful march till he had arrived at snug quarters in Philadelphia.

CHAPTER XIV.

Settlement for the Loss of Wagons. Anecdote. Preparations for Defence. Franklin appointed to a military Command. Assembles the Troops at Bethlehem. Farmers killed by Indians. Building Forts. Extracts from Franklin's Journal. Indian Cunning. Anecdotes of the Moravians.

1. As soon as the loss of the wagons and horses was generally known, all the owners came upon Franklin for the valuation which he had given bond to pay. Their demands troubled him exceedingly. He informed them that the money was ready in the paymaster's hands, but the order for paying it must first be obtained from General Shirley; that he had applied for it; and they must have patience till he

What was Colonel Dunbar's conduct?

1. To what embarrassment was Franklin now exposed?

could receive it. All this, however, was not sufficient, and some began to sue him. General Shirley at length released him from this disagreeable situation, by appointing commissioners to examine the claims, and order payment. They amounted to nearly twenty thousand pounds.

2. Before receiving news of the defeat, two gentlemen came to Franklin with a subscription paper for raising money to pay the expense of a grand fire-work, which it was intended to exhibit on receiving the news of taking Fort Duquesne. Franklin told them gravely, that he thought it would be time enough to prepare for rejoicing when they knew they should have occasion to rejoice. They seemed surprised that he did not immediately comply with their proposal. "Why," said one of them, "you surely do not suppose that the fort will not be taken?" "I don't know," replied Franklin, "that it will not be taken; but I know that the events of war are subject to great uncertainty." The plan was fortunately abandoned.

3. The assembly now laid a tax, to raise money for the defence of the province, and Franklin was appointed one of the commissioners to dispose of it. He had also carried a bill through the house for establishing and disciplining a voluntary militia. To promote the association necessary to form the

How was he relieved? 2. Relate the anecdote in respect to the subscription for fire-works. 3. What tax was now laid by the assembly? What bill did Franklin carry through the house?

militia, he wrote a dialogue upon the subject, which was extensively circulated, and thought to have great effect.

4. While the several companies in the city and country were forming, and learning their exercise, the governor prevailed upon Franklin to take charge of the north-western frontier, which was infested by the enemy, and provide for the defence of the inhabitants, by raising troops, and building a line of forts. Franklin did not think himself very well qualified for the military, but was willing to be of all the service in his power. He received a commission from the governor, with full authority, and a parcel of blank commissions for officers, to be given to whom he thought fit. Five hundred and sixty men were soon raised and placed under his command.

5. The place first selected for a fort was Gnadenhutzen, a village settled by the Moravians, and which had recently been the scene of terrible destruction and death. In order to march thither, Franklin assembled the companies at Bethlehem, the chief establishment of those people. He was surprised to find this place in a good state of defence. The destruction of Gnadenhutzen had made them apprehensive of danger.

6. They had purchased a quantity of arms and

4. What charge was now committed to Franklin? How many men were placed under his command? 5. What place was selected for a fort? By whom was Gnadenhutzen settled?

ammunition from New York, and had even placed quantities of small paving stones between the windows of their high houses, to be thrown down upon the heads of any Indians that should attempt to force into them. The armed brethren kept watch, and relieved each other as regularly as in any garrison town.

7. In conversation with their bishop, Spangenberg, Franklin mentioned his surprise ; for, knowing they had obtained an act of parliament excusing them from military duties in the colonies, he supposed they had motives of conscience which forbade their bearing arms. The bishop answered—"That it was not one of their established principles ; but that at the time of their obtaining that act it was thought to be a principle with many of their people. On this occasion, however, to their surprise they found it adopted but by a few." A strong sense of danger very soon overcomes such notions.

8. It was the beginning of January when they set out upon the business of building forts. One detachment was sent towards the Minisink, with directions to erect one for the upper part of the country, and another to the lower part, with similar directions. Franklin went in person, with the remaining troops, to Gnadenhutten, where a force was thought more immediately necessary. The Mora-

6. What measures had the inhabitants of Bethlehem taken for defence ? 7. What was the conversation of Franklin with the bishop Spangenberg ? 8. Where were the forts built ?

vians procured him five wagons for their tools, stores and baggage.

9. Just before they left Bethlehem, eleven farmers, who had been driven from their homes by the Indians, came to Franklin, requesting a supply of fire-arms, that they might go back and bring off their cattle. He gave them each a gun with suitable ammunition.

10. They had not marched many miles when it began to rain, and it continued raining all day. There were no habitations on the road to shelter them, till they reached, about night, the house of a German. Here, in the barn and shed, they were all huddled together as wet as water could make them. It was well for them that they were not attacked upon the march, for their arms were of the poorest sort, and it was impossible to keep the locks of their guns dry. The poor farmers, before mentioned, suffered on this account. They met with the Indians, and, the primings being wet with rain, their guns would not go off, so that only one of them escaped with his life.

11. The next day was fair. The companies continued their march, and arrived at the desolate Gnadenhutzen. There was a mill in the neighborhood, round which several pine boards had been left. With these they soon built themselves huts. Their next work was to bury the dead they found there.

9. Relate the substance of the ninth and tenth paragraphs. 11. What was done on arriving at Gnadenhutzen ?

On the following morning their fort was planned and marked out, with a circumference measuring four hundred and fifty-five feet. Their axes, of which they had seventy, were immediately set to work to cut down trees for palisades; and, as the men were very skilful in the use of them, they made great despatch.

12. Seeing the trees fall so fast, Franklin had the curiosity to look at his watch when two men began to cut at a pine. In six minutes they had it upon the ground, and it was fourteen inches in diameter. Each pine made three palisades of eighteen feet long, pointed at one end. While these were preparing, other men dug a trench all round, of three feet deep, in which the palisades were to be planted. When these were set up, the carpenters built within them a platform of boards all round, about six feet high, for the men to stand on and fire through the loopholes. They had one swivel gun, which they mounted, and fired as soon as it was fixed, that the Indians might know they had such pieces. Thus their fort, such as it was, was finished in a week, though it rained so hard every other day that the men were almost unable to work.

13. "This gave me occasion to observe," says Franklin, "that when men are employed they are best contented. For on the days they worked they

12. How was the fort constructed? How long did it take to build it? 13. What remarks does Franklin make about keeping employed?

were good-natured and cheerful, and, with the consciousness of having done a good day's work, they spent the evening jollily. But, on our idle days, they were mutinous and quarrelsome, finding fault with the pork and the bread, and were continually in bad humor; which put me in mind of a sea captain, whose rule it was to keep his men constantly at work; and when his mate once told him that they had done every thing, and there was nothing further to employ them about, 'O,' said he, '*make them scour the anchor.*' "

14. "This kind of fort," he continues, "however contemptible, is a sufficient defence against Indians who have no cannon. Finding ourselves now posted securely, and having a place to retreat to on occasion, we ventured out in parties to scour the adjacent country. We met with no Indians, but we found the places, on the neighboring hills, where they had lain to watch our proceedings. There was an art in their contrivance of those places that seems worth mentioning.

15. "It being winter, a fire was necessary for them; but a common fire, on the surface of the ground, would, by its light, have discovered their position at a distance; they had, therefore, dug holes in the ground about three feet in diameter, and somewhat deeper; we found where they had, with their hatchets, cut off the charcoal from the side of burnt logs

14. What does Franklin say of the fort? 15. How did they manage to conceal their fires?

lying in the woods. With these coals they had made small fires in the bottom of the holes, and we observed, among the weeds and grass, the prints of their bodies, made by their lying all round, with their legs hanging down in the holes, to keep their feet warm; which, with them, is an essential point. This kind of fire, so managed, could not discover them either by its light, flame, sparks, or even smoke; it appeared that the number was not great, and it seems they saw we were too many to be attacked by them with prospect of advantage.

16. "We had for our chaplain a zealous Presbyterian minister, Mr. Beatty, who complained to me that the men did not generally attend his prayers and exhortations. When they enlisted they were promised, besides pay and provisions, a gill of rum a day, which was punctually served out to them, half in the morning and half in the evening, and I observed they were punctual in attending to receive it.

17. "Upon which I said to Mr. Beatty, 'It is perhaps below the dignity of your profession to act as steward of the rum; but if you were to distribute it out only just after prayers, you would have them all about you.' He liked the thought, undertook the task, and, with the help of a few hands to measure out the liquor, executed it to satisfaction; and never were prayers more generally and more punctually attended. So that I think this method preferable to the punishment inflicted by some military laws for non-attendance on divine service

18. "I had hardly finished this business, and got my fort well stored with provisions, when I received a letter from the governor, acquainting me that he had called the assembly, and wished my attendance there, if the posture of affairs on the frontiers was such that my remaining there was no longer necessary. My friends, too, of the assembly pressing me by their letters to be, if possible, at the meeting, and my three intended forts being now completed, and the inhabitants contented to remain on their farms under that protection, I resolved to return; the more willingly, as a New-England officer, Colonel Clapham, experienced in Indian war, being on a visit to our establishment, consented to accept the command.

19. "I gave him a commission, and, parading the garrison, had it read before them, and introduced him to them as an officer, who, from his skill in military affairs, was much more fit to command them than myself; and giving them a little exhortation, took my leave. I was escorted as far as Bethlehem, where I rested a few days to recover from the fatigue I had undergone. The first night, lying on a good bed, I could hardly sleep, it was so different from my hard lodging on the floor of a hut at Gnadenhutzen, with only a blanket or two.

20. While at Bethlehem, I inquired a little into the practices of the Moravians; some of them had

2. Why did Franklin leave the fort? Who succeeded him?

accompanied me, and all were very kind to me. I found they worked for a common stock, ate at common tables, and slept in common dormitories, great numbers together. In the dormitories I observed loop-holes at certain distances, all along just under the ceiling, which I thought judiciously placed for change of air. I went to their church, where I was entertained with good music, the organ being accompanied with violins, hautboys, flutes, and clarionets.

21. "I understood their sermons were not usually preached to mixed congregations of men, women and children, as is our common practice; but that they assembled sometimes the married men, at other times their wives, then the young men, the young women, and the little children; each division by itself. The sermon I heard was to the latter, who came in and were placed in rows on benches, the boys under the conduct of a young man, their tutor; and the girls conducted by a young woman. The discourse seemed well adapted to their capacities, and was delivered in a pleasing, familiar manner, coaxing them, as it were, to be good. They behaved very orderly, but looked pale and unhealthy, which made me suspect they were kept too much within doors, or not allowed sufficient exercise.

22. "I inquired concerning the Moravian mar

20. What does Franklin say of the practice of the Moravians? Of their dormitories? Of their church? 21. What is said of their congregation?

riages, whether the report was true that they were by lot. I was told that lots were used only in particular cases, that generally, when a young man found himself disposed to marry, he informed the elders of his class, who consulted the elder ladies that governed the young women. As these elders of the different sexes were well acquainted with the tempers and dispositions of their respective pupils, they could best judge what matches were suitable, and their judgments were generally acquiesced in.

23. "But if, for example, it should happen that two or three young women were found to be equally proper for the young man, the lot was then resorted to. I objected, if the matches are not made by the mutual choice of the parties, some of them may chance to be very unhappy. 'And so they may,' answered my informer, 'if you let the parties choose for themselves.' Which, indeed, I could not deny."

22. How are the Moravian marriages conducted? 23. What did Franklin suggest on this subject? What was the reply?

CHAPTER XIV.

Disputes with the Proprietaries. Franklin sent by the Assembly to London. Appointed general Agent for the Colonies. University Honors. The Armonica. Murder of the friendly Indians.

1. Soon after his return to Philadelphia, Franklin was appointed by the assembly upon a very important mission. From the earliest establishment of Pennsylvania, there seems to have been a spirit of dispute among its inhabitants. During the lifetime of William Penn, the constitution had been three times altered. After this time quarrels were continually arising between the proprietaries or their governors and the assembly.

2. The proprietaries were the descendants of those to whom the lands were originally granted by the king. They claimed particular privileges for their estates; and among other things that they should be free from taxes. To this the assembly would by no means consent. This subject of dispute interfered in almost every question, and prevented the passage of the most necessary laws.

3. The assembly at length resolved to appeal to the king against the unjust claims of the proprietaries, and appointed Franklin as their agent, to go

2. Who were the proprietaries? What did they claim? How did the assembly treat their claim? 3. What course did the assembly pursue?

over to England and present their petition. After some delay and detention by the governor, under the pretence of bringing about an accommodation, Franklin sailed from New York towards the end of June, and arrived in London on the twenty-seventh of July, 1757.

4. According to the instructions which he had received from the legislature, Franklin had a meeting with the proprietaries who then resided in England, and endeavored to prevail on them to give up their pretensions. Finding it impossible to derive any satisfaction from them, he laid his petition before the council. During this time, the governor of Pennsylvania had consented to a law imposing a tax, in which no distinction was made in favor of the estates of the Penn family.

5. Alarmed at this intelligence, and by Franklin's exertions, they used their utmost endeavors to prevent this law from receiving the royal approbation. They represented it as highly unjust, designed to throw the burden of supporting government upon them, and tending to produce the most ruinous consequences to them and their posterity.

6. The cause was very fully examined before the king's privy council. The Penn family here found

Why was Franklin sent to England? When did he arrive in London? 4. What course did Franklin pursue in respect to the petition? What law had been passed in Pennsylvania? 5. How did the Penn family represent this law? 6. Where was the cause examined?

some very earnest advocates, while those were not wanting ready to espouse the side of the people. After some time spent in debate, a proposal was made that Franklin should solemnly engage that the tax should be so made, that the proprietary estates should pay no more than a fair proportion. This he agreed to perform, and the Penn family withdrew their opposition to the passage of the law.

7. After this business was thus happily concluded, Franklin remained at the court of Great Britain, as agent for the province of Pennsylvania. The extensive knowledge which he possessed of the situation of the colonies, and the regard which he had always shown for their interests, occasioned his appointment to the same office by the colonies of Massachusetts, Maryland and Georgia. His conduct in this situation increased the reputation and esteem in which he was held among his countrymen.

8. Franklin was now in the midst of those friends whom he had acquired by his fame as a philosopher. He was very much sought after by them. Honors from learned societies and colleges were continually heaped upon him. The university of St. Andrew's, in Scotland, conferred on him the degree of doctor of laws. Its example was followed by the universities of Edinburgh and Oxford. His correspondence was sought by the most distinguished philosophers of Europe.

How was it settled ? 7. In what capacity did Franklin remain in London after the conclusion of this business ? 8. How was Franklin received ? What honors were conferred upon him ?

9. Although Franklin was now principally occupied with political pursuits, he found time for his favorite studies. He extended his researches in electricity, and in other interesting subjects of natural philosophy.

10. The tone produced by rubbing the brim of a drinking-glass with a wet finger is familiar to every one. An Irish gentleman, by the name of Puckeridge, by placing on a table a number of glasses of different sizes, and tuning them by partly filling them with water, endeavored to form an instrument upon which he could play tunes. He died before he had completed his invention. Some improvements were afterwards made upon his plan. The sweetness of the tones induced Franklin to try a number of experiments, and he at length formed the instrument which he has called the Armonica.

11. In the summer of 1762 he returned to America. He received the thanks of the assembly of Pennsylvania, "as well for the faithful discharge of his duty to that province in particular, as for the many and important services done to America in general, during his residence in Great Britain." A compensation of five thousand pounds, Pennsylvania currency, was decreed him for his services during six years.

9. How was Franklin chiefly occupied at this time? 10. What was the musical instrument which Franklin formed? 11. When did he return to America? How was he received by the assembly? What compensation did they allow him?

2. During his absence, Franklin had been annually elected member of the assembly. On his return to Philadelphia, he again took his seat in that body, and continued steadily to protect the rights and interests of the people.

13. In December, 1762, great alarm was excited in the province by the following circumstance. Several Indians resided in the county of Lancaster, who had always conducted themselves as friends to the white men. A number of inhabitants upon the frontiers, who had been irritated by repeated injuries, determined to seek revenge on all the Indians who fell in their way.

14. About a hundred and twenty persons assembled, and proceeded on horseback to the settlements of the defenceless Indians. These were now reduced in number to about twenty. They had received information of the intended attack, but did not believe it. As the white people had always been their friends, they feared no danger from them. When the party arrived at the Indian settlement, they found only some women and children and a few old men. The rest were absent at work. The wretches murdered all whom they found, and among others the chief Shahehas, who had been always distinguished for his friendship to the whites.

15. The remainder of these unfortunate Indians, who, by their absence, had escaped the massacre,

13. What alarm was excited in the province in 1762? 14. Relate the substance of this paragraph.

were conducted to Lancaster, and lodged in the jail as a place of security. Large rewards were offered by the governor for the discovery of the murderers. But notwithstanding this, a party of the same men marched to Lancaster, broke open the jail, and inhumanly butchered the innocent Indians who had been placed there for protection.

16. Another proclamation was issued by the governor, but in vain. A party even marched down to Philadelphia, for the purpose of murdering some friendly Indians, who had been removed to the city for safety. The citizens armed to protect them. The Quakers, notwithstanding they are opposed to fighting even in their own defence, were most active upon the occasion. The rioters advanced to Germantown, and the governor fled for safety to the house of Dr. Franklin. It was by his assistance and influence that the disturbance was quelled, and the rioters prevailed upon to return to their homes.

15. What became of the remaining Indians? 16. Was the governor's proclamation of any effect? How were the rioters persuaded to return home?

CHAPTER XV.

Franklin reappointed Agent at the Court of Great Britain. Visits Germany and France. Returns to Philadelphia. Appointed Delegate to Congress. In interview with Lord Howe. Sent as Ambassador to France. Asks to be recalled. Chosen President of the Supreme Council of Philadelphia. Death. Character.

1. THE disputes between the proprietaries and the assembly, which had for a long time subsided, again revived. At the election for a new assembly in 1764, the friends of the proprietaries made great exertions to keep out all those of the opposite party. They obtained a small majority in the city of Philadelphia, and Franklin lost the seat which he had now held for fourteen years.

2. On the meeting of the assembly, it appeared that there was still a majority of Franklin's friends. He was again appointed agent of the provinces at the court of Great Britain. His enemies were sadly vexed at this appointment, and made a solemn protest against it, which they wished to have entered upon the journals. This, however, was refused, and it was consequently published in the newspapers. It drew from him a spirited reply.

1. How did Franklin lose his seat in the assembly? 2. What appointment did he immediately receive?

3. The opposition to his reappointment seems to have greatly affected his feelings, as it came from men with whom he had long been connected, both in public and private life. In his last publication, he took a pathetic leave of Pennsylvania. "I am now," he says, "to take leave (perhaps a last leave) of the country I love, and in which I have spent the greatest part of my life. *Esto perpetua!** I wish every kind of prosperity to my friends, and I forgive my enemies."

4. During his residence in England, he consulted, with unremitting industry, the best interests of his native country. He was every where received with respect, on account of his reputation as a writer and philosopher. In 1766 he made a visit to Holland and Germany, and received the greatest marks of attention from men of science. In the following year he travelled into France, where he was received with much kindness and favor. He became acquainted with a number of literary men, and was introduced to the king, Louis XV.

5. Difficulties had now commenced between Great Britain and her provinces in America. Franklin was unwearied in his efforts to bring about a reconciliation. He had frequent interviews with

3. How did the opposition to his reappointment affect him? 4. What was his reception in England? What countries did he visit in 1766? In 1767? 5. What were Franklin's efforts to bring about a reconciliation between Great Britain and the provinces?

* May it exist for ever!

Lord Howe and Lord Chatham, and other distinguished English statesmen, who entertained for him the highest respect and esteem. Most of the time during his present residence in England was occupied in these vain efforts. The violent conduct of the parent state drove the colonies to war, and Franklin returned to America in the year 1775.

6. The day after his return he was elected, by the legislature of Pennsylvania, a delegate to congress. Not long after his election, a committee was appointed, consisting of Mr. Lynch, Mr. Harrison and himself, to visit the camp at Cambridge. They here united their efforts with those of the commander in chief, to convince the soldiers of the necessity of remaining in the field, and persevering in the cause of their country.

7. When Lord Howe came to America in 1776, with powers to effect an accommodation with the colonists, a correspondence on the subject took place between him and Dr. Franklin. John Adams, Edward Rutledge and Dr. Franklin were afterwards appointed to wait upon Lord Howe, and learn the extent of his powers. These were found to be confined to the liberty of granting pardons, on submission. The Americans, at that time, would not thank the king for a thousand pardons, and the

6. What appointment did he receive on his return? What committee was chosen to visit the camp at Cambridge? 7. With what powers was Lord Howe invested? Who were appointed to wait on him?

interview terminated without effecting any thing towards a reconciliation.

8. Dr. Franklin was an earnest advocate for the entire separation of the colonies from Great Britain, and his writings upon the subject had great influence on the public mind. In 1776, he was president of a convention, which assembled for the purpose of establishing a new form of government for the state of Pennsylvania. In the latter part of this year, he was appointed to assist Mr. Silas Deane in managing the affairs of the colonies at the court of France.

9. No one could have rendered more service to the United States, in this situation, than Dr. Franklin. His character was much honored in France, and as a philosopher he was held in very high esteem. He was received with respect by all the celebrated literary men of the day; and this respect naturally extended itself to all classes. His political negotiations were of the greatest importance to his native country.

10. When the independence of the United States was acknowledged by Great Britain, Franklin became desirous of returning home. The infirmities of age and disease had fallen upon him, and the situation of his country rendered his services no longer indispensably necessary. He applied to

8. Of what convention was Franklin the president in 1776? To what office was he appointed? 9. How was he esteemed in France? How were his political negotiations?

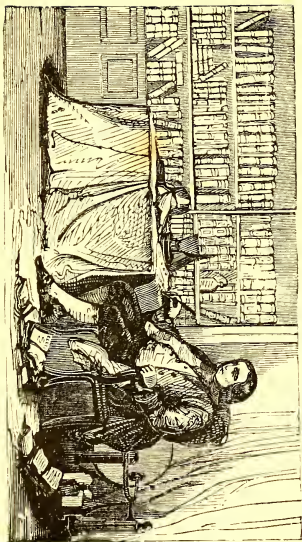
congress to be recalled, and Mr. Jefferson was appointed to succeed him in 1785. In September of the same year, Franklin arrived in Philadelphia. He was shortly after chosen a member of the supreme council for the city, and was soon elected president of the same body.

11. For the next three years Franklin still devoted himself to public business, and to his political and philosophical studies. He retained his desire of being useful to the last of his life. In 1788, his increasing infirmities compelled him to retire from public office. His complaints continued, and he suffered very severely from his sickness. He still, however, remained good-natured and cheerful, was perfectly resigned to his situation, acknowledging the justice and kindness of that Being who had seen fit that he should be thus afflicted.

12. On the 17th of April, 1790, about eleven o'clock at night, Dr. Franklin quietly expired. He had reached an honored and a happy old age. From small beginnings, by a uniform course of prudence and honesty, he had raised himself to high station, wealth and distinction.

13. In considering the character of Franklin, we perceive that the most marked trait was his habit of economy. By economy we do not mean merely

10. When did Franklin return to Philadelphia? What honor was immediately conferred on him? 11. When did he retire from public office? On what account? 12. When did Dr. Franklin die? 13. What was the marked trait in Franklin's character? 14. What other traits were conspicuous?



FRANKLIN RETIRED FROM BUSINESS.

care in gaining and keeping of his money. We mean care of time, of labor; frugality, industry, system, method in all his business. To this we may add economy of his health; avoiding all excess and unnecessary exposure.

14. His cheerfulness and good nature were also remarkable. He was ever happy and entertaining. His anecdotes and jests were always to the point, and his manner of conversing and writing was at once pleasing and effective.

15. For his public services his country owes him her respect and gratitude; while his philosophical discoveries have excited the admiration of the world. His name will live with the names of the few great men who have conferred enduring benefits on mankind.

The following epitaph on himself was written by him many years previous to his death :

The Body
of
BENJAMIN FRANKLIN,
Printer,
[like the cover of an old book,
its contents torn out,
and stript of its lettering and gilding,]
lies here food for worms ;
yet the work itself shall not be lost,
for it will (as he believed) appear once more
in a new
and more beautiful edition,
corrected and amended
by
THE AUTHOR.

ESSAYS OF DR. FRANKLIN

We are acquainted with no writer who inculcates lessons of practical wisdom in a more agreeable and popular manner than Dr. Franklin. His writings abound with infinite good sense, and a singular shrewdness not at all inconsistent with the highest integrity and purity. We have selected a few of his lighter essays as a sequel to the Biography; desirable, both as displaying somewhat of the character of their author, and conveying common sense maxims likely to be of much service to the young.

THE WHISTLE.

A True Story—Written to his Nephew.

WHEN I was a child, at seven years old, my friends, on a holyday, filled my pockets with coppers. I went directly to a shop where they sold toys for children; and being charmed with the sound of a *whistle*, that I met by the way in the hands of another boy, I voluntarily offered him all my money for one. I then came home, and went whistling all over the house, much pleased with my

whistle, but disturbing all the family. My brothers, and sisters, and cousins, understanding the bargain I had made, told me I had given four times as much for it as it was worth. This put me in mind what good things I might have bought with the rest of the money; and they laughed at me so much for my folly, that I cried with vexation; and the reflection gave me more chagrin than the *whistle* gave me pleasure.

This, however, was afterwards of use to me, the impression continuing on my mind; so that often, when I was tempted to buy some unnecessary thing, I said to myself, *Don't give too much for the whistle*; and so I saved my money.

As I grew up, came into the world, and observed the actions of men, I thought I met with many, very many, who *gave too much for their whistle*.

When I saw any one too ambitious of court favor, sacrificing his time in attendance on levees, his repose, his liberty, his virtue, and perhaps his friends, to attain it, I have said to myself, *This man gives too much for his whistle*.

When I saw another fond of popularity, constantly employing himself in political bustles, neglecting his own affairs, and ruining them by that neglect, *He pays, indeed, says I, too much for his whistle*.

If I knew a miser, who gave up every kind of comfortable living, all the pleasure of doing good to others, all the esteem of his fellow citizens, and the joys of benevolent friendship, for the sake of accu-

mulating wealth, *Poor man*, says I, *you do indeed pay too much for your whistle.*

When I meet a man of pleasure, sacrificing every laudable improvement of the mind, or of his fortune, to mere corporeal sensations, *Mistaken man*, says I, *you are providing pain for yourself instead of pleasure; you give too much for your whistle.*

If I see one fond of fine clothes, fine furniture, fine equipages, all above his fortune, for which he contracts debts, and ends his career in prison, *Alas*, says I, *he has paid dear, very dear, for his whistle.*

When I see a beautiful, sweet-tempered girl, married to an ill-natured brute of a husband, *What a pity it is*, says I, *that she has paid so much for a whistle!*

In short, I conceived that great part of the miseries of mankind were brought upon them by the false estimates they had made of the value of things, and by their giving too much for their *whistles*.

HANDSOME AND DEFORMED LEG.

THERE are two sorts of people in the world, who with equal degrees of health and wealth, and the

other comforts of life, become, the one happy, and the other miserable. This arises very much from the different views in which they consider things, persons, and events; and the effect of those different views upon their own minds.

In whatever situation men can be placed, they may find conveniences and inconveniences: in whatever company, they may find persons and conversation more or less pleasing: at whatever table, they may meet with meats and drinks of better and worse taste, dishes better and worse dressed: in whatever climate, they will find good and bad weather: under whatever government, they may find good and bad laws, and good and bad administration of those laws: in whatever poem, or work of genius, they may see faults and beauties: in almost every face, and every person, they may discover fine features and defects, good and bad qualities.

Under these circumstances, the two sorts of people above mentioned fix their attention; those who are disposed to be happy, on the conveniences of things, the pleasant parts of conversation, the well-dressed dishes, the goodness of the wines, the fine weather, &c., and enjoy all with cheerfulness. Those who are to be unhappy, think and speak only of the contrarieties. Hence they are continually discontented themselves, and, by their remarks, sour the pleasures of society; offend personally many people, and make themselves every where

disagreeable. If this turn of mind was founded in nature, such unhappy persons would be the more to be pitied. But as the disposition to criticise, and to be disgusted, is, perhaps, taken up originally by imitation, and is, unawares, grown into a habit, which, though at present strong, may, nevertheless, be cured, when those who have it are convinced of its bad effect on their felicity; I hope this little admonition may be of service to them, and put them on changing a habit which, though in the exercise it is chiefly an act of imagination, yet has serious consequences in life, as it brings on real griefs and misfortunes. For, as many are offended by, and nobody loves, this sort of people, no one shows them more than the most common civility and respect, and scarcely that; and this frequently puts them out of humor, and draws them into disputes and contentions. If they aim at obtaining some advantage in rank or fortune, nobody wishes them success, or will stir a step or speak a word to favor their pretensions. If they incur public censure or disgrace, no one will defend or excuse, and many join to aggravate their misconduct, and render them completely odious.

If these people will not change this bad habit, and condescend to be pleased with what is pleasing, without fretting themselves or others about the contrarieties, it is good for others to avoid an acquaintance with them, which is always disagreeable, and

sometimes very inconvenient, especially when one finds one's self entangled in their quarrels.

An old philosophical friend of mine was grown, from experience, very cautious in this particular, and carefully avoided any intimacy with such people. He had, like other philosophers, a thermometer to show him the heat of the weather; and a barometer to mark when it was likely to prove good or bad; but there being no instrument invented to discover, at first sight, this unpleasing disposition in a person, he, for that purpose, made use of his legs; one of which was remarkably handsome; the other, by some accident, crooked and deformed. If a stranger, at first interview, regarded his ugly leg more than his handsome one, he doubted him. If he spoke of it, and took no notice of the handsome leg, that was sufficient to determine my philosopher to have no further acquaintance with him. Every body has not this two-legged instrument; but every one, with a little attention, may observe signs of that carping, fault-finding disposition, and take the same resolution of avoiding the acquaintance of those infected with it. I therefore advise those critical, querulous, discontented, unhappy people, if they wish to be respected and beloved by others, and happy in themselves, they should *leave off looking at the ugly leg*.

ADVICE TO A YOUNG TRADESMAN.

Written Anno 1748.

TO MY FRIEND, A. B

As you have desired it of me, I write the following hints, which have been of service to me, and may, if observed, be so to you.

REMEMBER that *time* is money. He that can earn ten shillings a day by his labor, and goes abroad, or sits idle one half of that day, though he spends but six pence during his diversion or idleness, ought not to reckon *that* the only expense; he has really spent, or rather thrown away, five shillings besides.

Remember that *credit* is money. If a man lets his money lie in my hands after it is due, he gives me the interest, or so much as I can make of it during that time. This amounts to a considerable sum where a man has good and large credit, and makes good use of it.

Remember that money is of a prolific, generating nature. Money can beget money and its offspring can beget more, and so on. Five shillings turned is six, turned again is seven and three pence; and so on till it becomes a hundred pounds. The more there is of it, the more it produces every

turning, so that the profits rise quicker and quicker. He that kills a breeding sow, destroys all her offspring to the thousandth generation. He that murders a crown, destroys all that it might have produced, even scores of pounds.

Remember that six pounds a year is but a groat a day. For this little sum (which may be daily wasted either in time or expense, unperceived), a man of credit may, on his own security, have the constant possession and use of a hundred pounds. So much in stock, briskly turned by an industrious man, produces great advantage.

Remember this saying, "The good paymaster is lord of another man's purse." He that is known to pay punctually and exactly to the time he promises, may at any time, and on any occasion, raise all the money his friends can spare. This is sometimes of great use. After industry and frugality, nothing contributes more to the raising of a young man in the world, than punctuality and justice in all his dealings: therefore never keep borrowed money an hour beyond the time you promised, lest a disappointment shut up your friend's purse for ever.

The most trifling actions that affect a man's credit are to be regarded. The sound of your hammer at five in the morning, or nine at night, heard by a creditor, makes him easy six months longer; but if he sees you at a billiard-table, or hears your voice at a tavern, when you should be

at work, he sends for his money the next day ; demands it before he can receive it in a lump.

It shows, besides, that you are mindful of what you owe ; it makes you appear a careful as well as an honest man, and that still increases your credit.

Beware of thinking all your own that you possess, and of living accordingly. It is a mistake that many people who have credit fall into. To prevent this, keep an exact account, for some time, both of your expenses and your income. If you take the pains at first to mention particulars, it will have this good effect ; you will discover how wonderfully small, trifling expenses mount up to large sums, and will discern what might have been, and may for the future be saved, without occasioning any great inconvenience.

In short, the way to wealth, if you desire it, is as plain as the way to market. It depends chiefly on two words, *industry* and *frugality* ; that is, waste neither *time* nor *money*, but make the best use of both. Without industry and frugality nothing will do, and with them every thing. He that gets all he can honestly, and saves all he gets (necessary expenses excepted), will certainly become *rich*—if that Being, who governs the world, to whom all should look for a blessing on their honest endeavors, doth not, in his wise providence, otherwise determine.

AN OLD TRADESMAN.

NECESSARY HINTS TO THOSE THAT
WOULD BE RICH.*Written Anno 1786.*

THE use of money is all the advantage there is in having money.

For six pounds a year you may have the use of one hundred pounds, provided you are a man of known prudence and honesty.

He that spends a groat a day idly, spends idly above six pounds a year, which is the price for the use of one hundred pounds.

He that wastes idly a groat's worth of his time per day, one day with another, wastes the privilege of using one hundred pounds each year.

He that idly loses five shillings worth of time, loses five shillings, and might as prudently throw five shillings into the sea.

He that loses five shillings, not only loses that sum, but all the advantages that might be made by turning it in dealing; which, by the time that a young man becomes old, will amount to a considerable sum of money.

Again; he that sells upon credit, asks a price for what he sells equivalent to the principal and interest of his money for the time he is to be kept out of it; therefore, he that buys upon credit, pays interest for what he buys; and he that pays ready

money, might let that money out to use ; so that he that possesses any thing he has bought, pays interest for the use of it.

Yet, in buying goods, it is best to pay ready money, because, he that sells upon credit, expects to lose five per cent. by bad debts ; therefore he charges, on all he sells upon credit, an advance that shall make up that deficiency.

Those who pay for what they buy upon credit, pay their share of this advance.

He that pays ready money, escapes, or may escape, that charge.

A penny saved is twopence clear ;
A pin a day's a groat a year.

P A P E R .

A POEM.

SOME wits of old,—such wits of old there were,—
Whose hints showed meaning, whose allusions care,
By one brave stroke to mark all human kind,
Called clear blank paper every infant mind ;
When still, as opening sense her dictates wrote,
Fair Virtue put a seal, or Vice a blot.

The thought was happy, pertinent and true ;
Methinks a genius might the plan pursue.
I (can you pardon my presumption ?) I—
No wit, no genius, yet for once will try.

Various the papers various wants produce,
The wants of fashion, elegance and use.
Men are as various ; and if right I scan,
Each sort of *paper* represents some *man*.

Pray note the fop—half powder and half lace—
Nice as a band-box were his dwelling-place :
He's the *gilt-paper*, which apart you store,
And lock from vulgar hands in the 'scrutoire

Mechanics, servants, farmers, and so forth,
Are *copy-paper*, of inferior worth ;
Less prized, more useful, for your desk decreed
Free to all pens, and prompt at every need.

The wretch whom av'rice bids to pinch and spare,
Starve, cheat, and pilfer, to enrich an heir,
Is coarse *brown-paper* ; such as pedlers choose
To wrap up wares, which better men will use.

Take next the miser's contrast, who destroys
Health, fame, and fortune, in a round of joys.
Will any paper match him ? Yes, throughout
He's a true *sinking-paper*, past all doubt.

The retail politician's anxious thought
 Deems *this* side always right, and *that* stark naught,
 He foams with censure; with applause he raves—
 A dupe to rumors, and a tool of knaves;
 He'll want no type his weakness to proclaim,
 While such a thing as *fools-cap* has a name.

The hasty gentleman, whose blood runs high,
 Who picks a quarrel if you step awry,
 Who can't a jest, or hint, or look, endure:
 What's he? What? *Touch-paper*,—to be sure.

What are our poets, take them as they fall,
 Good, bad, rich, poor, much read, not read at all?
 Them and their works in the same class you'll find
 They are the mere *waste-paper* of mankind.

Observe the maiden, innocent & sweet;
 She's fair *white-paper*, an unsullied sheet;
 On which the happy man, whom Fate ordains,
 May write his *name*, and take her for his pains.

One instance more, and only one I'll bring;
 'Tis the *great man* who scorns a little thing,
 Whose thoughts, whose deeds, whose maxims are
 his own,
 Formed on the feelings of his heart & sense.
 True, genuine *royal-paper* is his breast,
 Of all the kinds most precious, pure & best.

ON THE ART OF SWIMMING.

In Answer to some Inquiries of M. Dubourg on the Subject.*

I AM apprehensive that I shall not be able to find leisure for making all the disquisitions and experiments which would be desirable on this subject. I must, therefore, content myself with a few remarks.

The specific gravity of some human bodies, in comparison to that of water, has been examined by M. Robinson, in our Philosophical Transactions, volume 50, page 30, for the year 1757. He asserts, that fat persons, with small bones, float most easily upon water.

The diving bell is accurately described in our Transactions.

When I was a boy, I made two oval pallets, each about ten inches long, and six broad, with a hole for the thumb, in order to retain it fast in the palm of my hand. They much resembled a painter's pallets. In swimming, I pushed the edges of these forward, and I struck the water with their flat surfaces as I drew them back: I remember I swam faster by means of these pallets, but they fatigued my wrists. I also fitted to the soles of my feet a

* Translator of Dr. Franklin's works into French

kind of sandals ; but I was not satisfied with them, because I observed that the stroke is partly given by the inside of the feet and the ankles, and not entirely with the soles of the feet.

We have here waistcoats for swimming, which are made of double sail cloth, with small pieces of cork quilted in between them.

I know by experience, that it is a great comfort to a swimmer who has a considerable distance to go, to turn himself sometimes on his back, and to vary in other respects the means of procuring a progressive motion.

When he is seized with the cramp in the leg, the method of driving it away is to give to the parts affected a sudden, vigorous and violent shock ; which he may do in the air as he swims on his back.

During the great heats of summer, there is no danger in bathing, however warm we may be, in rivers which have been thoroughly warmed by the sun. But to throw one's self into cold spring water, when the body has been heated by exercise in the sun, is an imprudence which may prove fatal. I once knew an instance of four young men, who, having worked at harvest in the heat of the day, with a view of refreshing themselves, plunged into a spring of cold water ; two died upon the spot, a third the next morning, and the fourth recovered with great difficulty. A copious draught of cold water, in

similar circumstances, is frequently attended with the same effect in North America.

The exercise of swimming is one of the most healthy and agreeable in the world. After having swam for an hour or two in the evening, one sleeps coolly the whole night, even during the most ardent heat of summer. Perhaps, the pores being cleansed, the insensible perspiration increases, and occasions this coolness. It is certain, that much swimming is the means of stopping a diarrhœa, and even of producing a constipation. With respect to those who do not know how to swim, or who are affected with a diarrhœa at a season which does not permit them to use that exercise, a warm bath, by cleansing and purifying the skin, is found very salutary, and often effects a radical cure. I speak from my own experience, frequently repeated, and that of others, to whom I have recommended this.

You will not be displeased if I conclude these hasty remarks by informing you, that as the ordinary method of swimming is reduced to the act of rowing with the arms and legs, and is, consequently, a laborious and fatiguing operation when the space of water to be crossed is considerable; there is a method in which a swimmer may pass to great distances with much facility, by means of a sail. This discovery I fortunately made by accident, and in the following manner:—

When I was a boy, I amused myself one day

with flying a paper kite ; and approaching the back of a pond, which was near a mile broad, I tied the string to a stake, and the kite ascended to a very considerable height above the pond, while I was swimming. In a little time, being desirous of amusing myself with my kite and enjoying at the same time the pleasure of swimming, I returned, and loosing from the stake the string with the little stick which was fastened to it, went again into the water, where I found, that, lying on my back, and holding the stick in my hands, I was drawn along the surface of the water in a very agreeable manner. Having then engaged another boy to carry my clothes round the pond, to a place which I pointed out to him, on the other side, I began to cross the pond with my kite, which carried me quite over without the least fatigue, and with the greatest pleasure imaginable. I was only obliged occasionally to halt a little in my course, and resist its progress, when it appeared that, by following too quick, I lowered the kite too much ; by doing which occasionally I made it rise again. I have never since that time practised this singular mode of swimming, though I think it not impossible to cross in this manner from Dover to Calais. The packet-boat, however, is still preferable.

PRELIMINARY ADDRESS TO THE PENNSYLVANIA ALMANAC, ENTITLED, "POOR RICHARD'S ALMANAC, FOR THE YEAR 1758."

I HAVE heard, that nothing gives an author so great pleasure as to find his works respectfully quoted by other learned authors. This pleasure I have seldom enjoyed; for though I have been, if I may say it without vanity, an eminent author (of almanacs) annually, now a full quarter of a century, my brother authors in the same way (for what reason I know not) have ever been very sparing in their applauses; and no other author has taken the least notice of me; so that, did not my writings produce me some solid pudding, the great deficiency of praise would have quite discouraged me.

I concluded, at length, that the people were the best judges of my merit, for they buy my works; and besides, in my rambles, where I am not personally known, I have frequently heard one or other of my adages repeated, with "as poor Richard ays," at the end on't. This gave me some satisfaction, as it showed not only that my instructions were regarded, but discovered likewise some respect for my authority; and I own, that to encourage the practice of remembering and repeating

those wise sentences, I have sometimes quoted myself with great gravity.

Judge, then, how much I have been gratified by an incident which I am going to relate to you. I stopped my horse lately where a great number of people were collected at an auction of merchants goods. The hour of sale not being come, they were conversing on the badness of the times; and one of the company called to a plain, clean, old man, with white locks, "Pray, father Abraham, what think ye of the times? Won't these heavy taxes quite ruin the country? How shall we ever be able to pay them? What would you advise us to?" Father Abraham stood up, and replied,— "If you have my advice, I'll give it to you in short; 'for a word to the wise is enough; and many words won't fill a bushel,' as poor Richard says." They joined in desiring him to speak his mind; and, gathering round him, he proceeded as follows:

"Friends (says he) and neighbors, the taxes are indeed very heavy; and if those laid on by the government were the only ones we had to pay, we might more easily discharge them: but we have many others, and much more grievous to some of us. We are taxed twice as much by our idleness, three times as much by our pride, and four times as much by our folly: and from these taxes the commissioners cannot ease or deliver us, by allowing an abatement. However, let us hearken to

good advice, and something may be done for us; 'God helps them that help themselves,' as poor Richard says in his Almanac.

"It would be thought a hard government that should tax its people one tenth part of their time, to be employed in its service; but idleness taxes many of us much more, if we reckon all that is spent in absolute sloth, or doing of nothing, with that which is spent in idle employments, or amusements that amount to nothing. Sloth, by bringing on diseases, absolutely shortens life. 'Sloth, like rust, consumes faster than labor wears, while the key often used is always bright,' as poor Richard says. 'But dost thou love life? then do not squander time, for that's the stuff life is made of,' as poor Richard says. How much more than is necessary do we spend in sleep! forgetting that 'the sleeping fox catches no poultry, and that there will be sleeping enough in the grave,' as poor Richard says. 'If time be of all things the most precious, wasting time must be (as poor Richard says) the greatest prodigality;' since, as he elsewhere tells us, 'Lost time is never found again; and what we call time enough, always proves little enough.' Let us then up and be doing, and doing to the purpose: so by diligence shall we do more with less perplexity. 'Sloth makes all things difficult, but industry all easy,' as poor Richard says; and 'He that riseth late must trot all day, and shall scarce overtake his business at night; while lazy-

ness travels so slowly, that poverty soon overtakes him,' as we read in poor Richard; who adds, 'Drive thy business, let not that drive thee;' and,

'Early to bed, and early to rise,
Makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wise.'

"So what signifies wishing and hoping for better times? We make these times better if we bestir ourselves. 'Industry needs not wish,' as poor Richard says; 'He that lives upon hope will die fasting.' 'There are no gains without pains; then help, hands, for I have no lands: or if I have, they are smartly taxed;' and (as poor Richard likewise observes) 'He that hath a trade hath an estate, and he that hath a calling hath an office of profit and honor;' but then the trade must be worked at, and the calling well followed, or neither the estate nor the office will enable us to pay our taxes. If we are industrious, we shall never starve; for, as poor Richard says, 'At the working-man's house hunger looks in, but dares not enter.' Nor will the bailiff or the constable enter; for, 'Industry pays debts, but despair increaseth them,' says poor Richard. What though you have found no treasure, nor has any rich relation left you a legacy? 'Diligence is the mother of good luck,' as poor Richard says: and 'God gives all things to industry: then plough deep while sluggards sleep, and you will have corn to sell and to keep,' says poor Dick. Work while it is called to-lay, for you know not how much you

may be hindered to-morrow ; which makes poor Richard say, ' One to-day is worth two to-morrows ;' and, further, ' Have you somewhat to do to-morrow, do it to-day.' ' If you were a servant, would you not be ashamed that a good master should catch you idle ? Are you then your own master ? be ashamed to catch yourself idle,' as poor Dick says. When there is so much to be done for yourself, your family, and your gracious king, be up by peep of day : ' Let not the sun look down, and say, Inglorious here he lies !' Handle your tools without mittens ; remember, that ' the cat in gloves catches no mice,' as poor Richard says. It is true, there is much to be done, and perhaps you are weak-handed ; but stick to it steadily, and you will see great effects ; for continual dropping wears away stones, and by diligence and patience the mouse ate into the cable ; and ' light strokes fell great oaks,' as poor Richard says in his Almanac, the year I cannot just now remember.

" Methinks I hear some of you say, ' Must a man afford himself no leisure ?'—I will tell thee, my friend, what poor Richard says ; ' Employ thy time well, if thou meanest to gain leisure ; and since thou art not sure of a minute, throw not away an hour.' Leisure is time for doing something useful ; this leisure the diligent man will obtain, but the lazy man never ; so that, as poor Richard says, ' A life of leisure and a life of laziness are two things.' Do you imagine that sloth will afford you

more comfort than labor? No; for, as poor Richard says, 'Troubles spring from idleness, and grievous toils from needless ease: many without labor would live by their own wits only; but they break for want of stock.' Whereas industry gives comfort, and plenty, and respect. 'Fly pleasures, and they'll follow you; the diligent spinner has a large shift; and now I have a sheep and a cow, every body bids me good-morrow;' all which is well said by poor Richard.

"But with our industry, we must likewise be steady, and settled, and careful, and oversee our own affairs with our own eyes, and not trust too much to others; for, as poor Richard says,

'I never saw an oft-removed tree,
Nor yet an oft-removed family,
'That throve so well as one that settled be.'

"And again, 'Three removes are as bad as a fire:' and again, 'Keep thy shop, and thy shop will keep thee:' and again, 'If you would have your business done, go; if not, send.' And again,

'He that by the plough would thrive,
Himself must either hold or drive.'

"And again, 'The eye of the master will do more work than both his hands;' and again, 'Want of care does us more damage than want of knowledge;' and again, 'Not so oversee workmen is to leave them your purse open.' Trusting too much

As others' care is the ruin of many; for, as the Almanac says, 'In the affairs of the world, men are saved not by faith, but by the want of it; but a man's own care is profitable; for,' saith poor Dick, 'Learning is to the studious and riches to the careful, as well as power to the bold, and heaven to the virtuous.' And, further, 'If you would have a faithful servant, and one that you like, serve yourself.' And again, he adviseth to circumspection and care, even in the smallest matters, because sometimes, 'A little neglect may breed great mischief;' adding, 'For want of a nail the shoe was lost; for want of a shoe the horse was lost; and for want of a horse the rider was lost : ' being overtaken and slain by the enemy, all for want of care about a horse-shoe nail.

"So much for industry, my friends, and attention to one's own business; but to these we must add frugality, if we would make our industry more certainly successful. A man may, if he knows not how to save as he gets, 'keep his nose all his life to the grindstone, and die not worth a groat at last.' 'A fat kitchen makes a lean will,' as poor Richard says; and,

'Many estates are spent in the getting;
Since women for tea forsook spinning and knitting,
And men for punch forsook hewing and splitting.'

"If you would be wealthy (says he, in another Almanac), think of saving, as well as of getting:

the Indies have not made Spain rich, because her outgoes are greater than her incomes.'

"Away then with your expensive follies, and you will not have much cause to complain of hard times, heavy taxes, and chargeable families; for, as poor Dick says,

' Women and wine, game and deceit,
Make the wealth small, and the want great.

"And, further, 'What maintains one vice, would bring up two children.' You may think, perhaps, that a little tea, or a little punch now and then, diet a little more costly, clothes a little finer, and a little entertainment now and then, can be no great matter; but remember what poor Richard says—'Many a little makes a mickle;' and further, 'Beware of little expenses; a small leak will sink a great ship;' and again, 'Who dainties love shall beggars prove;' and moreover, 'Fools make feasts, and wise men eat them.'

"Here you are all got together at this sale of fineries and nick-nacks. You call them *goods*; but if you do not take care, they will prove *evils* to some of you. You expect they will be sold cheap, and perhaps they may for less than they cost; but if you have no occasion for them, they must be dear to you. Remember what poor Richard says—'Buy what thou hast no need of, and ere long thou shalt sell thy necessaries.' And again, 'At a great pennyworth pause awhile.' He means, that perhaps

the cheapness is apparent only, or not real; or the bargain, by straitening thee in thy business, may do thee more harm than good. For in another place he says, 'Many have been ruined by buying good pennyworths.' Again, as poor Richard says, 'I is foolish to lay out money in a purchase of repentance:' and yet this folly is practised every day at auctions, for want of minding the Almanac. 'Wise men (as poor Dick says) learn by others' harms, fools scarcely by their own; but *Felix quem faciunt aliena pericula cautum.*' Many a one, for the sake of finery on the back, have gone with a hungry belly, and half starved their families: 'Silk and satins, scarlet and velvets (as poor Richard says), put out the kitchen fire.' These are not the necessaries of life; they can scarcely be called the conveniences; and yet only because they look pretty, how many want to have them! The artificial wants of mankind thus become more numerous than the natural; and as poor Dick says, 'For one poor person there are a hundred indigent.' By these and other extravagances the genteel are reduced to poverty, and forced to borrow of those whom they formerly despised, but who, through industry and frugality, have maintained their standing; in which case it appears plainly, 'A ploughman on his legs is higher than a gentleman on his knees,' as poor Richard says. Perhaps they have had a small estate left them, which they knew not the getting of: they think 'It is day, and will never be night;

that a little to be spent out of so much, is not worth minding.' 'A child and a fool (as poor Richard says) imagine twenty shillings and twenty years can never be spent; but always be taking out of the meal-tub, and never putting in, soon comes to the bottom : ' then, as poor Dick says, ' When the well is dry, they know the worth of water.' But this they might have known before, if they had taken his advice : ' if you would know the value of money, go and try to borrow some; for he that goes a borrowing goes a sorrowing; and, indeed, so does he that lends to such people, when he goes to get it in again.' Poor Dick further advises, and says,

' Fond pride of dress is sure a very curse :
Ere fancy you consult, consult your purse.'

And again, ' Pride is as loud a beggar as Want, and a great deal more saucy.' When you have bought one fine thing, you must buy ten more, that your appearance may be all of a piece; but poor Dick says, ' It is easier to suppress the first desire, than to satisfy all that follow it.' And it is as truly folly for the poor to ape the rich, as the frog to swell in order to equal the ox.

' Vessels large may venture more,
But little boats should keep near shore.

'Tis, however, a folly soon punished; for ' Pride that dines on vanity, sups on contempt,' as poor Richard says. And in another place, ' Pride break

fasted with Plenty, dined with Poverty, and supped with Infamy.' And, after all, of what use is this pride of appearance, for which so much is risked, so much is suffered? It cannot promote health, or ease pain; it makes no increase of merit in the person; it hastens misfortune.

What is a butterfly? At best,
He's but a caterpillar drest;
The gaudy fop's his picture just,

as poor Richard says.

“But what madness must it be to run in debt for these superfluities! We are offered, by the terms of this sale, six months' credit, and that perhaps has induced some of us to attend it, because we cannot spare the ready money, and hope now to be fine without it. But, ah! think what you do when you run in debt. You give to another power over your liberty. If you cannot pay at the time, you will be ashamed to see your creditor: you will be in fear when you speak to him; you will make poor, pitiful, sneaking excuses, and by degrees come to lose your veracity, and sink into base, downright lying; for, as poor Richard says, ‘The second vice is lying; the first is running in debt.’ And again, to the same purpose, ‘Lying rides upon debt's back;’ whereas a free-born Englishman ought not to be ashamed nor afraid to speak to any man living.—But poverty often deprives a man of all spirit and virtue: ‘It is hard for an empty bag

to stand upright,' as poor Richard truly says What would you think of that prince, or that government, who would issue an edict, forbidding you to dress like a gentleman or gentlewoman, on pain of imprisonment or servitude? Would you not say, that you were free, have a right to dress as you please, and that such an edict would be a breach of your privileges, and such a government tyrannical? And yet you are about to put yourself under that tyranny when you run in debt for such dress! Your creditor has authority, at his pleasure, to deprive you of your liberty, by confining you in jail for life, or by selling you for a servant, if you should not be able to pay him. When you have got your bargain, you may, perhaps, think little of payment; but 'Creditors (poor Richard tells us) have better memories than debtors' and in another place he says, 'Creditors are a superstitious sect, great observers of set days and times.' The day comes round before you are aware, and the demand is made before you are prepared to satisfy it; or, if you bear your debt in mind, the term which at first seemed so long, will, as it lessens, appear extremely short. Time will seem to have added wings to his heels as well as at his shoulders. 'Those have a short Lent (saith poor Richard) who owe money to be paid at Easter.' Then since, as he says, 'The borrower is a slave to the lender, and the debtor to the creditor,' disdain the chain, preserve your freedom, and maintain your independency: be indus-

trious and free; be frugal and free. At present, perhaps, you may think yourselves in thriving circumstances, and that you can bear a little extravagance without injury; but

‘For age and want save while you may,
No morning sun lasts a whole day,’

as poor Richard says. Gain may be temporary and uncertain; but ever, while you live, expense is constant and certain: and ‘It is easier to build two chimneys, than to keep one in fuel,’ as poor Richard says. So ‘Rather go to bed supperless than rise in debt.’

‘Get what you can, and what you get hold,
’Tis the stone that will turn all your lead into gold,’

as poor Richard says. And when you have got the philosopher’s stone, sure you will no longer complain of bad times, or the difficulty of paying taxes.

“This doctrine, my friends, is reason and wisdom; but, after all, do not depend too much upon your own industry, and frugality, and prudence, though excellent things; for they may be blasted, without the blessing of Heaven: and therefore ask that blessing humbly, and be not uncharitable to those that at present seem to want it, but comfort and help them. Remember Job suffered, and was afterwards prosperous.

“And now, to conclude, ‘Experience keeps a

dear school; but fools will learn in no other, and scarce in that; for it is true, we may give advice, but we cannot give conduct,' as poor Richard says. However, remember this, 'They that will not be counseled cannot be helped,' as poor Richard says; and further, that 'If you will not hear Reason, she will surely rap your knuckles.' "

Thus the old gentleman ended his harangue. The people heard it, and approved the doctrine, and immediately practised the contrary, just as if it had been a common sermon; for the auction opened, and they began to buy extravagantly, notwithstanding all his cautions, and their own fear of taxes. I found the good man had thoroughly studied my Almanacs, and digested all I had dropped on those topics, during the course of twenty-five years. The frequent mention he made of me, must have tired every one else; but my vanity was wonderfully delighted with it, though I was conscious that not a tenth part of the wisdom was my own, which he ascribed to me, but rather the gleanings that I had made of the sense of all ages and nations. However, I resolved to be the better for the echo of it; and though I had at first determined to buy stuff for a new coat, I went away, resolved to wear my old one a little longer. Reader, if thou wilt do the same, thy profit will be as great as mine.

I am, as ever, thine to serve thee,

RICHARD SAUNDERS

OBSERVATIONS ON WAR.

By the original laws of nations, war and extirpation were the punishment of injury. Humanizing by degrees, it admitted slavery instead of death; a further step was the exchange of prisoners instead of slavery; another, to respect more the property of private persons under conquest, and be content with acquired dominion. Why should not this law of nations go on improving? Ages have intervened between its several steps; but as knowledge of late increases rapidly, why should not those steps be quickened? Why should it not be agreed to, as the future law of nations, that in any war hereafter, the following description of men should be undisturbed, have the protection of both sides, and be permitted to follow their employments in security? viz.

1. Cultivators of the earth, because they labor for the subsistence of mankind.

2. Fishermen, for the same reason.

3. Merchants and traders in unarmed ships, who accommodate different nations by communicating and exchanging the necessaries and conveniences of life.

4. Artists and mechanics, inhabiting and working in open towns.

It is hardly necessary to add that the hospitals of

enemies should be unmolested; they ought to be assisted. It is for the interest of humanity in general, that the occasions of war, and the inducements to it, should be diminished. If rapine be abolished, one of the encouragements to war is taken away; and peace, therefore, more likely to continue and be lasting.

The practice of robbing merchants on the high seas—a remnant of the ancient piracy—though it may be accidentally beneficial to particular persons, is far from being profitable to all engaged in it, or to the nation that authorizes it. In the beginning of a war, some rich ships are surprised and taken. This encourages the first adventurers to fit out more armed vessels; and many others to do the same. But the enemy at the same time become more careful, arm their merchant ships better, and render them not so easy to be taken; they go also more under the protection of convoys. Thus, while the privateers to take them are multiplied, the vessels subjected to be taken and the chances of profit are diminished; so that many cruises are made wherein the expenses overgo the gains; and, as is the case in other lotteries, though particulars have got prizes, the mass of adventurers are losers, the whole expense of fitting out all the privateers during a war being much greater than the whole amount of goods taken.

Then there is the national loss of all the labor of so many men during the time they have been en-

ployed in robbing ; who, besides, spend what they get in riot, drunkenness, and debauchery ; lose their habits of industry ; are rarely fit for any sober business after a peace, and serve only to increase the number of highwaymen and house-breakers. Even the undertakers who have been fortunate are, by sudden wealth, led into expensive living, the habit of which continues when the means of supporting it cease, and finally ruins them ; a just punishment for their having wantonly and unfeelingly ruined many honest, innocent traders and their families, whose substance was employed in serving the common interests of mankind.

THE WAY TO MAKE MONEY PLENTY IN EVERY MAN'S POCKET.

AT this time, when the general complaint is that —“ money is scarce,” it will be an act of kindness to inform the moneyless how they may reinforce their pockets. I will acquaint them with the true secret of money-catching, the certain way to fill empty purses, and how to keep them always full. Two simple rules, well observed, will do the business.

First, Let honesty and industry be thy constant companions ; and,

Secondly, Spend one penny less than thy clear gains.

Then shall thy hide-bound pocket soon begin to thrive, and will never again cry with the empty belly-ache; neither will creditors insult thee, nor want oppress, nor hunger bite, nor nakedness freeze thee. The whole hemisphere will shine brighter, and pleasure spring up in every corner of thy heart. Now, therefore, embrace these rules and be happy. Banish the bleak winds of sorrow from thy mind, and live independent. Then shalt thou be a man, and not hide thy face at the approach of the rich, nor suffer the pain of feeling little when the sons of fortune walk at thy right hand; for independency, whether with little or much, is good fortune, and placeth thee on even ground with the proudest or the golden fleece. Oh, then, be wise, and let industry walk with thee in the morning, and attend thee until thou reachest the evening hour for rest. Let honesty be as the breath of thy soul, and never forget to have a penny, when all thy expenses are enumerated and paid; then shalt thou reach the point of happiness, and independence shall be thy shield and buckler, thy helmet and crown; then shall thy soul walk upright, nor stoop to the silken wretch because he hath riches, nor pocket an abuse because the hand which offers it wears a ring set with diamonds.

MORALS OF CHESS.

PLAYING at chess is the most ancient and universal game known among men ; for its original is beyond the memory of history, and it has, for numberless ages, been the amusement of all the civilized nations of Asia—the Persians, the Indians, and the Chinese. Europe has had it above a thousand years ; the Spaniards have spread it over their parts of America, and it begins to make its appearance in these States. It is so interesting in itself as not to need the view of gain to induce engaging in it ; and thence it is never played for money. Those, therefore, who have leisure for such diversions, cannot find one that is more innocent ; and the following piece, written with a view to correct (among a few young friends) some little improprieties in the practice of it, shows, at the same time, that it may, in its effects on the mind, be not merely innocent, but advantageous, to the vanquished as well as the victor.

The game of chess is not merely an idle amusement. Several very valuable qualities of the mind, useful in the course of human life, are to be acquired or strengthened by it, so as to become habits ready on all occasions. For life is a kind of chess, in which we have points to gain, and competitors or adversaries to contend with, and in which there

is a vast variety of good and ill events, that are, in some degree, the effects of prudence or the want of it. By playing at chess, then, we learn,

I. *Foresight*, which looks a little into futurity, considers the consequences that may attend an action: for it is continually occurring to the player, "If I move this piece, what will be the advantage of my new situation? What use can my adversary make of it to annoy me? What other moves can I make to support it, and to defend myself from his attacks?"

II. *Circumspection*, which surveys the whole chessboard, or scene of action, the relations of the several pieces and situation, the dangers they are respectively exposed to, the several possibilities of their aiding each other, the probabilities that the adversary may take this or that move, and attack this or the other piece, and what different means can be used to avoid his stroke, or turn its consequences against him.

III. *Caution*, not to make your moves too hastily. This habit is best acquired by observing strictly the laws of the game, such as, "If you touch a piece, you must move it somewhere; if you set it down, you must let it stand:" and it is therefore best that these rules should be observed; as the game thereby becomes more the image of human life, and particularly of war: in which, if you have incautiously put yourself into a bad and dangerous position, you cannot obtain your enemy's leave to with-

draw your troops, and place them more securely, but you must abide all the consequences of your rashness.

And, lastly, we learn by chess the habit of *not being discouraged by present bad appearances in the state of our affairs*, the habit of *hoping for a favorable change*, and that of *persevering in the search of resources*. The game is so full of events, there is such a variety of turns in it, the fortune of it is so subject to sudden vicissitudes, and one so frequently, after long contemplation, discovers the means of extricating one's self from a supposed insurmountable difficulty, that one is encouraged to continue the contest to the last, in hope of victory by our own skill, or at least of giving a stale mate, by the negligence of our adversary. And whoever considers, what in chess he often sees instances of,—that particular pieces of success are apt to produce presumption, and its consequent inattention, by which the loss may be recovered,—will learn not to be too much discouraged by the present success of his adversary, nor to despair of final good fortune, upon every little check he receives in the pursuit of it.

That we may, therefore, be induced more frequently to choose this beneficial amusement, in preference to others, which are not attended with the same advantages, every circumstance which may increase the pleasure of it should be regarded; and every action or word that is unfair, disrespect-

ful, or that in any way may give uneasiness, should be avoided, as contrary to the immediate intention of both the players, which is to pass the time agreeably.

Therefore, first, If it is agreed to play according to the strictest rules, then those rules are to be exactly observed by both parties, and should not be insisted on for one side, while deviated from by the other—for this is not equitable.

Secondly, If it is agreed not to observe the rules exactly, but one party demands indulgences, he should, then, be as willing to allow them to the other.

Thirdly, No false move should ever be made to extricate yourself out of a difficulty, or to gain an advantage. There can be no pleasure in playing with a person once detected in such unfair practices.

Fourthly, If your adversary is long in playing, you ought not to hurry him, or to express any uneasiness at his delay. You should not sing, nor whistle, nor look at your watch, nor take up a book to read, nor make a tapping with your feet on the floor, or with your fingers on the table, nor do any thing that may disturb his attention. For all these things displease; and they do not show your skill in playing, but your craftiness or your rudeness.

Fifthly, You ought not to endeavor to amuse and deceive your adversary, by pretending to have made bad moves, and saying that you have now lost the

game, in order to make him secure and careless, and inattentive to your schemes; for this is fraud and deceit, not skill in the game.

Sixthly, You must not, when you have gained a victory, use any triumphing or insulting expression, nor show too much pleasure; but endeavor to console your adversary, and make him less dissatisfied with himself, by every kind of civil expression that may be used with truth; such as, "You understand the game better than I, but you are a little inattentive;" or, "You play too fast;" or, "You had the best of the game, but something happened to divert your thoughts, and that turned it in my favor."

Seventhly, If you are a spectator while others play, observe the most perfect silence. For if you give advice, you offend both parties; him against whom you give it, because it may cause the loss of his game; and him in whose favor you gave it, because, though it be good, and he follows it, he loses the pleasure he might have had, if you had permitted him to think until it had occurred to himself. Even after a move, or moves, you must not, by replacing the pieces, show how it might have been placed better; for that displeases, and may occasion disputes and doubts about their true situation. All talking to the players lessens or diverts their attention, and is therefore unpleasing. Nor should you give the least hint to either party, by any kind of noise or motion. If you do, you are unworthy to be a spectator. If you have a mind to

exercise or show your judgment, do it in playing your own game, when you have an opportunity, not in criticising, or meddling with, or counseling the play of others.

Lastly, If the game is not to be played rigorously, according to the rules above-mentioned, then moderate your desire of victory over your adversary, and be pleased with one over yourself. Snatch not eagerly at every advantage offered by his unskillfulness or inattention; but point out to him kindly that by such a move he places or leaves a piece in danger and unsupported; that by another he will put his king in a perilous situation, &c. By this generous civility (so opposite to the unfairness above forbidden), you may, indeed, happen to lose the game to your own opponent, but you will win what is better, his esteem, his respect, and his affection; together with the silent approbation and goodwill of impartial spectators.

CONVERSATION OF A COMPANY OF
EPHEMERÆ;

WITH THE SOLILOQUY OF ONE ADVANCED IN AGE.

TO MADAME BRILLIANT.

You may remember, my dear friend, that when we lately spent that happy day, in the delightful garden and sweet society of the *Moulin Joly*, I stopped a little in one of our walks, and staid some time behind the company. We had been shown numberless skeletons of a kind of little fly, called an ephemera, whose successive generations, we were told, were bred and expired within the day. I happened to see a living company of them on a leaf, who appeared to be engaged in conversation. You know I understand all the inferior animal tongues; my too great application to the study of them is the best excuse I can give for the little progress I have made in your charming language. I listened through curiosity to the discourse of these little creatures; but as they, in their national vivacity, spoke three or four together, I could make but little of their conversation. I found, however, by some broken expressions that I heard now and then, they were disputing warmly on the merit of

two foreign musicians, one a *cousin*, the other a *moscheto*: in which dispute they spent their time, seeming as regardless of the shortness of their life as if they had been sure of living a month. Happy people, thought I; you live certainly under a wise, just, and mild government, since you have no public grievances to complain of, nor any other subject of contention but the perfections or imperfections of foreign music. I turned my head from them to an old gray-headed one, who was single on another leaf, and talking to himself. Being amused with his soliloquy, I put it down in writing, in hopes it will likewise amuse her to whom I am so much indebted for the most pleasing of all amusements, her delicious company and heavenly harmony.

“It was,” says he, “the opinion of learned philosophers of our race, who lived and flourished long before my time, that this vast world, the *Moulin Joly*, could not itself subsist more than eighteen hours: and I think there was some foundation for that opinion; since, by the apparent motion of the great luminary, that gives life to all nature, and which in my time has evidently declined considerably towards the ocean at the end of the earth, it must then finish its course, be extinguished in the waters that surround us, and leave the world in cold and darkness, necessarily producing universal death and destruction. I have lived seven of those hours; a great age, being no less than 420 min

utes of time ! How very few of us continue so long ! I have seen generations born, flourish and expire. My present friends are children and grandchildren of the friends of my youth, who are now, alas, no more ! And I must soon follow them ; for by the common course of nature, though still in health, I cannot expect to live above seven or eight minutes longer. What now avails all my toil and labor, in amassing the honey dew on this leaf, which I cannot live to enjoy ? What my political struggles I have been engaged in, for the good of my compatriot inhabitants of this bush, or my philosophical studies, for the benefit of our race in general ; for in politics (what can laws do without morals ?) our present race of ephemeræ will in a course of minutes become corrupt like those of other and older bushes, and consequently as wretched ! And in philosophy how small our progress ! Alas ! art is long, and life is short ! My friends would comfort me with the idea of a name, they say, I shall leave behind me ; and they tell me I have lived long enough to nature and to glory. But what will fame be to an ephemera who no longer exists ? and what will become of all history in the eighteenth hour, when the world itself, even the whole *Moulin Joly*, shall come to its end, and be buried in a universal ruin ?”

To me, after all my eager pursuits, no solid pleasures now remain, but the reflection of a long life

spent in meaning well, the sensible conversation of a few good lady ephemeræ, and now and then a kind smile and a tune from the ever amiable Brilliant

B. FRANKLIN.



